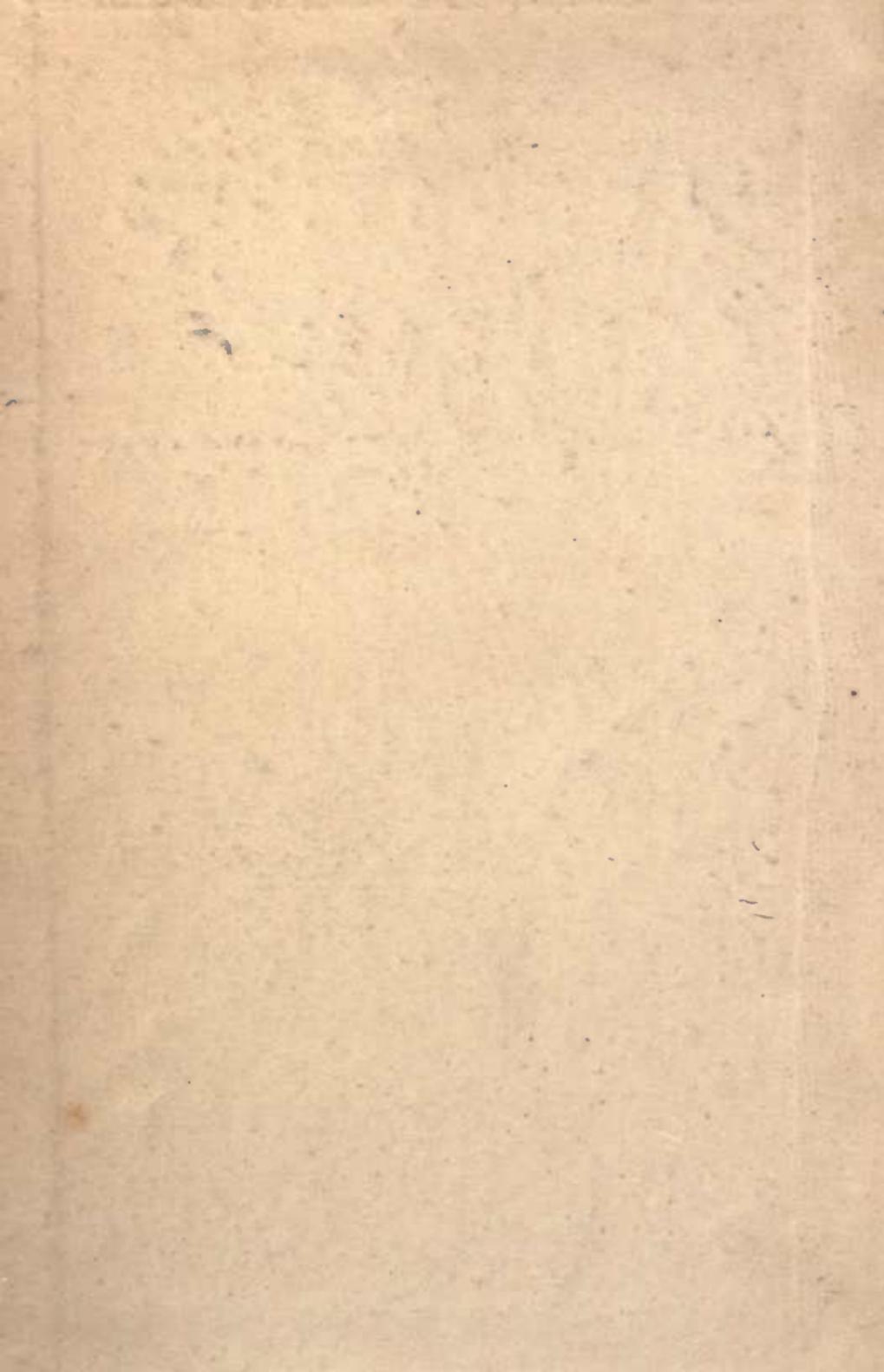


AUGUSTINE'S
CONFESSIONS.



ia



113

L. B. Campbell,

Resent Dec. - 1911.

Augustine an old
fashioned simon
Saved by poor

Congressional Veto

by Robert A. Dahl

With a foreword by James Q. Wilson

Introduction by Philip E. Converse

With a new preface by the author

Princeton University Press

Princeton, New Jersey

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

T H E

Confessions of Augustine.

EDITED, WITH AN INTRODUCTION,

BY

WILLIAM G. T. SHEDD.

NEW EDITION.

BOSTON:

D. LOTHROP AND COMPANY.
FRANKLIN ST., CORNER OF HAWLEY.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1860, by

W A R R E N F. D R A P E R,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts

A D V E R T I S E M E N T.

THIS edition of Augustine's Confessions is a reprint of an old translation, by an author unknown to the editor, which was republished in Boston in 1843. A very little use has also been made of another edition, published at Oxford. This contains only ten books, and where it differs from the old version, almost uniformly differs for the worse.

The principal labor in preparing this edition, has been to make a careful comparison of the whole work with the Latin text, and to add a few explanatory notes. The object of comparing the old version with the original, was not so much to make changes,— for the translation, as a whole, like all the early English translations from Latin

and Greek, is remarkably faithful and vivid, — as to remove obscurities. These arose, in some few instances, from too great conciseness upon the part of the translator; but in many more, from errors in printing and punctuating. In course of time, under the hands of editors and proof-readers, the long and involved sentences of Augustine had become so dislocated, that nothing but a recurrence to the Latin text would restore them to the form in which the translator had originally given them. This was specially true of the last three books, which are exceedingly subtle and abstract in their trains of thought, and in many passages had become totally obscure. The editor flatters himself that this revised edition exhibits the old translation substantially as it was at first, and that it will be found to be intelligible.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION BY THE EDITOR,	Page IX
---------------------------------------	---------

THE FIRST BOOK.

Confession of the greatness and unsearchableness of God; of God's mercies in infancy and boyhood, and human wilfulness; of his own sins of idleness, abuse of his studies, and of God's gifts up to his fifteenth year,	1
---	---

THE SECOND BOOK.

Object of these Confessions; further ills of idleness developed in his sixteenth year; evils of ill society, which betrayed him into theft,	28
---	----

THE THIRD BOOK.

His residence at Carthage from his seventeenth to his nineteenth year; source of his disorders; love of shows; advance in studies, and love of wisdom; distaste for Scripture; led astray to the Manicheans; refutation of some of their tenets; grief of his mother Monica at his heresy, and prayers for his conversion; her vision from God, and answer through a bishop,	42
--	----

THE FOURTH BOOK.

Augustine's life from nineteen to eight and twenty; himself a Manichean, and seducing others to the same heresy; partial obedience amidst vanity and sin; consulting astrologers, only partially shaken herein; loss of an early friend, who is converted by being baptized when in a swoon; reflections on grief; on real and unreal friendship, and love of fame; writes on "the fair and fit," yet cannot rightly, though God had given him great talents, since he entertained wrong notions of God; and so even his knowledge he applied ill, 63

THE FIFTH BOOK.

Augustine's twenty-ninth year; Faustus, a snare of Satan to many, made an instrument of deliverance to Augustine, by showing the ignorance of the Manichees on those things, wherein they professed to have divine knowledge; Augustine gives up all thought of going further among the Manichees; is guided to Rome and Milan, where he hears Ambrose; leaves the Manichees, and becomes again a Catechumen in the Church Catholic, 89

THE SIXTH BOOK.

Arrival of Monica at Milan; her obedience to Ambrose, and his regard for her; Ambrose's habits; Augustine's gradual abandonment of error; finds that he has blamed the Church Catholic wrongly; desire of absolute certainty, but struck with the contrary analogy of God's natural Providence; how shaken in his worldly pursuits; God's guidance of his friend Alypius; Augustine debates with himself and his friends about their mode of life; his inveterate sins, and dread of judgment, 115

THE SEVENTH BOOK.

Augustine's thirty-first year; gradually extricated from his errors, but still with material conceptions of God; aided by an argument of Ne-

bridius; sees that the cause of sin lies in free-will; rejects the Manichaean heresy, but cannot altogether embrace the doctrine of the Church; recovered from the belief in Astrology, but miserably perplexed about the origin of evil; is led to find in the Platonists the seeds of the doctrine of the Divinity of the WORD, but not of His Humiliation; hence he obtains clearer notions of God's majesty; but, not knowing Christ to be the Mediator, remains estranged from Him; all his doubts removed by the study of Holy Scripture, especially St. Paul, 144

THE EIGHTH BOOK.

Augustine's thirty-second year; he consults Simplicianus; from him hears the history of the conversion of Victorinus, and longs to devote himself entirely to God, but is mastered by his old habits; is still further roused by the history of Antony, and of the conversion of two courtiers; during a severe struggle, hears a voice from heaven, opens Scripture, and is converted, with his friend Alypius; his mother's vision fulfilled, 176

THE NINTH BOOK.

Augustine determines to devote his life to God, and to abandon his profession of Rhetoric, quietly, however; retires to the country to prepare himself to receive baptism, and is baptized, with Alypius, and his son, Adeodatus; at Ostia, on his way to Africa, his mother, Monica, dies, in her fifty-sixth year, the thirty-third of Augustine; her life and character, 206

THE TENTH BOOK.

Having in the former books spoken of himself before his receiving baptism, in this Augustine confesses what he then was; but first he inquires by what faculty we can know God at all; whence he enlarges on

the mysterious character of the memory, wherein God, being made known, dwells, but which could not discover Him; then he examines his own temptations, under the triple division of "lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and lust of rule;" what Christian continity prescribes as to each; Christ the only Mediator, who heals and will heal all infirmities, 241

THE ELEVENTH BOOK.

Augustine breaks off the history of the mode whereby God led him to holy orders, in order to "confess" God's mercies in opening to him the Scripture; Moses is not to be understood, but in Christ, not even the first words, "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth;" answer to cavillers who asked, "What did God before He created heaven and the earth, and whence willed He at length to make them, whereas He did not make them before?"; inquiry into the nature of time, 300

THE TWELFTH BOOK.

Augnstine proceeds to comment on Gen. i. 1, and explains the "heaven" to mean that spiritual and incorporeal creation which cleaves to God uninterruptingly, always beholding His countenance, and "earth," the formless matter whereof the corporeal creation was afterwards formed; he does not reject, however, other interpretations, which he adduces, but rather confesses that such is the depth of Holy Scripture, that manifold senses may and ought to be extracted from it, and that whatever truth can be obtained from its words, does, in fact, lie concealed in them, 334

THE THIRTEENTH BOOK.

Continuation of the exposition of Gen. i.; it contains the mystery of the Trinity, and a type of the formation, extension, and support of the Church, 372

INTRODUCTION.

THERE are a few autobiographies which challenge, and receive, a special attention from age to age, because they possess characteristics that are not found in the common mass of such productions. They are the delineation of an extraordinary intellect, and the issue of a remarkable experience. They embody the thoughts of a deep mind in its most absorbed hours, the emotions of a vehement soul in its most critical and impassioned moments. In them, the ordinary experiences of human life attain to such a pitch of intensity, and such a breadth, range, and depth, as to strike the reader with both a sense of familiarity, and a sense of strangeness. It is his own human thought and human feeling that he finds expressed ; and yet it is spoken with so much greater clearness, depth, and energy, than he is himself capable of, or than is characteristic of the mass of men, that it seems like the experience of another sphere, and another race of beings.

The **CONFESIONS OF AUGUSTINE** is a work of this class ; and upon sending forth another edition of it, we seize the opportunity to notice some of its more distinctive and remarkable features.

1. The first characteristic that strikes the reader is, *the singular mingling of metaphysical and devotional elements* in the work. The writer passes, with a freedom that often amounts to abruptness, from the intensely practical to the intensely speculative. In the very midst of his confession of sin, or rejoicing over deliverance from it, his subtle and inquisitive understanding raises a query, the answer to which, if answer were possible, would involve the solution of all the problems that have baffled the metaphysical mind from Thales to Hegel. In the very opening of the work, for example, when the surcharged and brimming soul is swelling with its thick-coming emotions, and it is seeking vent for its sense of the divine mercy which has saved it from everlasting perdition, it slides, by an unconscious transition, to the question : “*How* shall I call upon my God, my God and Lord, since when I call for Him I shall be calling Him into myself ? and what room is there within me, whither my God can come into me ? Whither *can* God come into me, God, who made heaven and earth ?”¹ At the very instant

¹ *Confessions*, I. ii. 2

when Augustine is enjoying the most heartfelt and positive communion with God, his intellect feels the pressure of the problem respecting the possibility of such an intercourse. Such transitions are perpetually occurring throughout the work, until, in the eleventh book, the author leaves his autobiography altogether, and devotes the remainder of the work to an interpretation of the opening chapters of Genesis, in which he discusses the most recondite problems respecting Time and Eternity, the Creator and Creation, and the Trinity of the Divine Essence.

It is not, however, from any open or lurking scepticism, or even from any mental unrest, that Augustine raises such inquiries. These questions are not the issue and index of a mind tormented by doubts. They are only the exuberant play and careering of a subtle and thoughtful intellect, from the vantage-ground of a vital and assured faith. Conscious of being now, at last, at rest in God, the Centre of being and blessedness, he allows his mind to pose itself with the profound truths which are involved in the childlike faith of the Christian. His purpose is not to unsettle his own belief, or that of his reader; but, by the mere immensity of truth, to stagger and overwhelm the understanding, and thereby fill the soul with that sense of mystery which is at once the constituent element of awe, and

the nutriment of worship. Nothing can be further from infidelity, than the spirit with which Augustine raises these inquiries respecting time, eternity, the nature of God and the human soul, the possibility and manner of creation from nothing, the origin of evil, and the nature of matter. Neither is there anything of Gnostic curiosity and pride, in his approaches to the frontiers of this realm of mystery. He merely desires, by this tentative method, to fill his own mind, already believing hoping and joying in divine realities, with a more distinct consciousness of the *infinity* of the world beyond space and time, and of those truths and facts which, in his own phrase, cannot enter by any of the avenues of the flesh. Hence, his questionings leave him humble, while they leave him more self-intelligent. His speculation issues from his religious life and feeling, and helps both to clarify and deepen it. In other words, Augustine is here practising upon his own celebrated dictum, that *faith precedes scientific knowledge*. The practical belief of the truths of Christianity contains much that is latent and undeveloped. The Christian is wiser than he knows. The moment he begins to examine the implications of his own vivid and personal experience, he finds that they contain the entire rudimentary matter of Christian science. For example, he believes in the one living and personal God. But,

the instant he commences the analysis of this idea of ideas, he discovers its profound capacity, and its vast implication. Again, he believes in God incarnate. But when he endeavors to comprehend what is involved in this truth and fact, he is overwhelmed by the multitude of its relations, and the richness of its contents. His faith has really and positively grasped these ideas of God and the God-Man; but,—to employ an illustration of Bernard,—it has grasped them in their closed and involuted form.¹ If he would pass, now, from faith to scientific reason, he needs only to reflect upon the intrinsic meaning of these ideas, until they open along the lines of their structure, and are perceived philosophically, though not exhaustively. But, in this process, faith itself is reinforced and deepened by a reflex action, while, at the same time, the intellect is kept reverent and vigilant, because the cognition, though positive and correct as far as it reaches, is not exhaustive and complete, only by reason of the immensity and infinitude of the object.

Holding such a theory of the relation of reason to faith, Augustine never shrinks from making excursions into the region of metaphysical truth. Although he

¹ *Intellectus rationi innititur, fides autoritati, opinio sola verisimilitudine se tuetur. Habent illa duo certam veritatem, sed fides clausam et involutam, intelligentia nudam et manifestam.*—*De Consideratione, Lib. V. Cap. iii c. 893. Par. Ed. 1632.*

uniformly approaches the problems of theology upon their most difficult side, and never attempts to become clear by becoming shallow, yet there is small fear of philosophy, and still less disparagement of reason, in the writings of the bishop of Hippo. And this, because of the above-mentioned theory. Always making his own vital and confident faith the point from which he departs, and to which he returns, he is at once bold and safe. Go where he may, he cannot lose sight of his pole-star; and thus he always keeps his easting. Like the mariner, far out at sea, with a strong ship under him, and the unfathomed abysses beneath him, he careers courageously over the waste of waters, with no dread of a lee shore, or of sunken rocks. Hence the frequency, and oftentimes the strange abruptness, of his metaphysical queryings. He knows that all truth is consistent with itself, and that the philosophical answer, if it come at all, must come out of the material furnished by the Christian consciousness. His reason cannot contradict his faith, because it is homogeneous and consubstantial with it. The former is the evolution; the latter is the involution.

2. A second characteristic of Augustine's Confessions is, *the union of the most minute and exhaustive detail of sin, with the most intense and spiritual abhorrence of it.* The only work, in any language, that bears any compar-

ison with this of the North-African Father, is that in which Rousseau pours out his life of passion and evil concupiscence. There is the same *abandon* and unreserve in each; the same particularity in recounting the past conduct; the same subtle unwinding of the course of transgression. Each absorbs himself in his own biography, with an entireness and simplicity that precludes any thought for a spectator or a listener; any regard for either an unfeeling or a sympathizing world of readers. Augustine and Rousseau, both alike, withdraw into the secret and silent confessional of their own memories and recollections, and there pour out their confidences with utter self-abandonment.

But the resemblance ceases at this point. The motive prompting the confession, and the emotions that accompany it, are as different as light from darkness. Augustine's confession is really such,—an acknowledgment to God. Rousseau's recital is a soliloquy, that never goes beyond himself. The Christian bishop confesses his past sinful life only that he may magnify, and make his boast in that unmerited grace which plucked him “from the bottom of the bottomless pit.”¹ He brings out his secret and scarlet sins into the light of his memory, that he may praise the God of his salvation for his marvellous pity. “I will now call to

¹ *Confessions*, II. iv. 9.

mind," he says, "my past foulness, and the carnal corruptions of my soul; not because I love them, but that I may love Thee, O my God. For love of Thy love I do it; reviewing my most wicked ways, in the very bitterness of my remembrance, that Thou mayest grow sweet unto me."¹ The minuteness, the plainness, and the exhaustiveness of his account of his sinful life, only sets in stronger relief the strangeness of the mercy that lifted him out of it; only fills him with a delirium of joy and love towards his redeeming God. How different all this is from the motive, and the feeling of Rousseau, it is needless to say. It is not necessary to affirm the existence of a deliberate intention to debauch the world, by those confessions of sin and guilt, though such is, unquestionably, the inevitable tendency of them. It is enough to say, that there certainly was no intention to waken abhorrence of evil by means of them; and still less to reflect any light upon the Divine character and government. The impelling motive probably was, to relieve a stormy and tempest-tossed nature, by a simple overflow of the pent-up elements. Rousseau merely followed that impulse of a burdened soul which necessitates self-utterance; that law of both mind and matter which absolutely forbids the perpetual suppression of struggling powers and forces. All the de-

¹ *Confessions*, II. i. 1.

vices of man cannot choke down even the smallest spring of water, so that it shall never come to the surface; and all the efforts of men and angels combined cannot keep under, in eternal burial, the emotions and passions of an inordinate and billowy spirit. Under this stress and pressure, the “self-torturing sophist” enters into the detail of his unworthy and unhappy life, without the slightest recognition of the claims of law, and apparently without the slightest fear of its retributions. The wild and passionate rehearsal goes on, but with no reference either to the holiness or the mercy of the Supreme; with no allusion to the solemn relations of an immortal soul either to time or to eternity.

Again, while Augustine relates the sins of his youth, and his transgressions, with a plainness which the factious modesty of an inwardly impure mind has sometimes condemned, it is always with the most genuine and unaffected sorrow and abhorrence. A more sincere book than the *Confessions* of Augustine was never written. Every statement of sin is a wail over it. Rivers of waters run down the relator’s eyes, because he has not kept the divine law. The plainness of this book is like that of the prophecy of Ezekiel; the vileness is brought out into sight only that it may be trampled and stamped upon. And yet it is not a spasmodic,

or an affected reprobation. From the depths of a now spiritualized mind, Augustine really abhors his past iniquity. He is a new creature; old things have passed away, and all things have become new. With the clear and searching eye of the cherubim, he looks into the hole of the pit whence he was digged, and beholds according to truth. There is no furtive glance towards the past voluptuousness. It is seen to be sin and guilt, meriting the wrath and curse of God, fit only to be burned up in the consuming fire of the Divine immaculateness. All this is perceived with calmness and certainty; so that the judgment of damnation, which is passed by the autobiographer upon his personal corruption, is deep and tranquil, like that of the bar of final doom.

3. But this is only a negative excellence. A third characteristic of this book is, that *it palpitates with a positive love of God and goodness.* The writer does not merely look back with aversion and abhorrence, but he looks forward with aspiration and longing. He gazes, with a steady and rapt eye, upon the supernal Beauty, the heavenly Eros. His spiritualized perception reposes with joy unutterable, and full of glorying, upon the perfections of God and the realities of eternity. Hear his impassioned utterance. “Not with doubting, but with assured consciousness, do I love Thee, Lord. But

what do I love when I love Thee? not the beauty of bodies, nor the fair harmony of time, nor the brightness of the light so gladsome to our eyes, nor sweet melodies of varied songs, nor the fragrant smell of flowers and ointments and spices, nor manna and honey, nor limbs acceptable to the embracements of flesh. None of these do I love when I love my God; and yet I love a kind of light, a kind of melody, a kind of fragrance, a kind of food, and a kind of embracement, when I love my God,—the light, the melody, the fragrance, the food, the embracement, of the inner man: where there shineth unto my soul what space cannot contain, and there soundeth what time beareth not away, and there smelleth what breathing disperseth not, and there tasteth what eating diminisheth not, and there clingeth what satiety divorceth not. *This is it which I love, when I love my God.*". The entire emotiveness of that deep, passionate, North-African nature has been transferred from sense to spirit, from time to eternity, from earth to heaven, from the creature to the Creator, and now flows on like the river of God, which is full of water. Indeed, the feeling which Augustine bears towards the Blessed Triune God, cannot be better expressed than by the word *affectionateness*. There is in his experience awe "deep as the centre;" there is humility absolute; there is the reverential fear of the wing

veiled seraphim ; but there is, also, in and through it all, that confiding love which is both warranted and elicited by the dying prayer of the Redeemer. This man, who so often denominates himself "evil" and "abominable," " miserable" and "godless,"—who prostrates his whole being, in shame and sorrow unspeakable, before the infinite and adorable majesty of God,—yet finds an answer, in his own regenerate consciousness, to the wonderful supplication of the Redeemer, that his redeemed "all may be one, as thou Father art in me, and I in thee ; that they may be one even as we are one ; I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one."

This sense of union with God is very vivid in this Latin Father ; as it is, also, in some of the more spiritual of the schoolmen,—particularly Anselm and Bernard. It is very different, however, from that vague feeling of the Mystic theologian, which, even in its best forms, sometimes hovers upon the borders of pantheism, and in its worst form, as in Eckart and Silesius, is little better than the Hindoo absorption in the deity. On the contrary, it is that intelligent consciousness of oneness with God, which issues from the evangelical *sense of reconciliation with him through the blood of Christ*. The ideas of Incarnation and Redemption shape the whole experience of Augustine, and his communion with God

has its root in the sense of sin, and the sense of mercy. But these two utterly preclude the pantheistic intuition. He who feels himself to be guilty, knows most piercingly that God and man are two distinct beings. And he who has rejoiced in the manifested pity of the Creator towards the creature, cannot possibly confound the two, either in philosophy or theology. And such is the foundation upon which Augustine's filial and affectionate communion with God rests. He knows that if God spared not his own Son, but freely gave him up for a guilty criminal like himself, he will certainly, after this, freely give him all things. Springing from this evangelical root, the affectionateness of Augustine is totally different, also, from that fatal form of self-deception which is seen in the sentimentalist's love of God. He does not presume to cast himself upon the Divine mercy, until he has first recognized and acquiesced in the Divine justice. These Confessions contain none of that religiousness, to which the intrinsic and eternal damnableness of sin is an offensive truth, and which avoids all the retributive and judicial aspects of revelation. Augustine never shrinks from the fact, that a creature's wilful transgression, in its own nature merits, and irrespective of Christ's blood of atonement will receive, an "everlasting punishment" from the living God. He knows that the doctrine of *genuine* peni-

tence for sin, stands, or falls, with that of an absolute ill-desert, and an everlasting penalty; that every species of religious anxiety which reluctant at Christ's representations of the final doom, and at the doctrine that only Christ's Passion stands between a sinner and eternal damnation, is spurious; and that he who would throw himself into the arms of the Redeemer, before he has knelt with a crushed heart at the bar of the Judge, will ultimately meet a terrific rebuke to his presumption, and his moral worthlessness. Augustine's trust in the compassion of God has for its antecedent, the distinct consciousness of the "wrath to come." The Divine love is, for his mind, a pity that "bore his sins on the tree," and thereby delivered him from an eternal infliction that was merited and actually impending.¹

Such thoroughness in Augustine's experience of both the justice and the mercy of God, resulted in an undoubting confidence in Him. The trustfulness of his feeling towards the Supreme exhibits itself, sometimes, almost like the prattling of a child. "I beseech Thee, my God, I would fain know, if so Thou willest, for what purpose my baptism was then deferred? Was it for my good, that the rein was laid loose, as it were, upon me, for me to sin?"² "Bear with me, my God, while I say something of my wit, Thy gift, and on what dotages

¹ Compare Confessions, V. ix. 16.

² Confessions, I. xi. 18.

I wasted it.”¹ In fact, the whole life, the entire experience of Augustine, with all that is insignificant, equally with all that is great in it, is poured out into the ear of the Divine Confessor. To God there is nothing great, and nothing small; and this penitent and affectionate soul passes from point to point in its detail, without stopping to measure or compare. The Divine ear is not heavy, that it cannot hear even the minutest items of the penitential record; and the filial, grateful heart is never tired of the exhaustive confession and rehearsal.

Such an experience as this brought the spirit of Augustine into most intimate relations to God. “Sometimes,” he says, “Thou admittest me to an affection very unusual, in my inmost soul; rising to a strange sweetness, which, if it were perfected in me, I know not what in it would not belong to the life to come.”² The Modern church is too destitute of this child-like affectionateness, and this fervor of love. It is certainly striking to pass from the more formal and reserved types of religious experience, characteristic of an over-civilized Christendom, to the simple and gushing utterances of Augustine, Anselm, and Bernard. “Too late I loved Thee, O Thou Beauty of ancient days, yet ever new! too late I loved Thee!”³ “Oh! that I might

¹ *Confessions*, I. xvii. 27.

² *Confessions*, X. xl. 65.

³ *Confessions*, X. xxvii. 33.

repose on Thee ! Oh ! that Thou wouldest enter into my heart, and inebriate it ! ”¹ “ Oh ! Thou sweetness never failing, Thou blissful and assured sweetness ! ”² In one of his Soliloquies, Augustine addresses God as both father and mother : “ Et tu Domine Deus pater orphanorum, et tu mater pupillorum tuorum, audi ejulatum filiorum tuorum.”³ The soul follows hard after God, and its pantings often find a natural expression in language, and terms, as fervid as those which we are wont to associate only with the most absorbing and consuming of earthly passions. The rhythmical and sonorous Roman speech becomes yet more deep-toned and sounding in its note, as the rapt mind rises upon the wings of spiritual intuition and ecstasy. The superlative becomes the positive. “ Dulcissime, amantissime, benignissime, preciosissime, desideratissime, amabilissime, pulcherrime, tu melle dulcior, lacte et nive candidior, nectare suavior, gemmis et auro preciosior, cunctisque terrarum divitiis et honoribus mihi carior, quando te videbo ? Quando apparebo ante faciem tuam ? Quando satiabor de pulchritudine tua ? ”⁴ This language, it should be remembered, flows from a mind that is naturally speculative and dialectic ; that has meditated, not merely pro-

¹ Confessions, I. v. 5.

² Confessions, II. i. 1.

³ Soliloquiorum liber unus, Opera IX. 763, Ed. Basil, 1569.

⁴ Meditationum liber unus, Opera IX. 722, 728, Ed. Basil, 1569.

foundly, but systematically, upon the being and attributes of God. It is not the utterance of a sentimentalist, but of a robust understanding, out of which issued the most logical and rigorous of the ancient types of Christian theology. When we find the most abstract and intellectual of the Christian Fathers dissolving in tears, or mounting in ecstasy, we may be certain that the emotion issues from truth and reality. When the rock gushes out water, we may be sure that it is pure water. Were it not that we find the systematic writings of Augustine,—which, moreover, constitute the bulk of his works,—calm as reason itself, consecutive as logic itself, and entirely free from extravagance, we might query whether a sinful mortal, an imperfectly sanctified man, could use such language as the above, without a latent insincerity; or, at least, without running far in advance of his real emotions. But these soliloquies and meditations are the moments of Christian and saintly inspiration; seasons when the deep and subtle reasoning of the renewed mind, having reached its term, becomes hushed and breathless in the spiritual intuition, and passes over into awe and worship. The knowledge of the cherub becomes the love of the seraph. Each is alike real and true; the one is the dark root, the other the bright consummate flower of religion.

One who imbues his mind with the spirit of Augustine's Confessions finds no difficulty, therefore, in understanding the Song of Solomon. An earthly exegesis can interpret this Song of Songs only from its own point of view. The conceptions, figures, and terms of the spiritual lyric are instinctively referred to earthly and carnal relationships. An unspiritual mind cannot, by any possibility, rise into the pure ether and element of incorporeal and heavenly Beauty, in which the writer of this canticle moves his wings. But not so the Augustines, the Anselms, and the Bernards. These purged and clear eyes were granted at certain favored hours, and as the result and reward of their long vigils and meditations, the immortal vision of the pure in heart. And the immortal vision wakened the immortal longing. The environment of earth and time became a prison to the now illuminated spirit, and it pined for the hill of frankincense and the mountains of myrrh. Having seen the King in his beauty, the holy and ethereal soul fell into love-longing.¹

4. A fourth striking characteristic of these Confessions is, *the insight which they afford into the origin and*

¹The experience of Edwards, as portrayed by himself, more than that of any other modern, exhibits these same characteristics. That rapt exulting vision of the Divine majesty and beauty, which fell upon him like the dawn, in the opening of his Christian life, flushed his entire career, and entitles him, also, to the name of the "angelic," the "seraphic" doctor.

progress of the Christian experience. They are the best commentary yet written upon the seventh and eighth chapters of Romans. That quickening of the human spirit, which puts it again into vital and sensitive relations to the holy and the eternal; that illumination of the mind, whereby it is enabled to perceive with clearness the real nature of truth and righteousness; that empowering of the will, to the conflict and the victory,—the entire process of restoring the Divine image in the soul of man,—is delineated in this book, with a vividness and reality never exceeded by the uninspired mind. And particularly is the bondage of the enslaved will brought to view. Augustine, though subject to pangs of conscience, and the forebodings of an unpardoned soul, from his earliest years, did not, nevertheless, attain evangelical peace until the thirty-second year of his life. He died at the age of seventy-six; so that nearly one-half of his earthly existence was spent in unregeneracy. He was born and bred in the midst of paganism, and his tropical, North-African nature immersed itself in the ambition and sensuality of his clime and his race, with an intensity to which the career of a Byron, a Rousseau, or a Heine, affords a nearer parallel, than does anything which meets the eye in the externally decent and restrained life of modern society. To such a soul of flame was uttered, in tones that startled, and

tones that shattered, and tones that for the moment paralyzed, the solemn words: “*Not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying; but put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh.*” It was, at first, like the giving up of the ghost. The effort to obey was convulsive. “Thou, O Lord, didst press upon me inwardly with severe mercy, redoubling the lashes of fear and shame, lest I should again give way, and, not bursting that slight remaining tie, it should recover strength, and bind me the faster. For I said within myself, ‘Be it done now, be it done now.’ And as I spake, I all but performed it. I all but did it, and did it not; yet sunk not back to my former state, but kept my stand hard by, *and took breath.* And I essayed again, and wanted somewhat less of it, and somewhat less, and all but touched and laid hold of it; hesitating to die to death, and to live to life; and the worse, whereto I was inured, prevailed more with me than the better, whereto I was unused; and as the moment approached wherein I was to become other than I was, the greater horror did it strike into me; yet did it not strike me back, nor turned me away, but held me in suspense.”¹ What a subtle and most truthful glimpse into the workings of inveterate sin, which has grown

¹ Confessions, VIII. xi. 25.

with his growth and strengthened with his strength, is afforded in the petition of his early manhood : “ Give me continence, *only not yet!*”¹ These, and a hundred others like them, bring the whole inward struggle into plain view. It is a real conflict, in which the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, and the violent take it by force. We know of no other religious book, except the Bible and Pilgrim’s Progress, which makes so deep an impression of *reality* as this one. Religion, in the experience here portrayed, is veritable. The fears and forebodings which herald it, are actual. The pangs and throes that bring it to the birth, are actual. The joys and sorrows, the assurance and the doubts, that accompany its growth, are actual. As the doctrinal system of Augustine rests upon a basis of realism, so does his practical life and history. There is nothing upon either side that is nominal, fictitious, ideal.

But, the whole excellence of this delineation of the bondage of the apostate will,— which is the cause of all this struggle,— will not be perceived, unless we notice that Augustine continually refers the enslavement to the creature himself, and never to the Creator. It is the product of self-will, and not of that creative fiat by which man was originally made a holy and unenslaved spirit in the image of God. “ My *will* the enemy held,

¹ Confessions, VIII. vii. 17.

and *thence* had made a chain for me, and bound me. *For, of a perverse will comes lust; and a lust yielded to becomes custom; and custom not resisted becomes necessity.* By which links, as it were, joined together as in a chain, a hard bondage held me enthralled. And that new will, which had begun to be in me, to serve Thee freely, and to wish to enjoy Thee, O God, was not yet able completely to overcome my former long-established wilfulness.”¹ Thus the bondage is guilt; and at the very instant when the soul is weighed down with a sense of utter impotence to holiness, it is also prostrate before the judicial bar, with the consciousness of deserved damnation. The enslavement is not plead in excuse of sin, because it is acknowledged to be a *part* of sin, and thus an aggravation of it. The element of servitude, like the element of blindness, is part and particle of the evil and abominable thing which the soul of God hates. The *reflex action* of transgression upon the understanding, is spiritual blindness; upon the heart, is spiritual hardness; and upon the will, is spiritual bondage. The voluntary faculty cannot escape, any more than any other faculty of the soul, the *reäction of its self-action*. Whosoever commits sin, by and in that very voluntary act, becomes the slave ($\delta\omega\lambda\oslash\sigma$) of sin. The cause inevitably carries its consequence.

¹ Confessions, VIII. v. 10.

That which is done cannot be undone ; and no will that self-determinedly apostatizes can be again the sound and strong faculty, in reference to good, that it was before apostasy, except through the intervention of Divine renewing power. The moral bondage, therefore, like the moral blindness, and the moral hardness, enters into the sum-total of human depravity, and goes to swell the sum-total of human condemnation. All this, though not drawn out in this dialectic manner, is implied in Augustine's anthropology. Nowhere is there a more profound consciousness of the impotence of the apostate will, and nowhere is there a more heartfelt and humble sense of personal ill-desert, than is expressed in these *Confessions*.¹

Such are some of the more salient points in the autobiography of Augustine. A moment's reflection upon them will reveal that they are of the very highest order, and that such a religious experience as is here por-

¹ We have dwelt the longer upon this point, because it has been asserted that Augustine's theory of grace and election is fatalism. Milman's portrait of the Latin Father (*Primitive Christianity*, Book III. Chap. x) is, in many of its features, an accurate one; and the general coloring is laid on with an admiring, and even an enthusiastic eye. But Milman represents Augustinianism as "offering up free agency upon the altar of religion, and thereby degrading the most wonderful work of Omnipotence,—a being endowed with free agency." The misconception arises from overlooking the fact that, in Augustine's system, the bondage and impotence of the apostate will are the *consequence and result of an act of will*. *Self-enslavement and self-ruin* is one thing; enslavement by the creative act, and ruin by compulsory force, is another. The charge of fatalism can logically be made only against this latter.

trayed, cannot be studied without profit. This book is worthy of being made a manual of devotion. It is not claimed to be entirely free from erroneous aspects of truth. No man wholly escapes the faults of his age ; and the Confessions of Augustine exhibit some of the deficiencies of the Church of the fourth century. But in reference to the permanent and everlasting elements of the Christian experience, the great main characteristics of the Christian life, here is certainly a bold and accurate, a clear and large utterance. We are confident that familiarity with this book, for even a single year, would perceptibly affect the individual's religious experience. It would infuse into it the rare quality of vividness. There are no stereotyped phrases, no technical terms or forms. It is the life of God in the soul of a strong man, rushing and rippling with the freedom of the life of nature. He who watches can almost see the growth ; he who listens can hear the perpetual motion ; and he who is in sympathy will be swept along.

The editing of these Confessions has been a labor of love. As we have scanned the sentences and syllables, we have seemed to hear the beating of that flaming heart, which, now for fifteen centuries, has burnt and throbbed with a seraph's affection in the Mount of God. We have seemed to look into that deep and spiritual

eye, which gazed without shrinking, yet with bitter penitential tears, into the depths of a tormenting conscience and a sinful nature, that it might then gaze without dazzling, and with unutterable rapture, into the eyes and face of The Eternal. Our Protestantism concedes, without scruple, the cognomen of Saint to this ethereal spirit. Our Christianity triumphs in that marvellous power of grace, which wrought such a wonderful transformation. Having this example and living fact before our view, we believe that Christ, the Lord, has all power, both in heaven and upon earth ; and that there is lodged in his pierced and bleeding hands a spiritual energy that is able to renovate the mightiest, and the most vitiated forms of humanity. The Cæsars and Napoleons, the Byrons and Rousseaus, all the passionate spirits, all the stormy Titans, are within reach of that irresistible influence which is garnered up in the Redemption of the Son of God, and which is accessible to the prayers and the faith of the church.

The following sketch of the life of Augustine, given in the compact grouping and terse statement of *Guericke*,¹ is appended for the convenience of the reader.

¹ Guericke's Church History, § 91.

“Aurelius Augustinus, born at Tagaste, in Numidia, Nov. 13, 354, a man of deep and powerful nature, not the most learned, yet the greatest of the fathers, and in whose energetic mind acuteness and profundity were blended in their highest degrees, after victoriously passing through the most violent inward conflicts, had attained evangelical peace of conscience. Though early pointed to Christ by his excellent mother Monica, he had become distractingly immersed in the ambitions and sensualities of earth during his residence in Carthage, — whither he had repaired for literary culture after previous studies at Tagaste and Madaura, — when, in his nineteenth year, the Hortensius of Cicero wakened a new aspiration within him after the truth. But, with all his newly-awakened longing after a higher life, the power to *realize* his aspiration was ever wanting. As a teacher of rhetoric at Carthage (from 376), afterwards at Rome, and finally at Milan (from 384), he was continually wavering between the world and God, in a constant conflict between his ambition and lust on the one hand, and the unmistakable remorse and aspirings of his soul, and the prayers and tears of his mother, on the other. For nine years he sought for truth among the Manicheans, who did not demand or insist upon faith, but talked much of a higher cognition of the reason; and who, by employing apparently Christian phrase-

ology, seemed to join on upon the ineradicable impressions and instructions of his childhood. Seeing himself deceived, he began to fall into scepticism, and was again speculatively re-established by the Platonic philosophy. But he could not find in this human system the two things he was seeking for, namely, *peace with conscience and God*, and the *renovating power* requisite to a holy life. Through various remarkable providences, and stormy conflicts, both of the outer and the inner life, he was, at length, in the year 386, at Milan, brought to a believing reception of the gospel, in its purity and simplicity,— a crisis for which the preparation had long been going on in his soul, and which was accelerated by the startling impression made upon him by the passage in Romans xiii. 13, 14, to which he had casually opened, on seeming to hear from on high, in a moment of deep spiritual despondency, the words: “*Tolle, lege.*” He received baptism, together with his natural son, Adeodatus, a youth of fifteen, on Easter-Sunday, 387, from bishop Ambrose, to whose spiritual instructions he was greatly indebted for his new experience. From this time onward, he drew without ceasing from the fountain of light and peace which welled up within, and there followed that new and ever-expanding life of consecration to God, of Christian knowledge and holiness, which has made him a teacher for all succeeding centuries. Au-

gustine gave up the profession of a rhetorician, which had in various ways ministered to his vanity, and in 388 returned to Africa, where, though feeling himself to be unfit for the office, he was made presbyter in 391, and, in 395 (at the pressing request of the aged bishop Valerius, and in ignorance of the church statute forbidding it), co-bishop, and then, probably in 396, sole bishop of Hippo Regius in Numidia. Here he labored, not merely for his own particular charge, but also,—by training up capable teachers and clergymen, and in all other ways,—for the entire North-African church, which he led and guided by the power of his intellect, with manifest blessing. In the last part of his life, he was compelled to see great suffering befall his church and native land, from the Vandals, and finally died, August 28, 430, in Hippo, which had already been closely besieged three months by them,—spending the last ten days of his life absorbed in meditation and prayer."

THE EDITOR.

ANDOVER.

THE
CONFessions OF AUGUSTINE,
BISHOP OF HIPPO.

THE FIRST BOOK.

CONFESsION OF THE GREATNESS AND UNSEARCHABLENESS OF GOD—
OF GOD'S MERCIES IN INFANCY AND BOYHOOD, AND HUMAN WIL-
FULNESS—OF HIS OWN SINS OF IDLENESS, ABUSE OF HIS STUDIES,
AND OF GOD'S GIFTS UP TO HIS FIFTEENTH YEAR.

I. 1. *Great art Thou, O Lord, and greatly to be praised; great is Thy power, and Thy wisdom infinite.*¹ And Thee man would praise; man, but a particle of Thy creation; man, that bears about him his mortality, the witness of his sin, the witness that *Thou, O God, resistest the proud:*² yet would man praise Thee; he, but a particle of Thy creation. Thou awakest us to delight in Thy praise; for Thou madest us for Thyself, and our heart is restless, until it repose in Thee. Grant me, Lord, to know and understand which is first, to call on Thee or to praise Thee? and, again, to know Thee or to call on Thee? for who can call on Thee, not knowing Thee? for he

¹ Ps. cxlv. 3; cxlvii. 5.

² Jas. iv. 6; 1 Pet. v. 5.

that knoweth Thee not, may call on Thee as other than Thou art. Or, is it rather, that we call on Thee that we may know Thee? but *how shall they call on Him in whom they have not believed?*¹ or *how shall they believe without a preacher?*² and *they that seek the Lord shall praise Him:*³ for *they that seek shall find Him,*³ and they that find shall praise Him. I will seek Thee, Lord, by calling on Thee; and I will call on Thee, believing in Thee; for to us hast Thou been preached. My faith, Lord, shall call on Thee, which Thou hast given me, wherewith Thou hast inspired me, through the Incarnation of Thy Son, through the ministry of thy Preacher.

II. 2. And how shall I call upon my God, my God and Lord, since, when I call for Him, I shall be calling Him into myself? and what room is there within me, whither my God can come into me? whither can God come into me, God who made heaven and earth? is there, indeed, O Lord my God, aught in me that can contain Thee? do then heaven and earth, which Thou hast made, and wherein Thou hast made me, contain Thee? or, because nothing which exists could exist without Thee, doth therefore whatever exists contain Thee? Since, then, I too exist, why do I seek that Thou shouldest enter into me, who were not, wert Thou not in me? Why? because I am not gone down in hell, and yet Thou art there also. For *if I go down into hell, Thou art there.*⁴ I could not be then, O my God, could not be at all, wert Thou not in me; or, rather, unless I were

¹ Rom. x. 14.

² Ps. xxii. 26.

³ Matt. vii. 7.

⁴ Ps. cxxxix. 7.

in Thee, *of whom are all things, by whom are all things, in whom are all things?*¹ Even so, Lord, even so. Whither do I call Thee, since I am in Thee? or whence canst Thou enter into me? for whither can I go beyond heaven and earth, that thence my God should come into me, who hath said, *I fill the heaven and the earth.*²

III. 3. Do the heaven and earth, then, contain Thee, since Thou fillest them? or dost Thou fill them and yet overflow, since they do not contain Thee? And whither, when the heaven and the earth are filled, pourest Thou forth the remainder of Thyself? or hast Thou no need that aught contain Thee, who containest all things, since what Thou fillest Thou fillest by containing it? for the vessels which Thou fillest uphold Thee not, since, though they were broken, Thou wert not poured out. And when Thou art *poured out*³ on us, Thou art not cast down, but Thou upliftest us; Thou art not dissipated, but Thou gatherest us. But Thou who fillest all things, fillest Thou them with Thy whole self? or, since all things cannot contain Thee wholly, do they contain part of Thee? and all at once the same part? or each its own part, the greater more, the smaller less? And is, then, one part of Thee greater, another less? or, art Thou wholly everywhere, while nothing contains Thee wholly?

IV. 4. What art Thou, then, my God? what, but the Lord God? *For who is Lord but the Lord?* or *who is God save our God?*⁴ Most highest, most

¹ Rom. xi. 36.

² Jer. xxiii. 24.

³ Acts ii. 18.

⁴ Ps. xvii. 31.

good, most potent, most omnipotent; most merciful, yet most just; most hidden, yet most present; most beautiful, yet most strong; stable, yet incomprehensible; unchangeable, yet all-changing; never new, never old; all-renewing, and *bringing age upon the proud, and they know it not*; ever working, ever at rest; still gathering, yet not lacking; supporting, filling, and overspreading; creating, nourishing, and maturing; seeking, yet having all things. Thou lovest, without passion; art jealous, without anxiety; repentest, yet grieveſt not; art angry, yet serene; changeſt Thy works, Thy purpose unchanged; receivest again what Thou findest, yet didſt never lose; never in need, yet rejoicing in gains; never covetous, yet exacting usury.¹ Thou receivest over and above, that Thou mayest owe; and who hath aught that is not Thine? Thou payest debts, owing nothing; remittest debts, losing nothing. And what have I now ſaid, my God, my life, my holy joy? or what ſaith any man when he speaks of Thee? Yet woe to him that speaketh not, since mute are even the most eloquent.

V. 5. Oh! that I might repose on Thee! Oh! that Thou wouldest enter into my heart, and inebriate it, that I may forget my ills, and embrace Thee, my sole good! What art Thou to me, O Lord? Have mercy on me, that I may tell. Or what am I to Thee, that Thou shouldest command me to love Thee, yea, and be angry with me, and threaten to lay huge miseries upon me, if I love Thee not? Is

¹ Matt. xxv. 27.

it then a slight woe to love Thee not? Oh! for Thy mercies' sake, tell me, O Lord my God, what Thou art unto me. *Say unto my soul, I am Thy salvation;*¹ but say it so that I may hear Thee. Behold, Lord, my heart is before Thee; open Thou the ears thereof, and *say unto my soul, I am thy salvation.* I will run after the sound of Thy voice, and lay hold on Thee. Hide not Thou Thy face from me. Let me die that so I may see it; lest otherwise I may so die as not to see it.

6. The house of my soul is too strait for Thee to come into; but let it, O Lord, be enlarged, that Thou mayest enter in. It is ruinous; repair Thou it. It has that within which must offend Thine eyes; I confess and know it. But who shall cleanse it? or to whom should I cry out, save Thee? *Cleanse me from my secret faults, O Lord, and forgive those offences to Thy servant which he has caused in other folks.* *I believe² in Thee, and therefore do I speak:³* O Lord, Thou knowest this. *Have I not confessed against myself my transgressions unto Thee, and Thou, my God, hast forgiven the iniquity of my heart?*⁴ I contend not in judgment with Thee,⁵ who art truth; I fear to deceive myself; lest my sin should make me think that *I am not sinful.*⁶ Therefore I contend not in judgment with Thee; for if *Thou, Lord, shouldest mark iniquities,* O Lord, who shall abide it?⁷

1 Ps. xxxv. 3.

4 Ps. xxxii. 5.

6 Ps. xxvi. 12. — Vulg.

2 Ps. xix. 12, 13.

5 Job ix. 3.

7 Ps. cxxx. 3.

3 Ps. cxvi. 10.

VI. 7. Yet suffer Thou me to speak unto Thy mercy, me, *dust and ashes*.¹ Yet suffer me to speak, since I speak to Thy mercy, and not to scornful man. Thou too, perhaps, dost laugh at me, yet wilt Thou *turn and have compassion*² upon me. For what would I say, O Lord my God, but that I know not whence I came into this dying life (shall I call it?) or living death. Then immediately did the comforts of Thy compassion take me up, as I heard (for I remember it not) from the parents of my flesh, out of whose substance Thou didst sometime fashion me. Then the comforts of woman's milk entertained me. For neither my mother nor my nurses stored their own breasts for me; but Thou didst bestow the food of my infancy through them, according to Thine ordinance, whereby Thou distributest Thy riches through the hidden springs of all things. Thou also gavest me to desire no more than Thou gavest; and to my nurses willingly to give me what Thou gavest them. For they, with an heaven-taught affection, willingly gave me what they abounded with from Thee. For this my good from them, was good for them. Nor, indeed, from them was it, but through them; for from Thee, O God, are all good things, and *from my God is all my health*. This I afterwards learned, when Thou, through these Thy benedictions, within me and without, proclaimedst Thyself unto me. For then I knew but to suck; to repose in what pleased, and cry at what offended my flesh; nothing more.

8. Afterwards I began to smile; first in sleep, then

¹ Gen. xviii. 27.

² Jer. xii. 15.

waking; for so it was told me of myself, and I believed it; for we see the like in other infants, though of myself I remember it not. Thus, little by little, I began to find where I was; and to have a wish to express my wishes to those who could content them, and I could not; for the wishes were within me, and those persons without; nor could they by any sense of theirs enter within my soul. So I flung about at random limbs and voice, making the few signs I could, and such as I could, like, though in truth very little like, what I wished. And when I was not presently obeyed (my wishes being hurtful or unintelligible), then I was indignant with my elders for not submitting to me; with those owing me no service, for not serving me; and avenged myself on them by tears. Such have I learnt infants to be from observing them; and, that I was myself such, they, all unconscious, have shown me better than my nurses who knew it.

9. And, lo! my infancy died long since, and I live. But Thou, Lord, who for ever livest, and in whom nothing dies: for before the foundation of the worlds, and before all that can be called "before," Thou art, and art God and Lord of all which Thou hast created: in Thee abide, fixed for ever, the first causes of all things unabiding; and of all things changeable, the springs abide in Thee unchangeable: and in Thee live the eternal reasons of all things unreasoning and temporal. Say, Lord, to me, Thy suppliant; say, all-pitying, to me, Thy pitiable one; say, did my infancy succeed another age of mine that died before it?

Was it that which I spent within my mother's womb? for of that I have heard somewhat, and have myself seen women with child. And what, again, was I before that life, O God my joy? Was I anywhere or anybody? For this have I none to tell me, neither father nor mother, nor experience of others, nor mine own memory. Dost Thou laugh at me for asking this and bid me praise Thee and acknowledge Thee, for that which I do know?

10. I acknowledge Thee, Lord of heaven and earth, and praise Thee for my first rudiments of being, and my infancy, whereof I remember nothing; for Thou hast appointed that man should from others guess much as to himself; and believe much on the authority of simple women. Even then I had a being and a life, and (at my infancy's close) I sought for signs, whereby to make myself known to others. Whence could such a being be, save from Thee, Lord? Shall any be his own artifeer? or can there elsewhere be derived any vein, which may stream essence and life into us, save from Thee, O Lord, in whom essence and life are not several but one? for supremely to live is the very thing in itself which Thou art. *For Thou art supreme, and art not changed,*¹ neither in Thee doth to-day come to a close; yet in Thee doth it come to a close; because all transitory things also are in Thee. For they had no way to pass away, unless Thou upheldest them. And since *Thy years fail not,*² Thy years are one to-day. How many of ours and our fathers' years have

¹ Mal. iii. 6.

² Ps. cii. 27.

flowed away through Thy “to-day,” and from it received the measure and the mould of a kind of being; and still others shall flow away, and so receive the mould of their kind of being. But *Thou art still the same*,¹ and all things of to-morrow, and all beyond, and all of yesterday, and all behind it, Thou wilt do in this “to-day,” Thou hast done in this “to-day.” What is it to me, though any comprehend not this? Let him also rejoice and say, *What thing is this?*² Let him rejoice even thus; and be content rather by not discovering to discover Thee, than by discovering not to discover Thee.

VII. 11. Hear, O God. Alas, for man’s sin! So saith man, and Thou pitiest him; for Thou madest him, but sin in him Thou madest not. Who remindeth me of the sins of my infancy? *for in Thy sight none is pure from sin, not even the infant whose life is but a day upon the earth.*³ Who remindeth me? doth not each little infant, in whom I see what of myself I remember not? What then was my sin? was it that I hung upon the breast and cried? for should I now so do for food suitable to my age, justly should I be laughed at and reproved. What I then did was in itself worthy reproof; but since I could not understand reproof, custom and reason forbade me to be reproved. For such things, when we are grown, we root out and cast away. Now, no man, though he prunes, wittingly casts away what is good.⁴ Or was it then good, even for a while, to cry for what, if given, would hurt? bitterly to resent, that persons

¹ Ps. cii. 27.² Exod. xvi. 15.³ Job xxv. 4.⁴ John xv. 2.

free-born, and its own elders, yea, the very authors of its birth, served it not? that many besides, wiser than it, obeyed not the nod of its good pleasure? to do its best to strike and hurt, because commands were not obeyed, which had been obeyed to its hurt? The weakness then of infant limbs, not its will, is its innocence. Myself have seen and known even a baby envious; it could not speak, yet it turned pale and looked bitterly on its foster-brother. Who knows not this? Mothers and nurses tell you, that they allay these things by I know not what remedies. Is that too innocence, when the fountain of milk is flowing in rich abundance, not to endure one to share it though in extremest need, and whose very life as yet depends thereon? We bear gently with all this, not as being no or slight evils, but because they will disappear as years increase; for, though tolerated now, the very same tempers are utterly intolerable when found in riper years.

12. Thou, then, O Lord my God, who gavest life to this my infancy, furnishing thus with senses (as we see) the frame Thou gavest, compacting its limbs, beautifying its proportions, and, for its general good and safety, implanting in it all vital functions, Thou commandest me to praise Thee in these things, *to confess unto Thee, and sing unto Thy name, Thou most High.*¹ For Thou art God, Almighty and Good, even hadst Thou done nought but only this, which none could do but Thou: whose Unity is the mould of all things; who out of Thy own beauty

¹ Ps. xcii. 1.

makest all things fair; and orderest all things by Thy law. This age then, Lord, whereof I have no remembrance, which I take on others' word, and guess from other infants—that I have passed, true though the guess be, I am yet loath to count in this life of mine which I live in this world. For no less than that which I spent in my mother's womb, is it hid from me in the shadows of forgetfulness. But if *I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me*,¹ where, I beseech Thee, O my God, where, Lord, or when, was I Thy servant guiltless? But, lo! that period I pass by; for what have I now to do with that, of which I can recall no vestige?

VIII. 13. From the state of infancy, I came to boyhood, or rather it came to me, displacing infancy. Nor did that depart — (for whither went it?) — and yet it was no more. For I was no longer a speechless infant, but a speaking boy. This I remember; and have since observed how I learned to speak. It was not that my elders taught me words (as, soon after, other learning) in any set method; but I, longing by eries and broken accents and various motions of my limbs to express my thoughts, that so I might have my will, and yet unable to express all I willed, or to whom I willed, did myself, by the understanding which Thou, my God, gavest me, practise the sounds in my memory. When they named anything, and as they spoke turned towards it, I saw and remembered that they called what they would point out, by the name they uttered. And that they

¹ Ps. li. 7.

meant this thing and no other, was plain from the motion of their body, the natural language, as it were, of all nations, expressed by the countenance, glances of the eye, gestures of the limbs, and tones of the voice, indicating the affections of the mind, as it pursues, possesses, rejects, or shuns. And thus by constantly hearing words, as they occurred in various sentences, I collected gradually for what they stood ; and having broken in my mouth to these signs, I thereby gave utterance to my will. Thus I exchanged with those about me these current signs of our wills, and so launched deeper into the stormy intercourse of human life, yet depending on parental authority and the beck of elders.

IX. 14. O God, my God, what miseries and mockeries did I now experience, when obedience to my teachers was proposed to me, as proper in a boy, in order that in this world I might prosper, and excel in tongue-science, which should serve to the “praise of men,” and to deceitful riches. Next I was put to school to get learning, in which I (poor wretch) knew not what use there was ; and yet, if idle in learning, I was beaten. For this was judged right by our forefathers ; and many, passing the same course before us, framed for us weary paths, through which we were fain to pass ; multiplying toil and grief upon the sons of Adam. But, O Lord, we found that men called upon Thee, and we learnt from them to think of Thee (according to our powers) as of some great One, who, though hidden from our senses, could hear and help us. So I began, yet a boy, to

pray to Thee for aid and refuge; and I broke the fetters of my tongue to call on Thee, praying, though small, yet with no small earnestness, that I might not be beaten at school. And when Thou heardest me not (*not thereby giving me over to folly*),¹ my elders, yea, my very parents, who yet wished me no ill, laughed at my stripes, my then great and grievous misery.

15. Is there, Lord, any of soul so great, and cleaving to Thee with so intense affection (for a sort of stupidity will in a way do it); but is there any one who, from cleaving devoutly to Thee, is endued with so great a spirit, that he can think as lightly of the racks and hooks and other torments (against which, throughout all lands, men call on Thee with extreme dread), and make sport at those by whom they are feared most bitterly, as our parents laughed at the torments which we suffered in boyhood from our masters? For we feared not those torments less than the martyrs theirs, nor prayed we less to escape them. And yet we sinned, in writing, or reading, or studying less than was exacted of us. For we wanted not, O Lord, memory or capacity, whereof Thy will gave enough for our age; but our sole delight was play; and for this we were punished by those who yet themselves were doing the like. But elder folks' idleness is called "business;" that of boys, although really the same, is punished by those elders; and none commiserate either boys or men. For will any of sound discretion approve of my being beaten as a boy, be-

¹ Ps. xxi. 3.—Vulg.

cause, by playing at ball, I made less progress in studies which I was to learn, only that, as a man, I might play more dangerously? for how else was it with him who beat me? if worsted in some trifling discussion with his fellow-tutor, he was more embittered and jealous than I, when beaten at ball by a play-fellow?

X. 16. And yet, I sinned herein, O Lord God, the Creator and Orderer of all things in nature, of sin the Orderer¹ only, O Lord my God, I sinned in transgressing the commands of my parents and those of my masters. For what they, with whatever motive would have me learn, I might afterward have put to good use; and I disobeyed, not from a better choice, but from love of play, loving the pride of victory in my contests, and to have my ears tickled with lying fables, that they might itch the more; the same curiosity flashing from my eyes more and more, for the shows and games of my elders. Yet those who give these shows are in such esteem, that almost all wish the same for their children, and yet are very willing that they should be beaten, if those very games detain them from the studies, whereby they would have them attain to be the givers of them. Look with pity, Lord, on these things, and deliver us who call upon Thee now; deliver those too who call not on Thee yet, that they may call on Thee, and Thou mayest deliver them.

XI. 17. As a boy, then, I had already heard of an eternal life, promised us through the humility of the

¹ Ordinator.

Lord our God stooping to our pride ; and even from the womb of my mother, who greatly hoped in Thee, I was sealed with the mark of His cross and salted with His salt.¹ Thou sawest, Lord, how while yet a boy, being seized on a time with sudden oppression of the stomach, and like near to death — Thou sawest, my God (for Thou wert my keeper), with what eagerness and what faith I sought, from the pious care of my mother and Thy Church, the mother of us all, the baptism of Thy Christ my God and Lord. Whereupon the mother of my flesh, being much troubled (since, with a heart pure in Thy faith, she even more lovingly *travailed in birth*² of my salvation), would in eager haste have provided for my consecration and cleansing by the health-giving sacraments, confessing Thee, Lord Jesus, for the remission of sins, unless I had suddenly recovered. And so, as if I must needs be again polluted should I live, my cleansing was deferred, because the defilements of sin would, after that washing, bring greater and more perilous guilt. I then already believed : and my mother, and the whole household, except my father : yet did not he prevail over the power of my mother's piety in me, that as he did not yet believe, so neither should I. For it was her earnest care, that Thou my God, rather than he, shouldst be my father ; and in this Thou didst aid her to prevail over her husband, whom she, although she was the better

¹ Salt was at this time administered at baptism as emblematic, and with allusion to Mark 9: 49. But the baptism was delayed.—ED.

² Gal. iv. 19.

of the two, obeyed, because this was obeying Thee, who hast so commanded.

18. I beseech Thee, my God, I would fain know, if so Thou willest, for what purpose my baptism was then deferred? Was it for my good that the rein was laid loose, as it were, upon me, for me to sin? or was it not laid loose? If not, why does it still echo in our ears on all sides, "Let him alone, let him do as he will, for he is not yet baptized?" but as to bodily health, no one says, "Let him be worse wounded, for he is not yet healed." How much better, then, had I been at once healed; and then, by my friends' diligence and my own, my soul's recovered health had been kept safe in Thy keeping who gavest it. Better truly. But how many and great waves of temptation seemed to hang over me after my boyhood! These my mother foresaw; and preferred to expose to them the clay whence I might afterwards be moulded, than the very cast, when made.

XII. 19. In boyhood itself, however (so much less dreaded for me than youth), I loved not study, and hated to be forced to it. Yet I was forced; and this was well done towards me, but I did not well; for, unless forced, I had not learnt. But no one doth well against his will, even though what he doth, be well. Yet neither did they well who forced me, but what was well came to me from Thee, my God. For they were regardless how I should employ what they forced me to learn, except to satiate the insatiate desires of a wealthy beggary, and a shameful glory. But Thou, *by whom the very hairs of our head are*

numbered,¹ didst use for my good the error of all who urged me to learn; and my own, who would not learn, Thou didst use for my punishment—a fit penalty for one, so small a boy and so great a sinner. So by those who did not well, Thou didst well for me; and by my own sin Thou didst justly punish me. For Thou hast commanded, and so it is, that every inordinate affection should be its own punishment.

XIII. 20. But why did I so much hate the Greek, which I studied as a boy? I do not yet fully know. For the Latin I loved; not what my first masters, but what the so-called grammarians taught me. For those first lessons, reading, writing, and arithmetic, I thought as great a burden and penalty as any Greek. And yet whence was this too, but from the sin and vanity of this life, because *I was flesh, and a breath that passeth away and cometh not again?*² For those first lessons were better certainly, because more certain; by them I obtained, and still retain, the power of reading what I find written, and myself writing what I will; whereas in the others, I was forced to learn and lay up the wanderings of I know not what Æneas, while I forgot my own, and to weep for Dido dead, because she killed herself for love; the while, with dry eyes, I endured my miserable self to depart, and die from Thee, O my God and my life.

21. For what more miserable than a miserable being who pities not himself; but weeps the death of Dido for love to Æneas, instead of weeping his own

¹ Matt. x. 30.

² Ps. lxxviii. 39.

death for want of love to Thee, O God. Thou light of my heart, Thou bread of my inmost soul, Thou Power who givest vigor to my mind, who quickenest my thoughts, I loved Thee not. I committed fornication against Thee, and all around me also fornicating echoed "Well done! well done!" *for the friendship of this world is fornication against Thee*,¹ and "Well done! well done!" echoes on till one is ashamed not to be thus a man. And all this I wept not, I who wept for Dido slain and "seeking by the sword a stroke and wound extreme," myself seeking the while a worse extreme, the extremest and lowest of Thy creatures, having forsaken Thee, earth passing into the earth. And if forbid to read all this, I was grieved that I might not read what grieved me. Madness like this is thought a higher and a richer learning, than that by which I learned to read and write.

22. But now, my God, cry Thou aloud in my soul, and let Thy truth tell me, "Not so, not so. Far better was that first study." For, lo, I would readily forget the wanderings of Æneas and all the rest, rather than how to read and write. But over the entrance of the Grammar School is a veil drawn. True. Yet is this not so much an emblem of anght recondite, as a cloak of error. Let not those, whom I no longer fear, cry out against me, while I confess to Thee, my God, whatever my soul will, and acquiesce in the condemnation of my evil ways, that I may love thy good ways. Let not either buyers or

¹ Jam. iv. 4.

sellers of grammar-learning cry out against me. For if I question them whether it be true, that Æneas came on a time to Carthage, as the Poet tells, the less learned will reply that they know not, the more learned that he never did. But should I ask with what letters the name “Æneas” is written, every one who has learnt this will answer me aright, as to the signs which men have conventionally settled. If, again, I should ask, which might be forgotten with least detriment to the concerns of life, reading and writing or these poetic fictions? who does not foresee, what all must answer who have not wholly forgotten themselves? I sinned, then, when as a boy I preferred those empty to those more profitable studies, or rather loved the one and hated the other. “One and one, two;” “two and two, four;” this was to me a hateful sing-song: “the wooden horse lined with armed men” and “the burning of Troy,”ⁱ and “Creusa’s shade and sad similitude,” were the choice spectacle of my vanity.

XIV. 23. Why then did I hate the Greek classics, which have the like tales? For Homer also curiously wove the like fictions, and is most sweetly-vain, yet was he bitter to my boyish taste. And so I suppose would Virgil be to Grecian children, when forced to learn him as I was Homer. Difficulty, in truth, the difficulty of a foreign tongue, dashed, as it were, with gall all the sweetness of Grecian fable. For not one word of it did I understand, and to make me understand I was urged vehemently with

ⁱ *AEn.* 2.

cruel threats and punishments. Time was also (as an infant), I knew no Latin ; but this I learned without fear or suffering, by mere observation, amid the caresses of my nursery and jests of friends, smiling and sportively encouraging me. This I learned without any pressure of punishment to urge me on, for my heart urged me to give birth to its conceptions, which I could only do by learning words ; but it was not of teachers, but of those who talked with me ; in whose ears also I gave birth to the thoughts which I conceived. Hereby it appears that free curiosity has more force in our learning of tongues than frightful enforcement. Only this enforcement restrains the rovings of that freedom, through Thy laws, O my God, which begin with the master's ferule, and go on to the martyr's torments, tempering for us a wholesome bitter, recalling us to Thyself from that deadly pleasure which lures us from Thee.

XV. 24. Hear, Lord, my prayer; let not my soul faint under Thy discipline, nor let me faint in confessing unto Thee all Thy mercies, whereby Thou hast drawn me out of all my most evil ways, that Thou mightest become a delight to me above all the allurements which I once pursued ; that I may most entirely love Thee, and clasp Thy hand with all the roots of my heart, and Thou mayest yet rescue me from every temptation, even unto the end. For, lo, O Lord, my King and my God, for Thy service be whatever useful thing my childhood learned ; for Thy service, that I speak—write—read—reckon. For Thou didst grant me Thy discipline, while I was learning

vanities; and my sin of delighting in those vanities Thou hast forgiven. In them, indeed; I learnt many a useful word, but these may as well be learned in things not vain; and that is the safe path for the steps of youth.

XVI. 25. But woe is thee, thou torrent of human custom? Who shall stand against thee? How long shalt thou not be dried up? How long shall the sons of Eve roll and toss in that huge and hideous sea, which even they scarcely overpass who are shipped in the cross? Did not I read in thee of Jove the thunderer and the adulterer? both, doubtless, he could not be; but so the feigned thunderer might countenance and pander the real adulterer. And now, which of our gowned masters would hear one¹ who from their own school cries out, "These were Homer's fictions, transferring things human to the gods; would he had brought down things divine to us!" Yet more truly had he said, "These are indeed his fictions; attributing a divine nature to wicked men, that crimes might be no longer crimes, and whoso commits them might seem to imitate not abandoned men, but the celestial gods."

26. And yet, thou hellish torrent, into thee are cast the sons of men with promise of rich reward, for compassing such learning; and a great solemnity is made of it, when this is going on in the forum, within sight of laws appointing a salary beside the scholar's payments; and thou lashest thy rocks and roarest, "Hence words are learnt; hence eloquence; most

¹ Cicero in *Tusc. Quæst.*, I. 26. — ED.

necessary to gain your ends, or maintain opinions." As if we should have never known such words as "golden shower," "lap," "beguile," "temples of the heavens," or others in that passage, unless Terence had brought a lewd youth upon the stage, setting up Jupiter as his example of seduction :

- Viewing a picture, where the tale was drawn,
Of Jove's descending in a golden shower
To Danae's lap, a woman to beguile.

And then mark how he excites himself to lust as by celestial authority :

And what God? Great Jove,
Who shakes heaven's highest temples with his thunder:
And I, poor mortal man, not do the same?
I did it, and with all my heart I did it.¹

Not one whit more easily are the words learnt for all this vileness; but by their means the vileness is committed with less shame. Not that I blame the words, being, as it were, choice and precious vessels; but that wine of error which is drunk to us in them by intoxicated teachers; and if we, too, drink not, we are beaten, and have no sober judge to whom we may appeal. Yet, O my God (in whose presence I now without hurt may remember this), all this unhappy I learnt willingly with great delight, and for this was pronounced a hopeful boy.

XVII. 27. Bear with me, my God, while I say somewhat of my wit, Thy gift, and on what dotages I wasted it. For a task was set me, troublesome enough to my soul, upon terms of praise or shame,

¹ *Terentii Eunuchus*, 3, 5, 36 sq. — ED.

and fear of stripes, to speak the words of Juno, as she raged and mourned that she could not

This Trojan prince from Latium turn.

Which words I had heard that Juno never uttered; but we were forced to go astray in the footsteps of these poetic fictions, and to say in prose what the poet had expressed in verse. And his speaking was most applauded, in whom the passions of rage and grief were most preëminent, and clothed in the most fitting language, maintaining the dignity of the character. What is it to me, O my true life, my God, that my declamation was applauded above so many of my own age and class? Was not all this smoke and wind? And was there nothing else whereon to exercise my wit and tongue? Thy praises, Lord, Thy praises might have stayed the yet tender shoot of my heart by the prop of Thy Scriptures; so had it not trailed away amid these empty trifles, a defiled prey for the spirits of the air. For in more ways than one do men sacrifice to the rebellious angels.

XVIII. 28. But what marvel that I was thus carried away to vanities, and estranged from Thee, O my God, when men were set before me as models, who, if in relating some action of theirs, in itself not ill, they committed some barbarism or solecism, were abashed; but when in rich and adorned and well-ordered discourse they related their own disordered life they gloried? These things Thou seest, Lord, and holdest Thy peace; *long-suffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth.*¹ Wilt Thou hold Thy peace for-

¹ Ps. lxxxvi. 15.

ever? Even now Thou drawest out of this horrible gulf the soul that seeketh Thee, that thirsteth for Thy pleasures, *whose heart saith unto Thee I have sought Thy face; Thy face, Lord, will I seek.*¹ For darkened² affection is removal from Thee. For it is not by our feet, or change of place, that we leave Thee, or return unto Thee. Nor did that younger son of Thine³ look out for horses or chariots, or ships, and fly with visible wings, or journey by the motion of his limbs, that he might in a far country waste in riotous living all Thou gavest at his departure. A loving Father Thou wert when Thou gavest, but more loving unto him wert Thou when he returned empty. Therefore in unclean, that is, in darkened affections, is the true distance from Thy face.

29. Behold, O Lord God, yea, behold patiently as Thou art wont, how carefully the sons of men observe the covenanted rules of letters and syllables that those who spake before them used, neglecting the eternal covenant of everlasting salvation received from Thee. Inasmuch, that a teacher or learner of the hereditary laws of pronunciation will more offend men, by speaking without the aspirate, of a “uman being,” in despite of the laws of grammar, than if he, a “human being,” hate a “human being” in despite of Thee. As if an enemy could be more hurtful than the hatred with which he is incensed against another; or could wound more deeply him whom he persecutes, than he wounds his own

¹ Ps. xxvii. 8.

² Rom. i. 21.

³ Luke xv. 12 sq.

soul by his enmity. Assuredly no science of letters can be so innate as the record of conscience, "that he is doing to another what from another he would be loath to suffer." How deep are Thy ways, O God, Thou only great *that sittest silent on high*¹ and by an unwearied law dispensing penal blindness to lawless desires. In quest of the fame of eloquence, a man standing before a human judge, surrounded by a human throng, declaiming against his enemy with fiercest hatred, will take heed most watchfully, lest, by an error of the tongue, he murder the word "human being;" but takes no heed, lest, through the malice of his heart, he murder the real human being.

30. This was the world at whose gate I lay while yet a boy; this the stage, when I had feared more to commit a barbarism, than having committed one, to envy those who had not. These things I speak and confess to Thee, my God; for which I had praise from them, whom I then thought it all virtue to please. For I saw not the abyss of vileness, wherein *I was cast away from thine eyes.*² Before Thine eyes what was more foul than I, displeasing even to such as myself? with innumerable lies deceiving my tutor, my masters, my parents, out of love of play, eagerness to see vain shows and restlessness to imitate them! Thefts also I committed, from my parents' cellar and table, enslaved by greediness, or that I might have to give to boys, who sold me their games, which all the while they liked no less than I. In play, too, I often sought unfair conquests, being

conquered myself by vain desire of preëminence. And what could I so impatiently endure, or, when I detected it, upbraid so fiercely, as that which I was doing to others; and yet when I was detected and upbraided, I chose rather to quarrel than to yield. And is this the innocence prone to boyhood? Not so, Lord, not so; I cry thy mercy, O my God. For these very sins, as riper years succeed, these very sins are transferred from tutors and masters, from nuts and balls and sparrows, to magistrates and kings, to gold and manors and slaves, just as severer punishments displace the ferule. It was the low stature then of childhood, which Thou our King didst commend as an emblem of lowness, when Thou saidst, *Of such is the kingdom of heaven.*¹

31. Yet, Lord, to Thee, the Creator and Governor of the universe, most excellent and most good, thanks were due to Thee our God, even hadst Thou destined for me boyhood only. For even then I was, I lived, and felt; and had an implanted providence over my own individual welfare,² which is a kind of miniature of that mysterious Unity of Thine, whence I am derived. By an inward instinct, I preserved the integrity of my senses, and in these minute pursuits, and in my thoughts on things minute, I learnt to delight in truth. I hated to be deceived; I had a vigorous memory, was gifted with speech, was regaled by friendship, avoided pain of body, baseness of mind, ignorance. In so small a creature, what was not wonderful, admirable? But all were gifts of my

¹ Matt. xix. 14.

² Meamque incolumitatem . . . curæ habebam.

God; it was not I, who gave them me; and good these are, and these together are myself. Good, then, is He that made me, and He is my good; and before Him will I exult for every good which as a boy I had. But herein I sin, that not in Him, but in His creatures — myself and others — I sought for pleasures, sublimities, truths, and so fell headlong into sorrows, confusions, errors. Thanks be to Thee, my joy and my glory and my confidence, my God, thanks be to Thee for Thy gifts; but do Thou preserve them to me. For so wilt Thou preserve me, and those things shall be enlarged and perfected, which thou hast given me, and I myself shall be with Thee, since Thou hast given me my being.

THE SECOND BOOK.

OBJECT OF THESE CONFESSIONS — FURTHER ILLS OF IDLENESS DEVELOPED IN HIS SIXTEENTH YEAR — EVILS OF ILL SOCIETY, WHICH BETRAYED HIM INTO THEFT.

I. 1. I will now call to mind my past foulness, and the carnal corruptions of my soul; not because I love them, but that I may love Thee, O my God. For love of Thy love I do it; reviewing my most wicked ways in the very bitterness of my remembrance, that Thou mayest grow sweet unto me: O Thou sweetness never failing, Thou blissful and assured sweetness, gathering me again out of that dissipation wherein I was torn piecemeal, being turned from Thee, the One Good, and lost among a multiplicity of things. For in my youth I burned to be satiated, and dared to grow rank and wild with various and shadowy loves: *my beauty consumed away*, and I went rotting in Thine eyes; pleasing myself, and desirous to please the eyes of men.

II. 2. And what was it that I delighted in but to love, and be beloved? but I kept not the measure of love, of mind to mind, friendship's bright boundary; but out of the muddy concupisence of the flesh, and the bubblings of youth, mists fumed up which clouded and overcast my heart, that I could not discern the clear brightness of love, from the fog of

lustfulness. Both did confusedly boil in me, and hurried my unstayed youth over the precipice of unholy desires, and sunk me in a gulf of flagitiousness. Thy wrath had gathered over me, and I knew it not. I was grown deaf by the clanking of the chain of my mortality, the punishment of the pride of my soul, and I strayed further from Thee, and Thou lettest me alone, and I was tossed about, and wasted, and dissipated, and I boiled over in my fornications, and Thou heldest Thy peace, O Thou my tardy joy! Thou then heldest Thy peace, and I wandered further and further from Thee, into more and more fruitless seed-plots of sorrow, with a proud dejectedness, and a restless weariness.

3. Oh! that some one had then attempered my disorder, and turned to account the fleeting beauties of these the extreme points of Thy creation! had put a bound to their pleasurableness, so that the tides of my youth might have cast themselves upon the marriage shore, if they could not be calmed, and kept within the object of a family, as Thy law prescribes, O Lord: who this way formest the offspring of this our death, being able with a gentle hand to blunt the thorns, which were excluded from Thy paradise? For Thy omnipotency is not far from us, even when we be far from Thee. Else ought I more watchfully to have heeded the voice from the clouds: *Nevertheless such shall have trouble in the flesh, but I spare you.*¹ And *it is good for a man not to touch a woman.*² And *he that is unmarried thinketh of the*

¹ 1 Cor. vii. 28.

² 1 Cor. vii. 1.

things of the Lord, how he may please the Lord ; but he that is married careth for the things of this world, how he may please his wife.¹

4. To these words had I listened more attentively, I had more happily awaited Thy embraces ; but I, poor wretch, foamed like a troubled sea, following the rushing of my own tide, forsaking Thee, and transgressing all Thy limitations ; yet I escaped not Thy scourges. For what mortal can ? For Thou wert ever with me mercifully cruel, besprinkling with most bitter disgust all my unlawful pleasures : that I might seek pleasures without alloy. But where to find such I could not discover, save in Thee, O Lord, who *teachest by sorrow*, and woundest us, to heal ; and killlest us, lest we die from Thee.² Where was I, and how far went I exiled from the delicacies of Thy house, in that sixteenth year of the age of my flesh, when the madness of lust took the rule over me, and I resigned myself wholly to it ? My friends meanwhile took no care by marriage to save my fall ; their only care was that I should learn to speak excellently, and be a persuasive orator.

III. 5. For that year were my studies intermitted : whilst, after my return from Madaura (a neighboring city, whither I had journeyed to learn grammar and rhetorie), the expenses for a further journey to Carthage were being provided for me ; and that, rather by the resolution than the means of my father, who was but a poor freeman of Tageste. To whom tell I this ? not to Thee, my God ; but before Thee to

mine own kind, even to such small portion of mankind as may light upon these writings of mine. And to what purpose? that whosoever reads this, may think *out of what depths we are to cry unto Thee.*¹ For what is nearer to Thine ears than a confessing heart, and a life of faith? Who did not extol my father, that beyond the ability of his means, he would furnish his son with all necessaries for a far journey for his studies' sake? Many far abler citizens did no such thing for their children. But yet this same father had no concern how I grew towards Thee, or how chaste I were; nor, were I but copious in speech, how barren in Thy culture, O God, was the field of my heart.

6. But while in that my sixteenth year I lived with my parents, leaving school for a while (a season of idleness being interposed, through the narrowness of my parents' fortunes), the briers of unclean desire grew rank over my head, and there was no hand to root them out. When my father saw me at the baths, now growing toward manhood, and endued with a restless youthfulness, as if anticipating his descendants, he gladly told it to my mother; rejoicing in that tumult of the senses wherein the world forgetteth Thee, its Creator, and becometh enamoured of Thy creature, instead of Thyself, through the fumes of the invisible wine of its self-will, turning aside and bowing down to the very basest things. But in my mother's breast Thou hadst already Thy temple, and the foundation of

Thy holy habitation, whereas my father was as yet but a catechumen, and that but recently. She then was startled with an holy fear and trembling; and though I was not as yet baptized, feared for me those crooked ways, in which they walk, *who turn their back to Thee, and not their face.*¹

7 Woe is me! and dare I say that Thou heldest Thy peace, O my God, while I wandered further from Thee? Didst Thou then indeed hold Thy peace to me? And whose but thine were those words which by my mother, Thy faithful one, Thou sangest in my ears? But it entered not into my heart to do as she desired. For she wished, and I remember in private with great anxiety warned me, "not to commit fornication; but especially never to defile another man's wife." These seemed to me old wives' counsels, which I should blush to obey. But they were Thine, and I knew it not; and I thought Thou wert silent, and that it was she who spake; by whom Thou wert not silent unto me: and in her person wast Thou despised by me, her son, *the son of Thy handmaid, Thy servant.*² But I knew it not then; and I ran headlong with such blindness, that amongst my equals I was ashamed to be less vicious, when I heard them boast of their wickedness; yea, and the more boast, the more they were degraded; and I took pleasure, not only in the pleasure of the deed, but in the praise. What is worthy of blame but Vice? But I made myself worse than I was, that I might not be dispraised; and when in any-

thing I had not sinned like the abandoned ones, I would say that I had done what I had not done, that I might not seem contemptible in proportion as I was innocent: or of less account, the more chaste.

8. Behold with what companions I walked the streets of Babylon, and wallowed in the mire thereof, as if in a bed of spices and precious ointments. And that I might be knit the more firmly to the very root of sin, the invisible enemy trod me down, and seduced me, for I was then made fit matter for him to work upon. Neither did the mother of my flesh (who had now *fled out of the centre of Babylon*,¹ yet went more slowly in the skirts thereof), although she advised me to chastity, so heed what she had heard of me from her husband, as to restrain within the bounds of conjugal affection (if it could not be pared away to the quick), what she felt to be pestilent at present, and for the future dangerous. She heeded not this, lest a wife should prove a clog and hindrance to my hopes. Not those hopes of the world to come, which my mother reposed in Thee; but the hope of learning, which both my parents were too desirous I should attain; my father, because he had next to no thought of Thee, and of me but vain conceits; my mother, because she accounted that those usual courses of learning would not only be no hindrance, but even some furtherance towards attaining Thee. Thus I conjecture, recalling, as well as I may, the disposition of my parents. The reins, meantime, were slackened to me,

beyond all reason, to spend my time in sport, yea, giving too large a scope to my affections. And in all was a mist, intercepting from me, O my God, the brightness of Thy truth; and *mine iniquity burst out as from very fatness.*¹

IV. 9. Theft is punished by Thy Law, O Lord, and the law written in the hearts of men, which iniquity itself cannot blot out. For what thief will endure a thief? not even a rich thief will endure one who steals through want. Yet I lusted to thieve, and did it, compelled by no hunger, nor poverty, but through a disgust at well-doing, and a pamperedness of iniquity. For I stole that of which I had enough and much better. Nor cared I to enjoy what I stole, but joyed in the theft and sin itself. A pear tree there was near our vineyard, laden with fruit, tempting neither for color nor taste. To shake and rob this, some lewd young fellows of us went, late one night (having, according to our pestilent custom, prolonged our sports in the streets till then), and took huge loads, not for our eating, but to fling to the very hogs, having only tasted them. And this we did only because we would do that which was not lawful.² Behold my heart, O God, behold my heart, which Thou hadst pity upon in the bottom of the bottomless pit. Now, behold let my heart tell Thee what it sought when I would be gratuitously evil, having no temptation to ill, but the ill itself. It was foul, and I loved it; I loved to perish, I loved my

¹ Ps. lxxiii. 7.

² Baxter in his autobiography makes a confession almost identical with this one. See Book I Pt. i. — ED.

own fault; not that for which I was faulty, but my fault itself. Foul soul, falling from Thy firmament to utter destruction; not seeking aught through the shame, but the shame itself!

V. 10. For there is an attractiveness in beautiful bodies, in gold and silver, and all things; and in bodily touch sympathy has much influence, and each other sense hath his proper object answerably tempered. Worldly honor hath also its grace, and the power of overcoming, and of mastery; whence springs also the thirst of revenge. But yet, to obtain all these, we may not depart from Thee, O Lord, nor decline from Thy law. The life also whereby we live hath its own enchantment, through a certain proportion of its own, and a correspondence with all things beautiful here below. Human friendship also is endeared with a sweet tie, by reason of the unity formed of many souls. Upon occasion of all these, and the like, is sin committed, while through an immoderate inclination towards these goods of the lowest order, the better and higher are forsaken,— Thyself, our Lord God, Thy truth, and Thy law. For these lower things have their delights, but they are not like my God, who made all things; for *in Him doth the righteous delight, and He is the joy of the upright in heart.*¹

11. When, therefore, inquiry is made why any wickedness was done, it is usually conceived to have proceeded either from the desire of obtaining some of those things which we called lower goods, or

from a fear of losing them. For they are beautiful and comely; although, compared with higher and beatific goods, they be abject and low. A man hath murdered another; why? he loved his wife or his estate; or would rob for his own livelihood; or feared to lose something by him; or was on fire to be revenged. Would any commit murder only for the delight he takes in murdering? Who would believe it? For as for that furious and savage man, of whom it is said that he was gratuitously evil and cruel, yet is the cause assigned; "lest," saith he, "through idleness hand or heart should grow inactive."¹ And to what end? that, through that practice of guilt, he might, when once he had taken the city, attain to honor, empire, riches, and be freed from fear of the laws, which he feared through the conscience of his own villainy, and from the possibility of want. So not even Catiline himself loved his own villainies, but something else, to obtain which he would be wicked.

VI. 12. What then did wretched I so love in thee, thou theft of mine, thou deed of darkness, in that sixteenth year of my age? Lovely thou wert not, because thou wert theft. But art thou any thing, that thus I speak to thee? Fair were the pears we stole, because they were Thy creation, Thou fairest of all, Creator of all, Thou good God; God, the sovereign good and my true good. Fair were those pears, but not them did my wretched soul desire; for I had store of better, and I gath-

¹ Sallustii *Catilina*, 16 — ED.

ered those only that I might steal. For, when gathered, I flung them away, my only feast therein being my own sin, which I was pleased to enjoy. For if aught of those pears came within my mouth, what sweetened it was the sin. And now, O Lord my God, I enquire what in that theft delighted me; and behold it hath no loveliness; I mean not such loveliness as in justice and wisdom; nor such as is in the mind and memory, and senses, and animal life of man; nor yet as the stars are glorious and beautiful in their orbs; or the earth, or sea, full of embryo life, replacing by its birth that which decayeth; nay nor even that false and shadowy beauty, which belongeth to deceiving vices.

13. For so doth pride imitate exaltedness; whereas Thou alone art God exalted over all. Ambition, what seeks it, but honors and glory? whereas Thou alone art to be honored above all, and glorious for evermore. The cruelty of the great would fain be feared; but who is to be feared but God alone, out of whose power what can be wrested or withdrawn? when, or where, or whither, or by whom? The tenderness of the wanton would fain be counted love: yet is nothing more tender than Thy charity; nor is aught loved more healthfully than that Thy truth, bright and beautiful above all. Curiosity makes semblance of a desire of knowledge; whereas Thou supremely knowest all. Yea, ignorance and foolishness itself is cloaked under the name of simplicity and harmlessness; yet nothing is found more single than Thee: and what less injurious, since they are

his own works, which injure the sinner? Yes, sloth would fain be at rest; but what stable rest besides the Lord? Luxury affects to be called plenty and abundance; but Thou art the fulness and never-failing plenteousness of incorruptible pleasures. Prodigality presents a show of liberality: but Thou art the most overflowing Giver of all good. Covetousness would possess many things; and Thou possessest all things. Envy wrangles for precedence; but what can contend with Thee? Anger seeks revenge; and who revenges justly but Thou? Fear startles at things unwonted or sudden, which endanger things beloved, and takes forethought for their safety; but to Thee what is unwonted or sudden, or who can separate from Thee what Thou lovest?¹ Or where but with Thee is safety? Grief pines away for the lost delight of its desires; and wishes that it might not be deprived of any thing, more than Thou canst be.

14. Thus doth the soul commit fornication, when she turns from Thee, seeking otherwhere than in Thee, what she findeth not pure and untainted till she returns to Thee. Thus perversely all imitate Thee, who remove far from Thee, and lift themselves up against Thee. But even by thus imitating Thee, they imply Thee to be the Creator of all nature; and that there is no place whither they can retire from Thee. What then did I love in that theft? and wherein did I even corruptly and perversely imitate my Lord? Did I wish, by a kind of sleight,

¹ Rom. viii. 9.

to do contrary to Thy law, because I could not by strong hand; that whilst I was no better than a bond slave, I might counterfeit a false liberty, by doing without punishment what I could not do without sin, in a darkened likeness of Thy Omnipotency?

VII. 15. Behold this slave, fleeing from his Lord, and laying hold of a shadow.¹ O rottenness! O monstrousness of life, and depth of death! did I like what I ought not, only because I ought not? *What shall I render unto the Lord?*² that, whilst my memory recalls these things, my soul is not affrighted at them? *Make me to love Thee, O Lord, and thank Thee, and confess unto Thy name;* because Thou hast forgiven me these great and heinous deeds of mine, and hast melted away my sins as they were ice. To Thy grace I ascribe also whatsoever sins I have not committed; for what might I not have done, who even loved a sin for its own sake? Yea, I confess all to have been forgiven me; both what evils I committed by my own wilfulness, and what by Thy help I committed not. What man is he, who, weighing his own infirmity, dares to ascribe his chastity and innocence to his own strength; that so he should love Thee the less, as if he less needed Thy mercy, whereby Thou remittest sins to those that turn to Thee? For whosoever, called by Thee, followed Thy voice, and avoided those things which he finds me recalling and confessing of myself, let him not laugh at me, who, being sick, was cured by that Physician, through whose aid it

¹ Jonah i. 4.

² Ps. cxvi. 12.

was that he is not sick at all, or rather is less sick; but let him love Thee as much as I do, yea, and more; since he sees me to have been recovered from such deep consumption of sin, by Him who preserved him from the like consumption of sin.

VIII. 16. *And what fruit had I even from those things, of the remembrance whereof I am now ashamed?*¹ Especially from that theft which I loved for the theft's sake; it was nothing, and therefore the more miserable was I, who loved it. Alone, I had not done it: such as I was then, I remember, alone I had never done it. I loved it in the company of the accomplices, with whom I did it. Did I then love something else besides the theft? Nay I did love nothing else; for that circumstance of the company was also nothing. Who can teach me the truth, save He that enlighteneth my heart, and discovereth its dark corners? What is this which I take in hand to inquire, and discuss, and consider? For had I loved the pears I stole, and wished to enjoy them, I might have done it alone, had the bare commission of the theft sufficed to secure my pleasure; nor needed I have inflamed the itching of my desires, by the excitement of accomplices. But since my pleasure was not in those pears, it was in the offence itself, to which the company of fellow-sinners did concur.

IX. 17. What, then, was this feeling? Of a truth it was foul: and woe was me, who had it; but yet what was it? *Who can understand his errors?*² It

¹ Rom. vi. 21.

² Ps. xix. 12.

was the sport, which, as it were, tickled our hearts, in that we deceived those who little thought what we were doing, and would have disliked it. Why then was my delight of such sort, that I did it not alone? Because none doth ordinarily laugh alone? ordinarily no one; yet laughter sometimes masters men alone and singly when no one whatever is with them, if anything very ludicrous presents itself to their senses or mind. But I had not done this alone; alone, I had never, never done it. Behold, my God, before Thee, the vivid remembrance of my soul; alone, I had never committed that theft; for what I stole pleased me not. O friendship, thou art too unfriendly! thou incomprehensible seducer of the soul; out of mirth and wantonness grow desire to do others hurt, without lust of our own gain or revenge: but when it is said, "Let's go, let's do it," we are ashamed not to be shameless.

X. 18. Who can disentangle that twisted and intricate knottiness of my soul? Foul is it: I hate to think on it, to look on it. But Thee I long for, O Righteousness and Innocency, beautiful and comely to all pure eyes, and of a satisfaction unsating. With Thee is rest entire, and life imperturbable. He that enters into Thee, *enters into the joy of his Lord;*¹ and shall not fear, and shall do excellently in the All-Excellent. I sank away from Thee, and I wandered, O my God, too much astray from Thee my stay, in these days of my youth, and I became to myself a barren land.

¹ Matt. xxv. 21.

THE THIRD BOOK.

HIS RESIDENCE AT CARTHAGE FROM HIS SEVENTEENTH TO HIS NINETEENTH YEAR — SOURCE OF HIS DISORDERS — LOVE OF SHOWS — ADVANCE IN STUDIES, AND LOVE OF WISDOM — DISTASTE FOR SCRIPTURE — LED ASTRAY TO THE MANICHÆANS — REFUTATION OF SOME OF THEIR TENETS — GRIEF OF HIS MOTHER MONICA AT HIS HERESY, AND PRAYERS FOR HIS CONVERSION — HER VISION FROM GOD, AND ANSWER THROUGH A BISHOP.

I. 1. To Carthage I came, where there sang all around me in my ears a cauldron of unholy loves. I loved not truly, as yet, yet I loved to love, and out of a deep-seated craving, I hated myself for not craving. I sought what I might love, in love with loving, and safety I hated, and a way without snares. For within me was a famine of that inward food, Thyself, my God; yet, through that famine I was not hungered; but was without all longing for incorruptible sustenance, not because filled therewith, but the more empty, the more I loathed it. For this cause my soul was sickly and full of sores, it miserably cast itself forth, desiring to be scraped by the touch of objects of sense. Yet if these had not a soul, they would not be objects of love. To love then, and to be beloved, was sweet to me; but more when I obtained to enjoy the person I loved. I defiled, therefore, the clear spring of friendship with the filth of concupiscence, and I beclouded its brightness with the

hell of lustfulness; and thus foul and unseemly, I would fain, through exceeding vanity, be fine and courtly. I fell headlong then into the love wherein I longed to be ensnared. My God, my Mercy, with how much gall didst Thou out of Thy great goodness besprinkle for me that sweetness? For I was both beloved, and secretly arrived at the bond of enjoying; and was with joy fettered with sorrow-bringing bonds, that I might be scourged with the iron burning-rods of jealousy, and suspicions, and fears, and angers, and quarrels.

II. 2. Stage plays also carried me away, full of images of my miseries, and of fuel to my fire. Why is it, that man desires to be made sad, beholding doleful and tragical things, which yet himself would by no means suffer? yet he desires as a spectator to feel sorrow at them, and this very sorrow is his pleasure. What is this but a miserable madness? for a man is the more affected with these actions, the less free he is from such affections. When a man suffers in his own person, it is styled misery; when he compassionates others, then it is mercy. But what sort of compassion is this for feigned and scenical passions? for the auditor is not called on to relieve, but only to grieve: and he applauds the actor of these fictions the more, the more he grieves. And if the calamities of those persons (whether of old times, or mere fiction) be so acted that the spectator is not moved to tears, he goes away disgusted and criticising; but if he be moved to passion, he stays intent, and weeps for joy.

3. Are griefs then too loved? Verily all desire joy. Or since no man likes to be miserable, is he yet pleased to be merciful? which because it cannot be without sorrow, for this reason alone is sorrow loved? This also springs from the vein of friendship. But whither goes that vein? whither flows it? wherefore runs it into that torrent of pitch bubbling forth those monstrous tides of foul lustfulness, into which it is wilfully changed and transformed, being of its own will precipitated and corrupted from its heavenly clearness? Shall compassion then be put away? by no means. Let griefs then sometimes be loved. But beware of uncleanness, O my soul, under the guardianship of my God, the *God of our fathers, who is to be praised and exalted above all for ever*,¹ beware of uncleanness. For I do not take myself to be without pity; but then in the theatres I rejoiced with lovers, when they wickedly enjoyed one another, although this was imaginary only in the play. And when they lost one another, as if very compassionate, I sorrowed with them, yet had my delight in both. But now I much more pity him that rejoiceth in his wickedness, than him who is thought to suffer hardship, by missing some pernicious pleasure, and the loss of some miserable felicity. This certainly is the truer mercy, but in it, grief delights not. For though he that grieves for the miserable, be commended for his office of charity; yet had he, who is genuinely compassionate, rather there were nothing to grieve for. For if good will be ill-

¹ Song of the Three Children, ver. 3.

willed (which can never be), then may he, who truly and sincerely commiserates, wish there might be some miserable, that he might commiserate. Some sorrow may then be allowed, none loved. For thus dost Thou, O Lord God, who lovest souls far more purely than we, and hast a more incorruptible pity, yet art wounded with no sorrowfulness. *And who is sufficient for these things?*¹

4. But I, miserable, then loved to grieve, and sought out what to grieve at; and that acting best pleased me, and attracted me the most vehemently, which drew tears from me. What marvel was it that a forlorn sheep, straying from Thy flock, and impatient of Thy keeping, I became infected with a foul disease? And hence the love of griefs; not such as should sink deep into me; for I loved not to suffer what I loved to look on; but such as upon hearing their fictions should lightly scratch the surface; from which, as from envenomed nails, followed inflamed swelling, impostumes, and a putrified sore. My life being such, was it life, O my God?

III. 5. And Thy faithful mercy hovered over me from afar. Upon how grievous iniquities consumed I myself, following a sacrilegious curiosity, that having forsaken Thee, it might bring me to the treacherous abyss, and the beguiling service of devils, to whom I offered my evil actions as a sacrifice. And in all these things Thou didst scourge me! I dared even, while Thy solemnities were celebrated within the walls of Thy church, to lust, and to compass a business

having death for its fruits, for which Thou scourgedst me with grievous punishments, though nothing to my eternal undoing, O Thou my exceeding mercy, my God, my refuge from those terrible destroyers, among whom I wandered with a stiff neck, withdrawing further from Thee, loving mine own ways, and not Thine ; loving a vagrant liberty.

6. Those studies, also, which were accounted commendable, had a view to excelling in the courts of litigation ; the more be-praised, the craftier. Such is men's blindness, glorying even in their blindness ! And now I was chief in the rhetoric school, whereat I rejoiced proudly, and I swelled with arrogance ; although (Lord, Thou knowest) far quieter and altogether removed from the subvertings of those "subverters"¹ (for this ill-omened and devilish name was the very badge of gallantry) among whom I lived, with a shameless shame that I was not even as they. With them I lived, and was sometimes delighted with their friendship, whose doings I ever did abhor ; *i. e.*, their "subvertings,"² wherewith they wantonly persecuted the modesty of strangers, whom they disturbed by a gratuitous jeering, feeding their malicious mirth. Nothing can be liker the very actions of devils than these. What then could they be more truly called than "subverters" ? themselves subverted and perverted first, the deceiving spirits se-

¹ *Eversores*; who are described in Augustine's *Liber De vera religione* (75), as " homines qui gaudent miseriis alienis, et risus sibi ac ludicra spectacula exhibent, vel exhiberi volunt eversionibus et erroribus aliorum." — ED.

² *Eversiones*.

cretly deriding and seducing them, by that wherein they themselves delighted to jeer at and deceive others.

IV. 7. Among such as these, in that unsettled age of mine, learned I books of eloquence, wherein I desired to be eminent, out of a damnable and vain-glorious end, a joy in human vanity. In the ordinary course of study, I fell upon a certain book of Cicero, whose speech almost all admire; not so his heart. This book of his contains an exhortation to philosophy, and is called "*Hortensius*." But this book altered my feelings, and turned my prayers to Thyself, O Lord; and made me have other purposes and desires. Every vain hope at once became worthless to me; and I longed with an incredibly burning desire for an immortality of wisdom, and began now to arise, that I might return to Thee. For not to sharpen my tongue (which thing I seemed to be purchasing with my mother's allowances, in that my nineteenth year, my father being dead two years before), not to sharpen my tongue did I employ that book; nor did it infuse into me its style, but its matter.

8. How did I burn then, my God, how did I burn to remount from earthly things to Thee; nor knew I what Thou wouldest do with me. For with Thee is wisdom. But the love of wisdom is in Greek called "philosophy," with which that book inflamed me. Some there be that seduce through philosophy, under a great, and smooth, and honorable name coloring and disguising their own errors: and almost all

who in that and former ages were such, are in that book censured and set forth. There also is made plain that wholesome advice of Thy Spirit, by Thy good and devout servant: *Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ. For in Him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.*¹ And since at that time (Thou, O Light of my heart, knowest) Apostolic Scripture was not known to me, I was delighted with that exhortation, so far only, that I was thereby strongly roused, and kindled, and inflamed to love, and seek and obtain, and hold, and embrace, not this or that sect, but wisdom itself, whatever it were; and this alone checked me, thus enkindled, that the name of Christ was not in it. For this name, according to Thy mercy, O Lord, this name of my Saviour Thy Son, had my tender heart, even with my mother's milk, devoutly drunk in, and deeply treasured; and whatsoever was without that name, though never so learned, polished, or true, took not entire hold of me.

V. 9. I resolved then to bend my mind to the holy Scriptures, that I might see what they were. But behold, I see a thing not understood by the proud, nor laid open to children, lowly in access, in its recesses lofty, and veiled with mysteries; and I was not such as could enter into it, or stoop my neck to follow its steps. For not as I now speak, did I feel when I turned to those Scriptures; but they

seemed to me unworthy to be compared to the stateliness of Tully: for my swelling pride shrunk from their lowliness, nor could my sharp wit pierce the interior thereof. Yet were they such as would grow up in a little one. But I disdained to be a little one; and, swollen with pride, took myself to be a great one.

VI. 10. Therefore I fell among men proudly doting, exceeding carnal and prating, in whose mouths were the snares of the devil, limed with the mixture of the syllables of Thy name, and of our Lord Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Ghost, the Paraclete, our Comforter. These names were frequent in their mouth, so far forth as the sound and the noise of the tongue went, but their heart was void of truth. Yet they cried out “Truth, Truth,” and spake much thereof to me, though *it was not in them:*¹ and they spake falsehood, not of Thee only (who truly art Truth), but even of those elements of this world, Thy creatures. And I indeed ought to have passed by even philosophers who spake truth concerning them, for love of Thee, my Father, supremely good, Beauty of all things beautiful. O Truth, Truth, how inwardly did even then the marrow of my soul pant after Thee, when they often and diversely, and in many and huge books, echoed of Thee to me, though it was but an echo. And these were the dishes wherein to me, hungering after Thee, they, instead of Thee, served up the Sun and Moon, beautiful works of Thine, but yet Thy works, not Thyself, no, nor Thy

¹ John ii. 4.

first works. For Thy spiritual works are before these corporeal works, celestial though they be, and shining. But now I hungered and thirsted not even after those first works of Thine, but after Thee Thyself, the Truth *in whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning:*¹ yet still they set before me in those dishes glittering fantasies, than which better were it to love this very sun (which is real to our sight at least), than those fantasies which by our eyes deceive our mind. Yet because I thought them to be Thee, I fed thereon; not eagerly, for Thou didst not in them taste to me as Thou art; for Thou wast not in these fictions, nor was I nourished by them, but exhausted rather. Food in sleep shows very like our food awake; yet are not those asleep nourished by it, because they are asleep. But those fictions were not in any way like to Thee, as Thou hast since revealed Thyself to me; for those were corporeal fantasies, false bodies, than which these true bodies, celestial or terrestrial, which with our fleshly sight we behold, are far more certain: these things the beasts and birds discern as well as we, and they are more certain than when we imagine them. And again, we do with more certainty imagine them, than by them conjecture other vaster and infinite bodies which have no being. Such empty husks was I then fed on: and was not fed. But Thou, my soul's Love, towards whom I languish, that I may gather strength, art neither those bodies which we see, though in heaven; nor those which we do not see there; for

Thou hast created them, nor dost Thou account them among the chiefest of Thy works. How far then art Thou from those fantasies of mine, fantasies of bodies which are not at all ; than which the images of those bodies, which are, are far more certain ; and more certain still the bodies themselves, which yet Thou art not ; no, nor yet the soul, which is the life of the bodies. Better and more certain is the life of the bodies, than the bodies ; but Thou art the life of souls, the life of lives, having life in Thyselv; and Thou changest not, O life of my soul.

11. Where then wert Thou then to me, and how far from me ? Far, verily, was I straying from Thee, barred from the very husks of the swine, whom with husks I fed. For how much better are the fables of poets and grammarians, than these snares ? For verses, and poems, and “Medea flying,” are more profitable truly, than these men’s five elements,¹ variously disguised, answering to five dens of darkness, which have no being, yet slay the believer. For verses and poems I can turn to true food, and though I did sing “Medea flying,” yet I maintained it not as true ; though I heard it sung, I believed it not : but those things I did believe. Woe, woe, by what steps was I brought down to *the depths of hell !*² toiling and turmoiling through want of Truth ! For I sought after Thee, my God (to Thee I confess it, who hadst mercy on me, before I confessed), not according to the understanding of the mind, wherein Thou will-edst that I should excel the beasts, but according to

¹ The allusion is to the Manichean “elements.” — ED. ² Prov. ix. 18.

the sense of the flesh. But Thou wert more inward to me, than my most inward part; and higher than my highest. I lighted upon that bold woman, *simple and knoweth nothing*, shadowed out in Solomon, *sitting at the door, and saying, Eat ye bread of secreties willingly, and drink ye stolen waters which are sweet:*¹ she seduced me, because she found my soul dwelling abroad in the eye of my flesh, and ruminating on such food as through it I had devoured.

VII. 12. For other than this, that which really is, I knew not; and was, as it were through sharpness of wit, persuaded to assent to foolish deceivers, when they asked me, “Whence is evil?” “Is God bounded by a bodily shape, and has hairs and nails?” “Are they to be esteemed righteous, who had many wives at once, and did kill men, and sacrificed living creatures?”² At which I, in my ignorance, was much troubled, and departing from the truth, seemed to myself to be making towards it; because as yet I knew not that evil was nothing but a privation of good, until at last a thing ceases altogether to be; which how should I see, the sight of whose eyes reached only to bodies, and of my mind to a phantasm? And I knew not *God to be a Spirit*,³ not one who hath parts extended in length and breadth, or whose being was bulk; for every bulk is less in a part, than in the whole: and if it be infinite, it must be less in such part as is defined by a certain space, than in its infinitude; and so is not wholly everywhere, as Spirit, as God. And what that is in us, by

¹ Prov. ix. 13—17.

² 1 Kings xviii. 40.

³ John iv. 24.

which we are like to God, and in Scripture are rightly said to be *after the image of God*,¹ I was altogether ignorant.

13. Nor knew I that true inward righteousness, which judgeth not according to custom, but out of the most rightful law of God Almighty, whereby the ways of places and times were disposed, according to those times and places; itself meantime being the same always and everywhere, not one thing in one place, and another in another; according to which Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and Moses, and David, were righteous, and all those commended by the mouth of God; but were judged unrighteous by silly men, *judging out of man's judgment*,² and measuring by their own petty habits the moral habits of the whole human race. As if in an armory, one, ignorant what were adapted to each part, should cover his head with greaves, or seek to be shod with a helmet, and complain that they fitted not; or as if on a day, when business is publicly stopped in the afternoon, one were angered at not being allowed to keep open shop, because he had been in the forenoon; or when in one house he observeth some servant take a thing in his hand, which the butler is not suffered to meddle with; or something permitted out of doors, which is forbidden in the dining-room; and should be angry, that in one house, and one family, the same thing is not allotted everywhere, and to all. Even such are they, who are fretted to hear something to have been lawful for righteous men for-

¹ Gen. i. 27.

² 1 Cor. iv. 3.

merly, which now is not; or that God, for certain temporal respects, commanded some one thing, and some another, while both obeyed the same righteousness: whereas they see, in one man, and one day, and one house, different things to be fit for different members, and a thing formerly lawful, after a certain time not so; in one corner permitted or commanded, but in another rightly forbidden and punished. Is justice therefore various or mutable? No, but the times, over which it presides, flow not evenly, because they are times. Men, whose *days are few upon the earth*,¹ by their senses cannot harmonize the causes of things in former ages and other nations, which they have had no experience of, with those which they have experience of; whereas in one and the same body, day, or family, they easily see what is fitting for each member, and season, part, and person; to the one they take exceptions, to the other they submit.

14. These things I then knew not, nor observed; they struck my sight on all sides, but I saw them not. I indited verses, in which I might not place every foot everywhere, but differently in different metres; nor even in any one metre the self-same foot in all places. Yet the art itself, by which I indited, had not different principles for these different cases, but comprised all in one. Still I saw not how that righteousness, which good and holy men obeyed, did far more excellently and sublimely contain in one all those things which God commanded, and in no

part varied; although in varying times it prescribed not everything at once, but apportioned and enjoined what was fit for each. And I, in my blindness, censured the holy Fathers, not only wherein they made use of things present as God commanded and inspired them, but also wherein they were fortelling things to come, as God was revealing in them.

VIII. 15. Can it at any time or place be unjust *to love God with all his heart, with all his soul, and with all his mind; and his neighbor as himself?*¹ Therefore are those foul offences which are against nature, to be everywhere and at all times detested and punished; such as those of the men of Sodom: which, should all nations commit, they would all stand guilty of the same crime, by the law of God, who hath not made men that they should so abuse one another. For even that intercourse which should be between God and us is violated, when that same nature, of which He is Author, is polluted by perversity of lust. But those actions which are offences against the customs of men, are to be avoided according to the customs severally prevailing; so that a thing agreed upon, and confirmed, by custom or law of any city or nation, may not be violated at the lawless pleasure of any, whether native or foreigner. For any part which harmonizeth not with its whole, is offensive. But when God commands a thing to be done, against the customs or compact of any people, though it were never done by them heretofore, it is to be done; and if inter-

¹ Matt. xxii. 37-39.

mitted, it is to be restored ; and if never ordained, is now to be ordained. For if it be lawful for a king, in the state which he reigns over, to command what no one before him, nor he himself heretofore, had commanded ; and if to obey him cannot be against the common weal of the state (nay, it were against it if he were not obeyed, for to obey princes is a general compact of human society) ; how much more unhesitatingly ought we to obey God, in all which He commands, the Ruler of all His creatures ! For, as among the powers in man's society, the greater authority is obeyed in preference to the lesser, so must God above all.

16. So in acts of violence, where there is a wish to hurt, whether by reproach or injury ; and this either for revenge, as one enemy against another; or for some profit belonging to another, as the robber to the traveller; or to avoid some evil, as towards one who is feared ; or through envy, as one less fortunate to one more so, or one well thriven in anything, to him whose being on a par with himself he fears, or grieves at ; or for the mere pleasure at another's pain, as spectators of gladiators, or deriders and mockers of others : all these are the varied forms of iniquity, which spring from the lust of the flesh, of the eye,¹ or of rule, either singly, or two combined, or all together. And so do men live ill against the three and seven, that psaltery of *ten strings*,² Thy Ten Commandments, O God, most high, and most sweet. But what foul offences can there be

¹ 1 John ii. 16.

² Ps. cxliv. 9.

against Thee, who canst not be defiled ? or what acts of violence against Thee, who canst not be harmed ? But Thou avengest what men commit against themselves, since when they sin against Thee, they do wickedly against their own souls, and *iniquity gives itself the lie*,¹ by corrupting and perverting the nature which Thou hast created and ordained ; either by an immoderate use of things allowed ; or in *burning in things unallowed, to that use which is against nature* ;² or in guiltily raging with heart and tongue against Thee, *kicking against the pricks* ;³ or when, bursting the pale of human society, they boldly joy in self-willed combinations or divisions, according as they have any object to gain or cause of offence. And these things are done when Thou art forsaken, O Fountain of Life, who art the only and true Creator and Governor of the Universe, and by a self-willed pride any one false thing is selected therefrom and loved. So then by a humble devoutness we return to Thee ; and Thou cleansest us from our evil habits, and art merciful to those who confess their sins, and *hearest the groaning of the prisoner*,⁴ and loosest us from the chains which we made for ourselves, if we lift not up against Thee the horns of an unreal liberty, suffering the loss of all through covetousness of more, by loving more our own private good, than Thee, the Good of all.

IX. 17. Amidst these offences of foulness and violence, and these many iniquities, are the sins of those men, who are, on the whole, making proficiency;

¹ Ps. xxvi. 12. Vulg.

² Rom. i. 27.

³ Acts ix. 5.

⁴ Ps. cii. 20.

which, by those that judge rightly according to the rule of perfection, are condemned, yet the persons themselves are commended, upon hope of future fruit, as in the green blade of growing corn. And there are some actions resembling offences of foulness or violence, which yet are no sins; because they offend neither Thee, our Lord God, nor human society; as when things fitting for a given period are obtained for the service of the whole life, and we know not whether out of a lust of having; or when things are, for the sake of correction, by constituted authority punished, and we know not whether out of a lust of hurting. Many an action, also, which in men's sight is disapproved, is by Thy testimony approved; and many, by men praised, are (Thou being witness), condemned: because the appearance of the action, and the mind of the doer, and the unknown exigency of the time, severally vary. But when Thou on a sudden commandest an unwonted and unthought-of thing, yea, although Thou hast heretofore forbidden it, and still for the time hidest the reason of Thy command, and it be against the ordinance of some society of men, who doubts but it is to be done, seeing that that society of men is just which serves Thee? But blessed are they who know that Thou hast given commands! For all things are done by Thy servants, either to show forth what is needful for the present, or to foreshow things to come.

X. 18. Being ignorant of these things, I scoffed at those Thy holy servants and prophets. And what

gained I by scoffing at them, but to be scoffed at by Thee, being insensibly and step by step drawn on to such follies, as to believe that a fig wept when it was plucked, and the tree, its mother, shed milky tears? Which fig, notwithstanding (plucked by some other's, not his own, guilt), had some (Manichæan) saint eaten, and mingled with his bowels, he should breathe out of it angels; yea, there should burst forth particles of divinity, at every moan or groan in his prayer; which particles of the most high and true God had remained bound in that fig, unless they had been set at liberty by the teeth or belly of some "Elect" saint! And I, miserable, believed that more mercy was to be shown to the fruits of the earth, than to men, for whom they were created. For if any one an hungered, not a Manichæan, should ask for any, that morsel would seem as it were condemned to capital punishment, which should be given him.¹

XI. 19. And Thou sentest Thine hand from above,² and drewest my soul out of that profound darkness; my mother, thy faithful one, weeping to Thee for me, more than mothers weep the bodily deaths of their children. For she, by that faith and spirit which she had from Thee, discerned the death wherein I lay, and Thou heardest her, O Lord; Thou heardest her, and despisedst not her tears, when, streaming down, they watered the ground under her eyes in every place where she prayed; yea, Thou heardest her. For whence was that

¹ See Guericke's Church History, § 54, p. 190.—ED. ² Ps. cxliv. 7.

dream whereby Thou comfortedest her, so that she allowed me to live with her, and to eat at the same table in the house, which she had begun to shrink from, abhorring and detesting the blasphemies of my error? For she saw herself standing on a certain wooden rule, and a shining youth coming towards her, cheerful, and smiling upon her who was sad, and overwhelmed with grief. But he having (in order to instruct, as is their wont, and not to be instructed) inquired of her the causes of her grief and daily tears, and she answering that she was bewailing my perdition, he bade her rest contented, and told her to look and observe, "That where she was, there was I also." And when she looked, she saw me standing by her on the same rule. Whence was this, but that Thine ears were towards her heart? O Thou Good omnipotent, who so carest for every one of us, as if Thou caredst for him only; and so for all, as if all were but one!

20. Whence was this, also, that when she had told me this vision, and I would fain bend it to mean, "That she rather should not despair of being one day what I was;" she presently, without any hesitation, replies: "No; for it was not told me that, 'where he, there thou also;' but 'where thou, there he also?'" I confess to Thee, O Lord, that to the best of my remembrance (and I have often spoken of this), that Thy answer through my waking mother—in that she was not perplexed by the plausibility of my false interpretation, and so quickly saw what was to be seen, and which I certainly had not

perceived before she spake — even then moved me more than the dream itself, whereby the joy to that holy woman, to be fulfilled so long after, was foretold for the consolation of her present anguish. For almost nine years passed, in which I wallowed in the mire of that deep pit, and the darkness of falsehood, often essaying to rise, but dashed down the more grievously. All which time that chaste, godly, and sober widow (such as Thou lovest), now more cheered with hope, yet no whit relaxing in her weeping and mourning, ceased not at all hours of her devotions to bewail my case unto Thee. And her *prayers entered into Thy presence*;¹ and yet Thou sufferedst me to be involved and re-involved in that darkness.

XII. 21. Thou gavest her meantime another answer, which I call to mind; for I pass by much, to confess those things which are most important, and much I do not remember. Thou gavest her then another answer, by a priest of Thine, a certain bishop brought up in Thy Church, and well studied in Thy books. Whom when she had entreated him to converse with me, refute my errors, unteach me ill things, and teach me good things (for this he was wont to do, when he found persons fitted to receive it), he refused, wisely, as I afterwards perceived. For he answered, that I was yet unteachable, being puffed up with the novelty of that heresy, and had already perplexed divers unskilful persons with captious questions, as she had told him: “But let him

¹ Ps. lxxxviii. 1.

alone awhile," saith he, "only pray God for him; he will of himself, by reading, find what that error is, and how great its impiety." At the same time, he told her how himself, when a little one, had by his seduced mother been consigned over to the Manichees, and had not only read, but frequently copied out almost all their books, and had (without any argument or proof from any one) seen how much that sect was to be avoided; and had avoided it. And when she would not be satisfied, but urged him more, with entreaties and many tears, that he would see me, and discourse with me, a little displeased at her importunity, he said, "Go thy ways, and God bless thee, for it is not possible that the son of these tears should perish." Which answer she took (as she often mentioned in her conversations with me) as if it had sounded from heaven.

THE FOURTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE'S LIFE FROM NINETEEN TO EIGHT-AND-TWENTY — HIMSELF A MANICHÆAN, AND SEDUCING OTHERS TO THE SAME HERESY — PARTIAL OBEDIENCE AMIDST VANITY AND SIN — CONSULTING ASTROLOGERS, ONLY PARTIALLY SHAKEN HEREIN — LOSS OF AN EARLY FRIEND, WHO IS CONVERTED BY BEING BAPTIZED IN A SWOON — REFLECTIONS ON GRIEF, ON REAL AND UNREAL FRIENDSHIP, AND LOVE OF FAME — WRITES ON THE "FAIR AND FIT," YET CANNOT RIGHTLY, THOUGH GOD HAD GIVEN HIM GREAT TALENTS, SINCE HE ENTERTAINED WRONG NOTIONS OF GOD — AND SO EVEN HIS KNOWLEDGE HE APPLIED ILL.

I. 1. For this space of nine years then (from my nineteenth year to my eighth-and-twentieth) I lived seduced and seducing, deceived and deceiving, in divers lusts; openly, by sciences which they call liberal; secretly, with a false-named religion; here proud, there superstitious, everywhere vain. Here hunting after the emptiness of popular praise, down even to theatrical applauses, and poetic prizes, and strifes for grassy garlands, and the follies of shows, and the intemperance of desires. There, desiring to be cleansed from these defilements, by carrying food to those who were called "elect" and "holy," out of which, in the workhouse of their stomachs, they should forge for us Angels and Gods, by whom we might be cleansed. These things did I follow, and practise with my friends, deceived by me, and with me. Let the arrogant mock me, and such as have

not been, to their soul's health, stricken and cast down by Thee, O my God ; but I would still confess to Thee mine own shame in Thy praise. Suffer me, I beseech Thee, and give me grace to go over in my present remembrance the wanderings of my fore-passed time, and *to offer unto Thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving.*¹ For without Thee, what am I to myself, but a guide to mine own downfall ? or what am I even at the best, but an infant sucking the milk Thou givest, and feeding upon Thee, *the food that perisheth not?*² But what sort of a man is any man, seeing he is but a man ? Let now the strong and the mighty laugh at me, but let me, the *poor and needy,*³ confess unto Thee.

II. 2. In those years I taught rhetoric, and, overcome by cupidity, made sale of a loquacity to overcome by. Yet I preferred (Lord, Thou knowest) honest scholars (as they are accounted), and without artifice I taught them artifices, not to be practised against the life of the guiltless, though sometimes for the life of the guilty. And Thou, O God, from afar perceivedst me stumbling in that slippery course, and amid much smoke sending out some sparks of faithfulness, which I showed in my guidance of *such as loved vanity, and sought after leasing,*⁴ myself their companion. In those years I had one companion, not in that which is called lawful marriage, but whom I had found out in a wayward passion void of understanding ; yet but one, remaining faithful even

¹ Ps. xlix. 14.

² John vi. 27.

³ Ps. lxxiii. 21.

⁴ Is. xlvi. 5; Matt. xii. 20; Ps. iv. 2.

to her; in whom I in my own case experienced what difference there is betwixt the self-restraint of the marriage-covenant, for the sake of issue, and the bargain of a lustful love, where children are born against their parents' will, although once born they may constrain love.

3. I remember, also, that when I had settled to enter the lists for a theatrical prize, some wizard asked me what I would give him to win: but I, detesting and abhorring such foul mysteries, answered, "Though the garland were of imperishable gold, I would not suffer a fly to be killed to gain me it." For he was to kill some living creatures in his sacrifices, and by that means to induce the devils to favor me. But this ill also I rejected, not out of pure love to Thee, O God of my heart; for I knew not how to love Thee, not knowing how to conceive aught beyond a material brightness. And doth not a soul, sighing after such fictions, commit fornication against Thee, trust in things unreal, and *feed the wind?*¹ Still I would not, forsooth, have sacrifices offered to devils for me, to whom I was sacrificing myself by that superstition. For what else is it *to feed the wind*, but to feed devils; that is, by going astray, to become their pleasure and derision?

III. 4. Those impostors, then, whom they style Mathematicians,² I consulted without scruple; because they seemed to use no sacrifice, nor to pray to any spirit for their divinations: which art, however,

¹ Hos. xii. 1.

² Astrologers; "pulsi Italia mathematici," Taciti *Historia* II. 62.—ED.

Christian and true piety consistently rejects and condemns. For, *it is a good thing to confess unto Thee*, and to say, *Have mercy upon me, heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee*;¹ and not to abuse Thy mercy for a license to sin, but to remember the Lord's words, *Behold, thou art made whole, sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee*.² All which wholesome advice they labor to destroy, saying, "The cause of thy sin is inevitably determined in heaven;" and "This did Venus, or Saturn, or Mars:" that man, forsooth, flesh and blood, and proud corruption, might be blameless; while the Creator and Ordainer of heaven and the stars is to bear the blame."³ And who is He but our God? the very sweetness and well-spring of righteousness, who *renderest to every man according to his works*: and *a broken and contrite heart wilt Thou not despise*.⁴

5. There was in those days a wise man,⁵ very skilful in physic, and renowned therein, who had with his own proconsular hand put the Agonistic garland upon my distempered head, but not as a physician: for this disease Thou only curest, *who resistest the proud and givest grace to the humble*.⁶ Thou didst speak to me even by that old man, to heal my soul. For having become more acquainted with him, and hanging assiduously and fixedly on his speech (for

¹ Ps. xlii. 4.

² John v. 14.

³ Compare "This is the excellent foppery," etc.; *King Lear*, Act I. Sc. 2.—ED.

⁴ Rom. ii. 6; Matt. xvi. 27; Ps. li. 17.

⁵ Vindicianus; spoken of again in Book VII. c. vi. — ED.

⁶ 1 Pet. v. 5; Jam. iv. 6.

though in simple terms, it was vivid, lively, and earnest), when he had gathered, by my discourse, that I was given to the books of nativity-casters, he kindly and fatherly advised me to cast them away, and not fruitlessly bestow a care and diligence necessary for useful things, upon these vanities ; saying, that he had in his earliest years studied that art, so as to make it the profession whereby he should live, and that, understanding Hippocrates, he could soon have understood such a study as this ; and yet he had given it over, and taken to physic, for no other reason but that he found it utterly false ; and he, as an honest man, would not get his living by deluding people. “But thou,” saith he, “hast rhetoric to maintain thyself by, so that thou followest this false art of free choice, not from necessity of a support : the more then oughtest thou to give me credit in respect to it, who labored to acquire it so perfectly, as to get my living by it alone.” Of whom, when I had demanded how then could many true things be foretold by it, he answered me (as well as he could), “That the force of chance, diffused throughout the whole order of things, brought this about. For if, when a man by hap-hazard opens the pages of some poet, who sang and thought of something wholly different, a verse oftentimes fell out wondrously agreeable to the present business ; it were not to be wondered at if, out of the soul of man, unconscious what takes place in it, by some higher instinct an answer should be given, by hap, not by art, corresponding to the business and actions of the demander.”

6. And thus much, either from or through him, Thou conveyedst to me, and tracedst in my memory what I might hereafter examine for myself. But at that time neither he, nor my dearest Nebridius, a youth singularly good and of a holy fear, who derided the whole system of divination, could persuade me to cast it aside, the authority of the authors swaying me yet more, and as yet I had found no certain proof (such as I sought) whereby it might without all doubt appear, that what had been truly foretold by those consulted was the result of hazard, not of the art of the star-gazers.

IV. 7. In those years when I first began to teach rhetoric in my native town, I had found a friend in one blooming with me in the same bud of youth, and whom a community of studies made extremely dear to me. He had grown up of a child with me, and together we went to school, and to play. But he was not yet my friend as afterwards, nor even then, as true friendship is: for none is true but that which Thou cementest together between such as cleave unto Thee, through that *love which is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost, which is given unto us.*¹ Yet was it but too sweet, ripened by the warmth of kindred studies: for, from the true faith (which he as a youth had not soundly and thoroughly imbibed) I had warped him also to those superstitious and pernicious fables for which my mother bewailed me. With me he now erred in mind, nor could my soul be without him. But behold Thou wert close on the

¹ Rom. v. 5.

steps of Thy fugitives, at once *God of vengeance*,¹ and Fountain of mercies, turning us to Thyself by wonderful means; Thou tookest that man out of this life, when he had scarce filled up one whole year of my friendship, sweet to me above all sweetness of my life.

8. *Who can recount all Thy praises?*² which Thou hast deserved in reference to this single person? What didst Thou then, my God, and how unsearchable is the *abyss of Thy judgments?*³ For long, sore sick of a fever, he lay senseless in a death-sweat; and his recovery being despaired of, he was baptized, unconscious, myself meanwhile little regarding, and presuming that his soul would retain rather what it had received of me, not what was wrought on his unconscious body. But it proved far otherwise: for he was refreshed, and restored. Forthwith, as soon as I could speak with him (and I could, so soon as he was able, for I never left him, and we hung but too much upon each other), I essayed to jest with him, as though he would jest with me at the baptism which he had received when utterly absent in mind and feeling, but had now understood that he had received. But he shrank from me, as from an enemy; and with a wonderful and sudden freedom bade me, as I would continue his friend, forbear such language to him. I, all astonished and amazed, suppressed all my emotions till he should grow well, and his health were strong enough for me to deal with him as I would. But he

¹ Ps. xciv. 1.

² Ps. civ. 2.

³ Ps. xxxvi. 2.

was taken away from my frenzy, that with Thee he might be preserved for my comfort; a few days after, in my absence, he was attacked again by the fever, and so departed.

9. At this grief my heart was utterly darkened; and whatever I beheld was death. My native country was a torment to me, and my father's house a strange unhappiness; and whatever I had shared with him, now that he was gone, became a distracting torture. Mine eyes sought him everywhere, but found him not; and I hated all places because they held him not; nor could they now tell me, "He is coming," as when he was alive and absent. I became a great riddle to myself, and I asked my soul, *why she was so sad, and why she disquieted me sorely*:¹ but she knew not what to answer me. And if I said *Trust in God*, she very rightly obeyed me not; because that most dear friend, whom she had lost, being a man, was both truer and better, than that phantasm she was bid to trust in. Only tears were sweet to me, for they succeeded my friend as the solace of my mind.

V. 10. And now, Lord, these things are passed by, and time hath assuaged my wound. May I learn from Thee, who art Truth, and approach the ear of my heart unto Thy mouth, that Thou mayest tell me why weeping is sweet to the miserable? Hast Thou, although present everywhere, cast away our misery far from Thee? Thou abidest in Thyself, but we are tossed about in divers trials. And yet

unless we mourn in Thine ears, we should have no hope left. How then is sweet fruit gathered from the bitterness of life, from groaning, tears, sighs, and complaints? Doth this sweeten it, that we hope Thou hearest? This is true of prayer, for therein is a longing to approach unto Thee. But was it so in my grief for my friend lost, and the sorrow where-with I was then overwhelmed? For I neither hoped he should return to life, nor did I desire this with my tears. I wept and grieved because I was miserable, and had lost my joy. Or is weeping bitter when we have the things which we enjoy, but grows pleasant when we lose them?

VI. 11. But why speak I of these things? for now is no time to question, but to confess unto Thee. Wretched I was; and wretched is every soul bound by friendship to perishable things; he is torn asunder when he loses them, and feels the wretchedness which he was liable to ere yet he lost them. So was it then with me; I wept most bitterly, and found my repose in bitterness. Thus was I wretched, but that wretched life I held even dearer than my friend. For though I would willingly have changed it, yet was I more unwilling to part with it, than with him; yea, I know not whether I would have parted with it even for him, as is related (if not feigned) of Py-lades and Orestes, that they would gladly have died for each other or together, not to live together being to them worse than death. But in me there had arisen some inexplicable feeling, wholly contrary to this; for at once I loathed exceedingly to live and

feared to die. I suppose, the more I loved him, the more did I hate and fear (as a most cruel enemy) death, which had bereaved me of him : and I imagined it would speedily make an end of all men, since it had power over him. Thus was it with me, I remember. Behold my heart, O my God ! behold, and see into me ; for well I remember it, O my Hope, who cleansest me from the impurity of such affections, directing *mine eyes towards Thee*, and *plucking my feet out of the snare*.¹ For I wondered that others, subject to death, did live, since he, whom I loved, as if he should never die, was dead ; and I wondered yet more that myself, who was to him a second self, could live, he being dead. Well said one concerning his friend, "Thou half of my soul :" for I felt that my soul and his soul were "one soul in two bodies :" and therefore was my life a horror to me, because I would not live halved. And therefore, perchance I feared to die, lest he whom I so much loved should die wholly.²

VII. 12. O madness, which knows not how to love men as men ! O foolish man that I then was, suffering so impatiently the lot of man ! I fretted, sighed, wept, was distracted ; found neither rest nor counsel. For I bore about a shattered and bleeding soul, impatient of being borne by me, yet where to repose it, I found not. Not in calm groves, not in

¹ Ps. xxv. 14.

² Augustine in his *Retractationes* (Liber II.) remarks that what he has said here, "quasi declamatio levis et gravis confessio videtur, quamvis utcunque temperata sit haec ineptia in eo quod additum est, forte." — ED.

games and music, nor in fragrant spots, nor in curious banquetings, nor in the pleasures of the bed and the couch ; nor (finally) in books or poesy, found it repose. All things looked ghastly, yea, the very light ; whatsoever was not what he was, was revolting and hateful, except groaning and tears ; for in those alone found I a little refreshment. But when my soul ceased from them, a huge load of misery weighed me down. To Thee, O Lord, it ought to have been raised, for Thee to lighten ; I knew it ; but neither could nor would, since, when I thought of Thee, Thou wert not to me any solid or substantial thing. For Thou wert not Thyself, but a mere phantom, and my error was my God. If I offered to discharge my load thereon, that it might rest, it glided through the void, and came rushing down again on me ; and thus I was to myself a hapless spot, where I could neither stay nor hence depart. For whither could my heart flee from my heart ? Whither could I flee from myself ? How not follow myself ? And yet I fled out of my native country ; for so should mine eyes less look about for my lost friend, where they were not wont to see him. And thus from Tageste, I came to Carthage.

VIII. 13. Times lose no time ; nor do they roll idly by ; through our senses they work strange operations on the mind. Behold, they went and came day by day, and by coming and going introduced into my mind other imaginations, and other remembrances ; and little by little patched me up again with my old kind of delights, unto which my sorrow

gave way. And yet there succeeded, not indeed other griefs, but the causes of other griefs. For whence had that former grief so easily reached my very inmost soul, but that I had poured out my soul upon the dust, in loving one that must die, as if he would never die? For what restored and refreshed me chiefly, was the solaces of other friends, with whom I had loved him instead of Thee; and this was a great fable, and protracted lie, by whose adulterous stimulus my soul, which lay itching in my ears, was defiled. But that fable would not die to me, so oft as any of my friends died. There were other things which in them did more take my mind; to talk and jest together; to do kind offices by turns; to read together honied books; to play the fool or be earnest together; to dissent at times without quarrelling, as a man might with his own self; and even with the unfrequency of these dissentings, to season our more frequent consentings; sometimes to teach, and sometimes learn; to long for the absent with impatience, and welcome the coming with joy: these, and the like expressions, proceeding out of the hearts of those that loved and were loved again, by the countenance, the tongue, the eyes, and a thousand pleasing gestures, were so much fuel to melt our souls together, and out of many make but one.

IX. 14. This is what is loved in friends; and so loved, that a man's conscience condemns itself, if he love not the one that loves him, looking for nothing from him but demonstrations of his love. Hence that mourning, if one die, that darkening of sorrows,

that steeping of the heart in tears, all sweetness turned to bitterness ; and upon the loss of the dying, the death of the living. Blessed is the man that loveth Thee, and his friend in Thee, and his enemy for Thee. For he alone loses none dear to him, to whom all are dear in Him who cannot be lost. And who is this but our God, the *God that made heaven and earth, and filleth them,*¹ because by filling them He created them ? None loseth, but he who leaveth Thee. And who leaveth Thee, whither goeth or whither fleeth he, but from Thee pleased to Thee displeased ? For doth he not find Thy law in his own punishment ? *And Thy law is truth,*² and truth is Thyself.

X. 15. *Turn us, O God of Hosts, show us Thy countenance, and we shall be whole.*³ For whithersoever the soul of man turns itself, unless towards Thee, it is fastened upon sorrows ; yea, even though it is fastened on things beautiful, which are out of Thee, and out of the soul, and yet were not all, unless they were from Thee. They rise and set ; and by rising, they begin, as it were, to be ; they grow, that they may be perfected ; and perfected, they wax old and wither ; and some perish without waxing old. So then when they rise and tend to be, the more quickly they grow that they may be, so much the more they haste not to be. This is the law of their nature. Thus much hast Thou allotted them, because they are portions of things which exist not all at once, but,

¹ Gen. ii. 24; Jer. xxiii. 24.

² Ps. cxix. 142; John xiv. 6.

³ Ps. lxxx. 19.

by passing away and succeeding, together complete that universe whereof they are portions; even as our speech is completed by separate vocal signs; but not unless one word pass away when it hath sounded its part, that another may succeed. Out of all these things let my soul praise Thee, O God, Creator of all; yet let not my soul be fastened unto these things with the glue of love, through the senses of the body. For they go whither they were meant to go, that they might cease to be; and they rend the soul with pestilent longings, because she longs to be, yet loves to repose in what she loves. But in these things is no place of repose; they abide not, they flee; and who can follow them with the senses of the flesh? yea, who can grasp them, when they are hard by? For the sense of the flesh is slow, because it is the sense of the flesh; and by the flesh is it bounded. It sufficeth for the end that it was made for; but it sufficeth not to stay things from running their course from their appointed starting-place to the end appointed. For in Thy Word, by which they are created, they hear their decree, "hence and hitherto."

XI. 16. Be not foolish, O my soul, nor become deaf in the ear of thine heart with the tumult of thy folly. Hearken thou, also. The Word Itself calleth thee to return to that place of rest imperturbable, where love is not forsaken, if itself forsaketh not to love. Behold, some things pass away, that others may replace them, and so this lower universe be completed by all its parts. But do I ever depart?

saih the Word of God. There fix thy dwelling, trust there whatsoever thou hast, O my soul, for now thou art tired out with vanities. Entrust to Truth, whatsoever thou hast from the Truth, and thou shalt lose nothing; and thy decay shall bloom again, and *all thy diseases be healed*,¹ and thy mortal parts be reformed and renewed, and bound around thee: nor shall they lay thee whither themselves descend; but they shall stand fast with thee, and abide forever before God, *who abideth and standeth fast forever*.²

17. Why then be perverted and follow thy flesh? Let it be converted and follow thee. Whatever by it thou hast sense of, is only a part; but the whole, whercof this is a part, thou knowest not; and yet the mere part delights thee. But had the sense of thy flesh a capacity for comprehending the whole, and not (for thy punishment) a part only, thou wouldest wish that all the parts should pass away, that so, the whole might ravish thee. For what we speak also, by the same sense of the flesh thou hear-est; yet wouldest not thou have the syllables stay, but fly away, that others may come, and thou hear the whole. And so ever, when any one thing is made up of many, all of which do not exist together, collectively they would please more than they do severally, could all be perceived collectively. But better still than the collective whole is He who made the whole; He is our God; He doth not pass away, neither doth aught succeed Him.

XII. 18. If bodies please thee, praise God for

¹ Ps. ciii. 3.

² 1 Pet. i. 23.

them, and dart back thy love upon their Maker; lest in these things which please thee, thou displease Him. If souls please thee, love them in God: for separate they are mutable, but in Him they are firmly stablished; else would they pass, and pass away. In Him then be they beloved; and carry unto Him along with thee what souls thou canst, and say to them, "Him let us love, Him let us love: He made all things, nor is He far off. For He did not make them, and then depart, but they are of Him, and in Him. See, there He is where truth is loved. He is within the very heart, yet hath the heart strayed from Him. *Go back into your heart, ye transgressors,* and cleave fast to Him that made you. Stand with Him, and ye shall stand fast. Rest in Him, and ye shall be at rest. Whither go ye in rough ways? Whither go ye? The good that you love is from Him; but it is good and pleasant through reference to Him, and justly shall it be embittered, if He be forsaken for it. To what end then would ye still and ever walk these difficult and toilsome ways? There is no rest, where ye seek it. Seek still what ye seek; but it is not there where ye seek. Ye seek a blessed life in the land of death; it is not there. For how should there be a blessed life, where life itself is not?"

19. "But our true Life came down hither, and bore our death, and slew our death, out of the abundance of His own life: and He thundered, calling aloud to us to return to Him into the secret place, whence He came forth to us, through the Virgin's

womb, wherein He espoused the human creation, our mortal flesh, that it might not be forever mortal, and thence *like a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, rejoicing as a giant to run his course.*¹ For he lingered not, but ran, calling aloud by words, deeds, death, life, descent, ascension ; crying aloud to us to return unto Him. And he departed from our eyes, that we might return into our heart, and there find Him. For He departed, and lo ! He is here. He would not remain with us, yet left us not; for He departed thither, whence He never parted, *because the world was made by Him.*² And *in this world He was, and into this world He came to save sinners,*³ unto whom my soul confesseth, *and He healeth it, for it hath sinned against Him.*⁴ *O ye sons of men, how long so slow of heart?*⁵ Even now, after the descent of life to you, will ye not ascend and live ? But whither ascend ye, when ye are high in your own conceits, and *set your mouth against the heavens?*⁶ Descend, that ye may ascend, and ascend to God. For ye are fallen, by rising against Him." Tell thy friends this, that they may weep *in the valley of tears,*⁷ and so carry them up with thee unto God ; because out of His Spirit thou speakest thus unto them, if thou speakest burning with the fire of charity.

XIII. 20. These things I then knew not, and I loved these lower beauties, and I was sinking to the very depths, and to my friends I said, "Do we love

¹ Ps. xix. 5

³ 1 Tim. i. 15.

⁵ Ps. iv. 3. Vulg.

⁷ Ps. lxxxiv. 6.

² John i. 10

⁴ Ps. xli. 4.

⁶ Ps. lxxiii. 9.

anything but the beautiful? What, then, is the beautiful? and what is beauty? What, then, is it that attracts and wins us to things we love? for unless there were in them a grace and beauty, they could by no means draw us unto them." And I marked and perceived in bodies themselves there was a beauty from their forming a sort of whole, and again, another beauty from apt and mutual correspondence, as of a part of the body with its whole, or a shoe with a foot, and the like. And this consideration sprang up in my mind, out of my inmost heart, and I wrote "On the Fair and Fit," I think, two or three books. Thou knowest how many, O Lord, for it is gone from me; for I have them not, but they are strayed from me, I know not how.

XIV. 21. But what moved me, O Lord my God, to dedicate these books unto Hierius, an orator of Rome, whom I knew not by face, but loved for the fame of his learning, which was eminent in him, and some words of his I had heard, which pleased me? But he pleased me chiefly because he pleased others, who highly extolled him, amazed that out of a Syrian, first instructed in Greek eloquence, should afterwards be formed a wonderful Latin orator, and learned philosopher. One is commended, and straightway he is loved without being seen: doth this love enter the heart of the hearer from the mouth of the commender? Not so. But by one who loveth is another kindled. For he who is commended is loved because the commender is believed to extol him with an unfeigned heart; that is, because one that loves him praises him.

22. For so did I then love men, upon the judgment of men, not Thine, O my God, in whom no man is deceived. But yet I loved men not for qualities like those of a famous charioteer, or fighter with beasts in the theatre, known far and wide by a vulgar popularity, but far otherwise, and earnestly, and so as I would be myself commended. For I would not be commended or loved, as actors are (though I myself did commend and love them), but had rather be unknown, than so known; and even hated, than so loved. How are the impulses to such various and divers kinds of loves laid up in one soul? Why, since we are equally men, do I love in another what I should spurn and cast from myself? For it holds not, that as a good horse is loved by him who would not be that horse, therefore the same may be said of an actor, who shares our nature. Do I then love in a man what I, who am a man, hate to be? Man himself is a great deep, whose very hairs *Thou numberest, O Lord, and they fall not to the ground without Thee.*¹ And yet are the hairs of his head easier to be numbered than are his feelings, and the beatings of his heart.

23. But that orator was of that sort whom I loved, as wishing to be myself such; and I erred through a swelling pride, and *was tossed about with every wind,*² but yet was steered by Thee, though very secretly. And how do I know, and so confidently confess unto Thee, that I loved him more for the sake of his commendors, than for the very things for which he was

¹ ¹ Matt. x. 29, 30.

² Eph. iv. 14.

commended? Because, had he been unpraised, and these self-same men had dispraised him, and with dispraise and contempt told the very same things of him, I had never been so kindled and excited to love him. And yet the things had not been other, nor he himself other; but only the feelings of the relators. See where the impotent soul lies prostrate, that is not yet stayed up by the solidity of truth! Just as the gales of tongues blow from the breast of the opinionative, so are we carried this way and that, driven forward and backward, our light is overclouded, and the truth unseen. And lo, the truth is before us. It was to me a great matter that my discourse and labors should be known to that man: which, should he approve, I were the more kindled; but if he disapproved, my empty heart, void of Thy solidity, had been wounded. And yet the "Fair and Fit," whereon I wrote to him, I dwelt on with pleasure, and surveyed it, and admired it, though none joined therein.

XV. 24. But I saw not yet, whereon this weighty matter turned in Thy wisdom, O Thou Omnipotent, *who only doest wonders;*¹ and my mind ranged through corporeal forms; and "fair," I defined and distinguished as so in itself, and "fit," as so in correspondence to some other thing: and this I supported by corporeal examples. And I turned to the nature of the mind, but the false notion which I had of spiritual things let me not see the truth. Yet the force of truth did of itself flash into mine eyes,

¹ Ps. cvi. 4.

and I turned away my panting soul from incorporeal substance to lineaments, and colors, and bulky magnitudes. And not being able to see these in the mind, I concluded that I could not have any knowledge of the mind. And whereas in virtue I loved peace, and in viciousness I abhorred discord ; in the first I observed an unity, but in the other, a sort of division. And in that unity, I conceived the rational soul, and the nature of truth, and of the chief good to consist : but in this division I miserably imagined there to be some unknown substance of irrational life, and the nature of the chief evil, which should not only be a substance, but real life also, and yet not derived from Thee, O my God, of whom are all things. And yet that first I called a Monad, as it had been a soul without sex ; but the latter a Duad, — dividing into anger, in deeds of violence, and into lust, in deeds of flagitiousness ; not knowing whereof I spake. For I had not known or learned that neither was evil a substance, nor our soul that chief and unchangeable good.

25. For as deeds of violence arise if that emotion of the soul be corrupted whence vehement action springs, stirring itself insolently and unrulily ; and as lusts arise if that affection of the soul is ungoverned whereby carnal pleasures are drunk in : so do errors and false opinions defile the conversation if the reasonable soul itself be corrupted ; as it was then in me, who knew not that the soul must be enlightened by another light, that it may be partaker of truth, seeing that itself is not that essential nature

of truth. *For Thou shalt light my candle, O Lord my God, Thou shalt enlighten my darkness:*¹ and of *Thy fulness have we all received, for Thou art the true light that lighteth every man that cometh into the world;*² for in Thee there is no variableness, neither shadow of change.³

26. But I pressed towards Thee, and was thrust from Thee, that I might taste of death: for *Thou resistest the proud.*⁴ But what prouder than for me, with a strange madness, to assert myself to be that by nature which Thou art? For whereas I was subject to change (so much being manifest to me, since my very desire to become wise, was a wish, of worse to become better), yet chose I rather to imagine Thee subject to change, than myself not to be that which Thou art. Therefore I was repelled by Thee, and Thou resistedst my vain stiffneckedness, and I imagined corporeal forms, and although myself flesh, I accused flesh; and though I was a *wind that passeth away, I returned not*⁵ to Thee, but I passed on and on to things which have no being, neither in Thee, nor in me, nor in the body. Neither were they created for me by Thy truth, but by my vanity devised out of things corporeal. And I was wont to ask Thy faithful little ones, my fellow-citizens (from whom, unknown to myself, I stood exiled), I was wont, prating and foolishly, to ask them, “Why then doth the soul, which God created, err?” But I would not be asked, “Why, then, doth God err?”

¹ Ps. xviii. 28.

² John i. 16. 9.

³ Jam. i. 17.

⁴ 1 Pet. v. 5; Jam. iv. 6.

⁵ Ps. lxxviii. 39.

And I maintained that Thy unchangeable substance did err upon constraint, rather than confess that my changeable substance had gone astray voluntarily, and now, in punishment, lay in error.

27. I was then some six or seven and twenty years old when I wrote those volumes; revolving within me corporeal fictions, buzzing in the ears of my heart, which I turned, O sweet Truth, to thy inward melody, meditating on the “fair and fit,” and longing to stand and hearken to Thee, and *to rejoice greatly at the Bridegroom’s voice*,¹ but could not; for by the voices of mine own errors I was hurried abroad, and through the weight of my own pride I was sinking into the lowest pit. For Thou didst not *make me to hear joy and gladness*, nor did *the bones exult which were not yet humbled*.²

XVI. 28. And what did it profit me, that scarce twenty years old, a book of Aristotle, which they call the ten Predicaments,³ falling into my hands (on whose very name I hung, as on something great and divine, whenever my rhetoric master of Carthage, and others, accounted learned, mouthed it with cheeks bursting with pride), I read and understood it unaided? And on my conferring with others, who said that they scarcely understood it with very able tutors, not only orally explaining it, but drawing many things in sand, they could tell me no more of

¹ John iii. 29.

² Ps. li. 8.

³ All the relations of things were comprised by Aristotle under nine heads; as quantity, quality, etc.; and these, with the “substance” in which all inhere, make up the ten Predicaments, or *Categories*.

it than I had learned, reading it by myself. And the book appeared to me to speak very clearly of substances, such as "man," and of their qualities, as the figure of a man, of what sort it is; and stature, how many feet high; and his relationship, whose brother he is; or where placed; or when born; or whether he stands or sits; or be shod or armed; or does, or suffers anything; and all the innumerable things which might be ranged under these nine Predicaments, of which I have given some specimens, or under that chief Predicament of Substance.

29. What did all this further me, seeing it even hindered me? for imagining all being to be comprehended under those ten Predicaments, I essayed in such wise to understand, O my God, Thy wonderful and unchangeable Unity also, as if Thou also hadst been subjected to Thine own greatness or beauty; so that (as in bodies) they should exist in Thee, as their subject: whereas Thou Thyself art Thy greatness and beauty; but a body is not great or fair in that it is a body, seeing that, though it were less great or fair, it should notwithstanding be a body. But it was falsehood which I conceived concerning Thee, not truth; fictions of my misery, not the realities of Thy Blessedness. For Thou hadst commanded, and it was done in me, that the *earth should bring forth briars and thorns to me*, and that *in the sweat of my brows I should eat my bread.*¹

30. And what did it profit me, that all the books I could procure of the so-called liberal arts, I, the vile

¹ Gen. iii. 18, 19.

slave of vile affections, read by myself, and understood? And I delighted in them, but knew not whence came all that was true or certain in them. For I had my back to the light, and my face to the things enlightened; whence my face, with which I discerned the things enlightened, itself was not enlightened. Whatever was written, either on rhetoric, or logic, geometry, music, and arithmetic, I understood by myself without much difficulty, or any instructor, Thou knowest, O Lord, my God; because both quickness of understanding, and acuteness in discerning, is Thy gift: yet did I not give thanks for them to Thee. So then it served not to my use, but rather to my perdition, since I went about to get so good a *portion of my substance* into my own keeping; and I *kept not my strength for Thee*, but wandered from Thee *into a far country, to spend it upon harlotries.*¹ For what profited me good abilities, not employed to good uses? For I perceived not that those arts were attained with great difficulty, even by the studious and talented, until I attempted to explain them to such; when he most excelled in them, who followed me altogether slowly.

31. But what did this profit me, imagining that Thou, O Lord God, the Truth, wert a vast and bright body, and I a fragment of that body? Perverseness too great! But such was I. Nor do I blush, O my God, to confess to Thee *Thy mercies towards me*, and to call upon Thee; I who blushed not then to

¹ Luke xv.; Ps. lviii. 10. Vulg.

profess to men my blasphemies, and to bark against Thee. What profited me then my nimble wit in those sciences and all those most knotty volumes, unravelled by me, without aid from human instruction; seeing I erred so foully, and with such sacrilegious shamefulness, in the doctrine of piety? A far slower wit was more profitable to Thy little ones, since they departed not far from Thee, that in the nest of Thy Church they might securely be fledged, and nourish the wings of charity by the food of a sound faith. O Lord our God, *under the shadow of Thy wings let us hope;*¹ protect us, and carry us. Thou wilt carry us both when little, and *even to hoary hairs wilt Thou carry us;*² for our firmness, only when it is in Thee, is firmness; but when it is our own, it is infirmity. Our good ever lives with Thee; from which when we turn away, we are perverted. Let us, then, O Lord, return that we may not be overturned; because with Thee good lives without any decay, for Thou art good; nor need we fear, lest there be no place whither to return, because we fell from it: for our mansion,—Thy eternity,—fell not when we left Thee.

¹ Ps. lxiii. 7.

² Is. xlvi. 4.

THE FIFTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE'S TWENTY-NINTH YEAR — FAUSTUS, A SNARE OF SATAN TO MANY, MADE AN INSTRUMENT OF DELIVERANCE TO AUGUSTINE BY SHOWING THE IGNORANCE OF THE MANICHEES ON THOSE THINGS WHEREIN THEY PROFERRED TO HAVE DIVINE KNOWLEDGE — AUGUSTINE GIVES UP ALL THOUGHT OF GOING FURTHER AMONG THE MANICHEES — IS GUIDED TO ROME AND MILAN, WHERE HE HEARS AMBROSE, LEAVES THE MANICHEES, AND BECOMES AGAIN A CATECHUMEN IN THE CHURCH CATHOLIC.

I. 1. Accept, O Lord, the sacrifice of my confessions from the ministry of my tongue, which Thou hast formed and stirred up to confess unto Thy name. *Heal Thou all my bones, and let them say, O Lord, who is like unto Thee?*¹ For he who confesses to Thee, doth not teach Thee what takes place within him ; seeing a closed heart shuts not out Thy eye, nor can man's hardheartedness thrust back Thy hand : for Thou dissolvest it at Thy will in pity or in vengeance, and nothing can hide itself from Thy heat.² But let my soul praise Thee, that it may love Thee ; and let it confess Thy own mercies to Thee, that it may praise Thee.. Thy whole creation ceaseth not, nor is silent in Thy praises ; neither the spirit of man, with voice directed unto Thee, nor creation animate or inanimate, by the voice of those who meditate thereon : that so our

¹ Ps. xxxv. 20.

² Ps. xix. 6.

souls may from their weariness arise towards Thee, leaning on those things which Thou hast created, and passing on to Thyself who madest them wonderfully; whereby cometh refreshment and true strength.

II. 2. Let the restless, the godless, depart and flee from Thee; yet Thou seest them, and dividest the darkness. And behold, the universe with them is fair, though they are foul. But how can they injure Thee? or how disgrace Thy government, which, from the heaven to this lowest earth, is just and perfect? For whither fled they, when *they fled from Thy presence?*¹ or where dost not Thou find them? They fled, that they might not see Thee looking at them, and blinded, might stumble against Thee:² (because *Thou forsakest nothing Thou hast made;*³) that the unjust, I say, might stumble upon Thee, and justly be hurt; withdrawing themselves from Thy gentleness, and stumbling at Thy uprightness, and falling upon their own ruggedness. Ignorant, in truth, that Thou art everywhere, Whom no place encompasseth! that Thou alone art near, even to those that *remove far from Thee.*⁴ Let them, then, turn, and seek Thee; because not as they have forsaken their Creator, hast Thou forsaken Thy creation. Let them be turned and seek Thee; for behold, Thou art there in their heart, in the heart of those that confess to Thee, and cast themselves upon Thee, and weep in Thy bosom, after all their rugged

¹ Ps. cxxxix. 7.

² Gen. xvi. 14.

³ Wisd. xi. 25, old vers.

⁴ Ps. lxxiii. 27.

ways. Then dost Thou gently wipe away their tears, and they weep the more, and joy in weeping ; even for that Thou, Lord,—not man of flesh and blood, but—Thou, Lord, who madest them, remakest and comfortest them. But where was I when I was seeking Thee ? Thou wert before me, but I had gone away from Thee ; nor did I find myself, how much less Thee !

III. 3. I would lay open before my God that nine-and-twentieth year of mine age. There had then come to Carthage, a certain Bishop of the Manichees, Faustus by name, a great snare of the Devil, and many were entangled by him through the lure of his smooth language : which, though I did commend, yet could I separate from the truth of the things which I was earnest to learn : nor did I so much regard the service of oratory, as the science which this Faustus, so praised among them, set before me to feed upon. Fame had before bespoken him most knowing in all valuable learning, and exquisitely skilled in the liberal sciences. And since I had read and well remembered much of the philosophers, I compared some things of theirs with those long fables of the Manichees, and found the former the more probable ; even although they *could only prevail so far as to make judgment of this lower world, the Lord of it they could by no means find out.*¹ *For Thou art great, O Lord, and hast respect unto the humble, but the proud Thou beholdest afar off.*² Nor dost Thou draw near, but to the contrite in

¹ *Wisd. xiii. 9.*

² *Ps. cxxxviii. 6.*

heart,¹ nor art found by the proud, no, not though by curious skill they could number the stars and the sand, and measure the starry heavens, and traek the courses of the planets.

4. For with their understanding and wit, which Thou bestowedst on them, they search out these things; and much have they found out; and foretold, many years before, eclipses of those luminaries, the sun and moon,—what day and hour, and how many digits,—nor did their calculation fail, but it came to pass as they foretold; and they wrote down the rules they had found out, and these are read at this day, and out of them do others foretell in what year, and month of the year, and what day of the month, and what hour of the day, and what part of its light, moon or sun is to be eclipsed, and so it shall be as it is foreshowed. At these things men, that know not this art, marvel and are astonished, and they that know it, exult, and are puffed up; and by an ungodly pride departing from Thee, and failing of Thy light, they foresee so long before, a failure of the sun's light, which shall be, but see not the failure of their own, which now is. For they search not religiously to know whence they have the wit wherewith they search out this. And finding that Thou madest them, they give not themselves up to Thee, to preserve what Thou madest, nor sacrifice to Thee, what they have made themselves; nor slay their own soaring imaginations, as *fowls of the air*, nor their own diving curiosities (wherewith, like the *fishes of the*

¹ Ps. xxxiv. 18.

sea,¹ they wander over the unknown paths of the abyss), nor their own luxuriousness, as *beasts of the field*, that *Thou, Lord, a consuming fire*,² mayest burn up those dead cares of theirs, and recreate themselves immortally.

5. For they knew not the Way, Thy Word,³ by Whom Thou madest these things which they number, and themselves who number, and the sense whereby they perceive what they number, and the understanding out of which they number; or that *of Thy wisdom there is no number*.⁴ But the Only Begotten is Himself *made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification*,⁵ and was numbered among us, and *paid tribute unto Cæsar*.⁶ They knew not this Way whereby to descend to Him from themselves, and by Him ascend unto Him. They knew not this Way, and deemed themselves exalted among the stars and shining; and behold, they *fell upon the earth, and their foolish heart was darkened*.⁷ They discourse many things truly concerning the creature; but Truth, Artificer of the creature, they seek not piously, and therefore find Him not; or if they find Him, *knowing Him to be God, they glorify Him not as God, neither are thankful, but become vain in their imaginations, and profess themselves to be wise*,⁸ attributing to themselves what is Thine; and thereby with most perverse blindness, study to impute to Thee what is

¹ Ps. viii. 7, 8.

⁴ Ps. cxlvii. 5.

⁷ Is. xiv. 13; Rev. xii. 4; Rom. i. 21.

² Deut. iv. 24.

⁵ 1 Cor. i. 30.

⁸ Rom. i. 21.

³ John i. 3.

⁶ Matt. xvii. 27.

their own, forging lies of Thee who art the Truth, and *changing the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like corruptible man, and to birds, and four-footed beasts, and creeping things, changing Thy truth into a lie, and worshipping and serving the creature more than the Creator.*¹

6. Yet many truths concerning the creature learned I from these men, and saw the reason thereof from calculations, the succession of times, and the visible testimonies of the stars; and compared them with the views of Manichæus, which in his frenzy he had written out most largely on these subjects; but I discovered not any account of the solstices, or equinoxes, or the eclipses of the greater lights, nor whatever of this sort I had learned in the books of secular philosophy. But I was commanded to believe; and yet it corresponded not with what had been established by calculations and my own sight, but was quite contrary.

IV. 7. Doth then, O Lord God of truth, he who knoweth these things, therefore please Thee? Surely unhappy is he who knoweth all these, and knoweth not Thee: but happy whoso knoweth Thee, though he know not these. And whoso knoweth both Thee and them, is not the happier for them, but for Thee only, if *knowing Thee, he glorifies Thee as God, and is thankful, and becomes not vain in his imaginations.*² For as he is better off who knows how to possess a tree, and return thanks to Thee for the use thereof, although he know not how many cubits high

¹ Rom. i. 23.

² Rom. i. 21.

it is, or how wide it spreads, than he that can measure it, and count all its boughs, and neither owns it nor knows or loves its Creator: so a believer, to whom all this world of wealth belongs (since *having nothing, he yet possesseth all things*,¹ by cleaving unto Thee, whom all things serve), though he know not even the circles of the Great Bear, is doubtless in a better state than one who can measure the heavens and number the stars, and poise the elements, yet neglecteth Thee *who hast made all things in number, weight and measure*.²

V. 8. But yet who bade that unknown Manichæus to write on these things, the knowledge of which is no element of piety? For Thou hast said to man, *Behold, piety and wisdom*;³ of which he might be ignorant, though he had perfect knowledge of these things. But since Manichæus in reality knew not these things, and yet most impudently dared to teach them, he plainly could have no knowledge of piety. For it is vanity to make profession of these worldly things even when known; but confession to Thee is piety. Wherefore this errorist to this end spake much of these things, that convicted by those who had truly learned them, it might be manifest what understanding he had in the other abstruser things. For he would not have himself meanly thought of, but went about to persuade men, "That the Holy Ghost, the Comforter and Enricher of Thy faithful ones, was with plenary authority personally within him." When, therefore, he was found out to have

¹ Cor. vi. 10.

² Wisd. xi. 20.

³ Job xxviii. 23. LXX.

taught falsely of the heaven and stars, and of the motions of the sun and moon (although these things pertain not to the doctrine of religion), his sacrilegious presumption became evident enough, seeing he delivered things which not only he knew not, but which were falsified, with so mad a vanity of pride, that he sought to ascribe them to himself, as to a divine person.

9. For when I hear any Christian brother ignorant of these things, and mistaken on them, I can patiently behold such a man holding his opinion; nor do I see that any ignorance as to the position or character of the corporeal creation can injure him, so long as he doth not believe anything unworthy of Thee, O Lord, the Creator of all. But it doth injure him if he imagine it to pertain to the form of the doctrine of piety, and will affirm that too stiffly whereof he is ignorant. And yet is even such an infirmity, in the infancy of faith, borne by our mother Charity, till the new-born may *grow up unto a perfect man*, so as *not to be carried about with every wind of doctrine*.¹ But in the instance of him who in such wise presumed to be the teacher, source, guide, chief of all whom he could so persuade, that whoso followed him thought that he followed not a mere man, but Thy Holy Spirit; who would not judge that when he were once convicted of having taught anything false, he were to be detested and utterly rejected? But I had not as yet clearly ascertained whether the vicissitudes of longer and shorter days and nights,

¹ Eph. iv. 13, 14.

and of day and night itself, with the eclipses of the greater lights, and whatever else of the kind I had read of in other books, might be explained consistently with his sayings; so that, if they by any means might be, it should still remain a question to me whether it were so or no; and yet I might, on account of his reputed sanctity, rest my credence upon his authority.

VI. 10. And for almost all those nine years, wherein with unsettled mind I had been their disciple, I had longed but too intensely for the coming of this Faustus. For the rest of the sect, whom by chance I had lighted upon, when unable to solve my objections about these things, still held out to me the coming of this Faustus, by conference with whom, these and greater difficulties, if I had them, were to be most readily and abundantly cleared. When, then, he came, I found him a man of pleasing discourse, and who could speak fluently and in better terms, yet still but the self-same things which they were wont to say. But what availed the utmost neatness of the cup-bearer, to my thirst for a more precious draught? Mine ears were already cloyed with the like, nor did they seem to me therefore better, because better said; nor therefore true, because eloquent; nor the soul therefore wise, because the face was comely and the language graceful. But they who held him out to me were no good judges of things; and therefore to them he appeared intelligent and wise, because his words were pleasing. I remembered, however, that another sort of people

were suspicious even of truth, and refused to assent to it, if delivered in a smooth and copious discourse. But Thou, O my God, hadst already taught me by wonderful and secret ways; and I believe that Thou taughtest me, because it is truth; nor is there, besides Thee, any teacher of truth, where or whencesoever it may shine upon us. Of Thyself, therefore, had I now learned that neither ought anything to seem to be spoken truly, because eloquently; nor therefore falsely, because the utterance of the lips is inharmo-nious; nor, again, therefore true, because rudely deliv-ered; nor therefore false, because the language is rich; but that wisdom and folly are as wholesome and unwholesome food; and adorned or unadorned phrases, as courtly or country vessels: either kind of meats may be served up in either kind of dishes.

11. That longing, then, wherewith I had so long expected that man, was delighted verily with his action and feeling when disputing, and his choice and readiness of words to clothe his ideas. I was delighted, and, with many others and more than they, did I praise and extol him. It troubled me, however, that in the assembly of his auditors, I was not allowed to put in, and communicate those ques-tions that troubled me, in familiar converse with him. Which, when I might, and with my friends began to engage his ears at such times as it was not unbecoming for him to discuss with me, and had brought forward such things as moved me, I found him first utterly ignorant of liberal sciences, save grammar, and that but in an ordinary way. But

because he had read some of Tully's Orations, a very few books of Seneca, some things of the poets, and such few volumes of his own sect as were written in Latin and neatly, and was daily practised in speaking, he acquired a certain eloquence, which proved the more pleasing and seductive because under the guidance of a good wit, and with a kind of natural gracefulness. Was it not thus, as I recall it, O Lord my God, Thou Judge of my conscience? My heart and my remembrance is before Thee, Who didst at that time direct me by the hidden mystery of Thy providence, and didst set those shameful errors of mine before my face, that I might see and hate them.¹

VII. 12. For, after it was clear that he was ignorant of those arts in which I thought he excelled, I began to despair of his opening and solving the difficulties which perplexed me (of which, indeed, however ignorant, he might yet have held the truths of piety, had he not been a Manichee); for their books are fraught with prolix fables of the heaven, and stars, sun and moon; and I now no longer thought him able satisfactorily to decide what I much desired, whether, on comparison of these things with the calculations I had elsewhere read, the account given in the books of Manichæus were preferable, or at least as good. Which, when I proposed to be considered and discussed, he, so far modestly, shrunk from the burthen. For he knew that he knew not these things, and was not ashamed to confess it. For he

was not one of those talking persons, many of whom I had endured, who undertook to teach me these things, and said nothing. But this man had a heart, though not right towards Thee, yet neither altogether treacherous to himself. For he was not altogether ignorant of his own ignorance, nor would he rashly be entangled in a dispute, whence he could neither retreat, nor extricate himself fairly. Even for this I liked him the better. For fairer is the modesty of a candid mind, than the knowledge of those things which I desired ; and such I found him in all the more difficult and subtle questions.

13. My zeal for the writings of Manichæus being thus blunted, and despairing yet more of their other teachers, seeing that in divers things which perplexed me, he, so renowned among them, had so turned out ; I began to engage with him in the study of that literature, on which he also was much set (and which as rhetoric-reader I was at that time teaching young students at Carthage), and to read with him, either what himself desired to hear, or such as I judged fit for his genius. But all my efforts whereby I had purposed to advance in that sect, upon knowledge of that man, came utterly to an end ; not that I detached myself from them altogether, but as one finding nothing better, I had settled to be content meanwhile with what I had in whatever way fallen upon, unless by chance something more eligible should dawn upon me. Thus Faustus, to so many a snare of death, had now, neither willing nor witting it, begun to loosen that wherein I was taken. For

Thy hands, O my God, in the secret purpose of Thy providence, did not forsake my soul; and out of my mother's heart's blood, through her tears night and day poured out, was a sacrifice offered for me unto Thee; and Thou didst deal with me by wondrous ways.¹ Thou didst it, O my God: for *the steps of a man are ordered by the Lord, and He shall dispose his way.*² Or how shall we obtain salvation, but from Thy hand, remaking what It made?

VIII. 14. It was Thy doing, O Lord, that I should be persuaded to go to Rome, and to teach there what I was teaching at Carthage. And how I was persuaded to this, I will not neglect to confess to Thee: because herein also the deepest recesses of Thy wisdom, and Thy most present mercy to us, must be considered and confessed. I did not wish to go to Rome, because higher gains and higher dignities were warranted me by my friends who persuaded me to this (though even these things had at that time an influence over my mind); but my chief and almost only reason was, that I heard that young men studied there more peacefully, and were kept quiet under a restraint of more regular discipline; so that they did not, at their pleasure, petulantly rush into the school of one whose pupils they were not, nor were even admitted without his permission. Whereas, at Carthage, there reigns among the scholars a most disgraceful and unruly license. They burst in audaciously, and, with gestures almost frantic, disturb all order which any one hath estab-

¹ Joel ii. 26.

² Ps. xxxvii. 23.

lished for the good of his scholars. Divers outrages they commit, with a wonderful stolidity, punishable by law, did not custom uphold them ; that custom evincing them to be the more miserable, in that they now do as lawful what by Thy eternal law shall never be lawful ; and they think they do it unpunished, whereas they are punished with the very blindness whereby they do it, and suffer incomparably worse than what they do. The manners, then, which, when a student, I would not make my own, I was fain, as a teacher, to endure in others : and so I was well pleased to go where all that knew assured me that the like was not done. But Thou, *my refuge and my portion in the land of the living*,¹ that I might change my earthly dwelling for the salvation of my soul, at Carthage didst goad me, that I might thereby be torn from it ; and at Rome didst proffer me allurements, whereby I might be drawn thither, by men in love with a dying life : the one class doing frantic, the other promising vain, things ; and, to correct my steps, didst secretly use their and my own perverseness. For both they who disturbed my quiet were blinded with a disgraceful frenzy, and they who invited me elsewhere, savored of earth. And I, who here detested real misery, went there seeking unreal happiness.

15. But why I went hence, and went thither, Thou knowest, O God, yet showedst it neither to me nor to my mother, who grievously bewailed my journey, and followed me as far as the sea. But I

deceived her, as she held me by force, that either she might keep me back, or go with me; and I feigned that I had a friend whom I could not leave, till he had a fair wind to sail. And I lied to my mother, and to such a mother, and escaped. For this also hast Thou mercifully forgiven me, preserving me, thus full of execrable defilements, from the waters of the sea, for the water of Thy Grace; whereby, when I was cleansed, the streams of my mother's eyes should be dried, with which for me she daily watered the ground under her face. And yet refusing to return without me, I scarcely persuaded her to stay that night in a place hard by our ship, where was an Oratory in memory of the blessed Cyprian. That night I privily departed, but she remained weeping and in prayer. And what, O Lord, was she with so many tears asking of Thee, but that Thou wouldest not suffer me to sail? But Thou, in the depth of Thy counsels and hearing the main point of her desire, regardest not what she then asked, that Thou mightest make me what she ever asked. The wind blew and swelled our sails, and withdrew the shore from our sight; and she on the morrow was there, frantic with sorrow, and with complaints and groans filled Thine ears, who didst then disregard them; whilst through my desires, Thou wert hurrying me to end all desire, and the earthly part of her affection to me was chastened by the allotted scourge of sorrows. For she loved to have me with her, as mothers do, but much more than most; and she knew not how great joy Thou wert about to

work for her out of my absence. She knew not; therefore did she weep and wail, and by this agony there appeared in her the inheritance of Eve, with sorrow seeking what in sorrow she had brought forth. And yet, after accusing my treachery and hardheartedness, she betook herself again to intercede to Thee for me, went to her wonted place, and I to Rome.

IX. 16. And lo! there was I received by the scourge of bodily sickness, and I was going down to hell, carrying all the sins which I had committed, both against Thee, and myself, and others, many and grievous, over and above that bond of original sin, whereby *we all die in Adam.*¹ For Thou hadst not forgiven me any of these things in Christ, nor had He abolished by His cross the enmity which by my sins I had incurred by Thee. For how could He, by the crucifixion of a phantasm, which I believed Him to be? Thus the death of my soul was as real as the death of His flesh seemed to me false; and as real as was the death of His body, so false was the life of my soul, which did not believe it. And now, the fever heightening, I was parting and departing forever. For had I then parted hence, whither had I departed, but into fire and torments, such as my misdeeds deserved in the truth of Thy appointment? And this my mother knew not, yet in absence prayed for me. But Thou, everywhere present, heardest her where she was, and, where I was, hadst compassion upon me; that I should recover the health of my body, though frenzied as yet in my sacrilegious heart.

For I did not in all that danger desire Thy baptism ; and I was better as a boy, when I begged it of my mother's piety, as I have before recited and confessed. But I had grown up to my own shame, and I madly scoffed at the prescripts of Thy medicine, yet wouldest Thou not suffer me, being such, to die a double death. With which wound had my mother's heart been pierced, it could never be healed. For I cannot express the affection she bare to me, and with how much more vehement anguish she was now in labor of me in the spirit, than at her childbearing in the flesh.¹

17. I see not then how she should have been healed, had such a death of mine stricken through the bowels of her love. And where, then, would have been her so strong and unceasing prayers ? But wouldest Thou, O God of mercies, *despise* the *contrite and humbled heart*² of that chaste and sober widow, so frequent in almsdeeds, so full of duty and service to Thy saints, no day intermitting the oblation at Thine altar, twice a day, morning and evening, without any intermission, coming to Thy church, not for idle tattlings and old wives' *fables*,³ but that she might hear Thee in Thy discourses, and Thou her, in her prayers ? Couldest Thou despise and reject from Thy aid the tears of such an one, wherewith she begged of Thee not gold or silver, nor any mutable or passing good, but the salvation of her son's soul ? Thou, by whose gift she was such ? Never, Lord. Yea, Thou wert at hand, and wert hearing and doing,

¹ Gal. iv. 9.

² Ps. li. 51.

³ 1 Tim. v. 10.

in that order wherein Thou hadst determined before, that it should be done. Far be it that Thou shouldst deceive her in Thy visions and answers, some whereof I have, some I have not mentioned, which she laid up in her faithful heart, and ever praying, urged upon Thee, as Thine own handwriting. For Thou, because *Thy mercy endureth forever*, vouchsafest to those to whom Thou forgivest all their debts, to become also a debtor by Thy promises.

X. 18. Thou recoveredst me then of that sickness, and healedst the son of Thy handmaid, for the time, in body, that he might live, for Thee to bestow upon him a better and more abiding health. And even then, at Rome, I joined myself to those deceiving and deceived "holy ones;" not with their disciples only (of which number was he in whose house I had fallen sick and recovered); but also with those whom they call "The Elect." For I still thought, "that it was not we that sin, but that I know not what other nature sinned in us;" and it delighted my pride to be free from blame, and when I had done any evil, not to confess I had done any, *that Thou mightest heal my soul because it had sinned against Thee:*¹ but I loved to excuse it, and to accuse I know not what other thing, which was with me, but which I was not. But in truth it was wholly I, and mine impiety had divided me against myself: and that sin was the more incurable, whereby I did not judge myself a sinner: and execrable iniquity it was, that I had rather have Thee, Thee, O God Almighty, to

¹ Ps. xli. 4.

be overcome in me to my destruction, than myself to be overcome of Thee to salvation. Not as yet then hadst Thou set a watch before my mouth, and a door of safe keeping around my lips, that my heart might not turn aside to wicked speeches, to make excuses of sins, with men that work iniquity: and therefore was I still united with their Elect.¹

19. But now despairing to make proficiency in that false doctrine, even those things, with which, if I should find no better, I had resolved to rest contented, I now held more laxly and carelessly. For there half arose a thought in me, that those philosophers, whom they call Academics, were wiser than the rest, for that they held, men ought to doubt everything, and laid down that no truth can be comprehended by man: for so, not then understanding even their meaning, I also was clearly convinced that they thought as they are commonly reported. Yet did I freely and openly discourage that host of mine from that over-confidence which I perceived him to have in those fables, which the books of Manichæus are full of. Yet I lived in more familiar friendship with them than with others who were not of this heresy. Nor did I maintain it with my ancient eagerness; still my intimacy with that sect (Rome secretly harboring many of them) made me slower to seek any other way: especially since I despaired of finding the truth, from which they had turned me aside, in Thy Church, O Lord of heaven and earth, Creator of all things visible and invisible: and it

¹ Ps. cxli. 3, 4. Vulg.

seemed to me very unseemly to believe Thee to have the shape of human flesh, and to be bounded by the bodily lineaments of our members. And because, when I wished to think on my God, I knew not what to think of, but a mass of bodies (for what was not such did not seem to me to be anything), this was the greatest, and almost only cause of my inevitable error.

20. For hence I believed Evil also to be some kind of substance, and to have its own foul and hideous bulk; whether gross, which they called earth, or thin and subtle (like the body of the air), which they imagine to be some malignant mind creeping through that earth. And because a piety, such as it was, constrained me to believe, that the good God never created any evil nature, I conceived two masses, contrary to one another, both unbounded, but the evil narrower, the good more expansive. And from this pestilent beginning, the other sacrilegious conceits followed on me. For when my mind endeavored to recur to the Catholic faith, I was driven back, since that was not the Catholic faith, which I thought to be so. And I seemed to myself more reverential, if I regarded Thee, my God (to whom Thy mercies confess out of my mouth), as unbounded at least on all other sides (although on that one where the mass of evil was opposed to Thee I was constrained to confess Thee bounded), than if on all sides I should imagine Thee to be bounded by the form of a human body. And it seemed to me better to believe Thee to have created no evil (which to me in my igno-

rance seemed not only a substance, but a bodily substance, because I could not conceive of mind unless as a subtle body, and that diffused in definite spaces), than to believe that the nature of evil, such as I conceived it, could come from Thee. Yea, and our Saviour Himself, Thy Only Begotten, I believed to have been reached forth (as it were) for our salvation, out of the mass of Thy most lucid substance, so as to believe nothing of Him but what I could image in my vanity. His Nature, then, being such, I thought could not be born of the Virgin Mary, without being mingled with the flesh : and how that which I had so figured to myself could be mingled, and not defiled, I saw not. I feared therefore to believe Him born in the flesh, lest I should be forced to believe Him defiled by the flesh. Now will Thy spiritual ones mildly and lovingly smile upon me, if they shall read these my confessions. Yet such was I.

XI. 21. Furthermore, what the Manichees had criticized in Thy Scriptures, I thought could not be defended ; yet at times verily I had a wish to confer upon these several points with some one very well skilled in those books, and to make trial what he thought thereon ; for the words of one Helpidius, as he spoke and disputed face to face against the said Manichees, had begun to stir me even at Carthage : in that he had produced things out of the Scriptures not easily withheld, the Manichees' answer whereto seemed to me weak. And this answer they liked not to give publicly, but only to us in private. It

was, that the Scriptures of the New Testament had been corrupted by certain ones, I know not whom, who wished to engraft the law of the Jews upon the Christian faith: yet themselves produced not any uncorrupted copies. But I, conceiving of things corporeal only, was strongly held down, vehemently oppressed, and, in a manner, suffocated, by those “masses;” panting under which after the breath of Thy truth, I could not breathe it pure and untainted.

XII. 22. I began then diligently to practise that for which I came to Rome, to teach rhetorie; and first, to gather some to my house, to whom, and through whom, I had begun to be known; when lo! I found other offences committed in Rome, to which I was not exposed in Africa. True, those “subvertings” by profligate young men,¹ were not here practised, as was told me: but on a sudden, said they, to avoid paying their master’s stipend, a number of youths plot together, and remove to another,—breakers of faith, who for love of money hold justice cheap. These also *my heart hated*, though not *with a perfect hatred*:² for perchance I hated them more because I was to suffer by them, than because they did things utterly unlawful. Of a truth, such are base persons, and they go a whoring from Thee, loving these fleeting mockeries of things temporal, and filthy lucre, which fouls the hand that grasps it; hugging the fleeting world, and despising Thee, who abidest, and recallest, and forgivest the adulteress soul of man, when she returns to Thee. And now I

¹ Supra. p. 46.

² Ps. cxxxix. 22.

hate such depraved and crooked persons, though I love them if they can be corrected so as to prefer to money the learning which they acquire, and to learning, Thee, O God, the truth and fulness of assured good, and most pure peace. But then, I rather for my own sake disliked them, and wished them evil, than liked and wished them good for Thine.

XIII. 23. When, therefore, they of Milan had sent to Rome, to the prefect of the city, to furnish them with a rhetoric reader for their city, and send him at the public expense, I made application (through those very persons, intoxicated with Manichæan vanities, to be freed wherefrom I was to go, neither of us, however, knowing it) that Symmachus, then prefect of the city, would try me by setting me some subject, and so send me. To Milan I came, to Ambrose the Bishop, known to the whole world as among the best of men, Thy devout servant; whose eloquent discourse did then plentifully dispense unto Thy people the fatness of Thy wheat, the gladness of Thy oil, and the sober inebriation of Thy wine.¹ To him was I unconsciously led by Thee, that by him I might consciously be led to Thee. That man of God received me as a father, and showed me an episcopal kindness on my coming. Thenceforth I began to love him, at first indeed not as a teacher of the truth (which I utterly despaired of in Thy Church), but as a person kind towards myself. And I listened diligently to him preaching to the people, not with the intent I ought, but, as it were, trying

¹ Ps. iv. 7; civ. 15.

his eloquence, whether it answered the fame thereof, or flowed fuller or lower than was reported; and I hung on his words attentively; but of the matter I was as a careless and scornful looker-on; and I was delighted with the sweetness of his discourse, more recondite, yet in manner less winning and harmonious, than that of Faustus. Of the matter, however, there was no comparison; for the one was wandering amid Manichæan delusions, the other teaching salvation most soundly. But *salvation is far from sinners*,¹ such as I then stood before him; and yet was I drawing nearer by little and little, and unconsciously.

XIV. 24. For though I took no pains to learn what he spake, but only to hear how he spake (for that empty interest in style alone was left me, despairing of a way, open for man, to Thee); yet together with the words which I would choose, came also into my mind the things which I would refuse; for I could not separate them. And while I opened my heart to admit "how eloquently he spake," there also entered "how truly he spake;" but this by degrees. For first, the things spoken by Ambrose began now to appear to me capable of defence; and the Catholic faith, for which I had thought nothing could be said against the Manichees' objections, I now thought might be maintained without shamelessness; especially after I had heard one or two places of the Old Testament resolved, and oftentimes "*in a figure*,"² which when I understood only accord-

¹ Ps. cxix. 155.

² 1 Cor. xiii. 12; 2 Cor. iii. 6.

ing to the letter, I was slain. Very many places then of those books having been explained, I now blamed my despair, in believing that no answer could be given to such as hated and scoffed at the Law and the Prophets. Yet did I not therefore then see, that the Catholic way was to be held, because it also could find learned maintainers, who could at large and with some show of reason answer objections; nor that what I held was therefore to be condemned, because both sides could be maintained. For the Catholic cause seemed to me in such sort not vanquished, as still not as yet to be victorious.

25. Hereupon I earnestly bent my mind, to see if in any way I could by any certain proof convict the Manichees of falsehood. Could I once have conceived a spiritual substance, all their strongholds had been beaten down, and cast utterly out of mind; but I could not. Notwithstanding, concerning the frame of this world, and the whole of nature, which the senses of the flesh can reach to, as I more and more considered and compared things, I judged the tenets of most of the philosophers to have been much more probable. So, then, after the manner of the Academics (as they are supposed)¹ doubting everything, and wavering between all, I settled so far, that the Manichees were to be abandoned; judging that, even while doubting, I ought not to continue in that sect to which I already preferred some of the philosophers; to which philoso-

¹ Compare Augustine's *De Civitate Dei*, Lib. XIX. c. i.—ED.

phers, notwithstanding, for that they were without the saving Name of Christ, I utterly refused to commit the cure of my sick soul. I determined therefore to be a Catechumen in the Catholic Church, to which I had been commended by my parents, until something certain should dawn upon me, whither I might steer my course.

THE SIXTH BOOK.

ARRIVAL OF MONICA AT MILAN—HER OBEDIENCE TO AMBROSE, AND HIS REGARD FOR HER—AMBROSE'S HABITS—AUGUSTINE'S GRADUAL ABANDONMENT OF ERROR—FINDS THAT HE HAS BLAMED THE CATHOLIC CHURCH WRONGLY—DESIRE OF ABSOLUTE CERTAINTY, BUT STRUCK WITH THE CONTRARY ANALOGY OF GOD'S NATURAL PROVIDENCE—HOW SHAKEN IN HIS WORLDLY PURSUITS—GOD'S GUIDANCE OF HIS FRIEND ALYPIUS—AUGUSTINE DEBATES WITH HIMSELF AND HIS FRIENDS ABOUT THEIR MODE OF LIFE—HIS INVETERATE SINS, AND DREAD OF JUDGMENT.

I. 1. *O Thou, my hope from my youth,*¹ where wert Thou to me, and whither wert Thou gone? Hadst not Thou created me, and separated me from the beasts of the field, and fowls of the air? Thou hadst made me wiser, yet did I walk in darkness, and in slippery places, and sought Thee abroad out of myself, and found not the God of my heart; and had come into the depths of the sea, and distrusted and depaired of ever finding truth. My mother had now come to me, resolute through piety, following me over sea and land, in all perils confiding in Thee. For in perils of the sea, she comforted the very mariners (by whom passengers unacquainted with the deep, used rather to be comforted when troubled), assuring them of a safe arrival, because Thou hadst

¹ Ps. lxxi. 5.

by a vision assured her thereof. She found me in grievous peril, through despair of ever finding truth. But when I had discovered to her that I was now no longer a Manichee, though not yet a Catholic Christian, she was not overjoyed, as at something unexpected; although she was now relieved concerning a part of my misery, for which she bewailed me as one dead, though to be reawakened by Thee. I was carried forth, therefore, upon the *bier* of her thoughts, that Thou mightest say to the *son of the widow*, *Young man, I say unto thee, Arise; and he should revive, and begin to speak, and thou shouldest deliver him to his mother.*¹ Her heart then was shaken with no tumultuous exultation, when she heard that what she daily with tears desired of Thee, was already in so great part realized; in that, though I had not yet attained the truth, I was rescued from falsehood; but, as being assured that Thou, who hadst promised the whole, wouldest one day give the rest, more calmly, and with an heart full of confidence, she replied to me, "She believed in Christ, that before she departed this life, she should see me a Catholic believer." Thus much to me. But to Thee, Fountain of mercies, poured she forth more copious prayers and tears, that Thou wouldest hasten Thy help, and enlighten my darkness; and she hastened the more eagerly to the Church, and hung upon the lips of Ambrose, praying for the *fountain of that water, which springeth up unto life everlasting.*² But that man she loved as an

¹ Luke vii. 14, 15.

² John iv. 14.

angel of God, because she knew that by him I had been brought for the present to that doubtful state of faith I now was in, through which she anticipated most confidently that I should pass from sickness unto health, after the access, as it were, of a sharper fit, which physicians call “the crisis.”

II. 2. When then my mother had once, as she was wont in Africa, brought to the churches built in memory of the saints, certain cakes, and bread and wine, and was forbidden by the door-keeper; so soon as she knew the bishop had forbidden this, she so piously and obediently embraced his wishes, that I myself wondered how readily she censured her own practice, rather than discuss his prohibition.¹ For wine-bibbing did not lay siege to her spirit, nor did love of wine provoke her to hatred of the truth, as it doth too many (both men and women), who revolt at a lesson of sobriety, as men well-drunk at a draught mingled with water. But she, when she had brought her basket of festival-food, to be but tasted by herself, and then given away, never joined therewith more than one small cup of wine, diluted according to her own abstemious habits, which for courtesy she would taste. And if there were many churches² of the departed saints, that were to be honored in that manner, she still carried round that same one cup, to be used everywhere; and this, though not only made very watery, but unpleasantly heated by carrying about, she would distribute to those about her by small sips; for she sought there

¹ Compare Augustini *Epistolae* xxii., xxix. — ED.

devotion, not pleasure. So soon, then, as she found this custom to be forbidden by that famous preacher, and most pious prelate, even to those that would use it soberly, lest so an occasion of excess might be given to the drunken,— and furthermore, because these, as it were, anniversary funeral solemnities did much resemble the superstition of the Gentiles,— she most willingly forbore it: and in the place of a basket filled with the fruits of the earth, she learned to bring to the churches of the martyrs a breast filled with more purified petitions, and to give what she could to the poor; that so the communication of the Lord's Body might be rightly celebrated in the places where, after the example of His Passion, the martyrs had been sacrificed and crowned. But yet it seems to me, O Lord my God, and thus thinks my heart of it in Thy sight, that perhaps she would not so readily have yielded to the cutting off of this custom, had it been forbidden by another whom she loved not as Ambrose, whom, for my salvation, she loved most entirely; and he loved her again, for her most religious conversation, whereby in good works, *so fervent in spirit*, she was constant at church; so that, when he saw me, he often burst forth in her praise, congratulating me that I had such a mother; not knowing what a son she had in me, who doubted of all these things, and imagined the way to life could not be found out.

III. 3. Nor did I yet groan in my prayers, that Thou wouldest help me; but my spirit was wholly intent on learning, and restless to dispute. And

Ambrose himself, as the world counts happy, I esteemed a happy man, whom personages so great held in such honor; only his celibacy seemed to me a painful course. But what hope he bore within him, what struggles he had against the temptations which beset his very excellencies, or what comfort in adversity, and what sweet joys Thy Bread had for the hidden mouth of his spirit, when chewing the cud thereof, I neither could conjecture, nor had experienced. Nor did he know the tides of my feelings, or the abyss of my danger. For I could not ask of him what I would as I would, being shut out both from his ear and speech by multitudes of busy people, whose weaknesses he served. With whom, when he was not taken up (which was but a little time), he was either refreshing his body with the sustenance absolutely necessary, or his mind with reading. But when he was reading, his eye glided over the pages, and his heart searched out the sense, but his voice and tongue were at rest. Ofttimes when we had come (for no man was forbidden to enter, nor was it his wont that any who came should be announced to him), we saw him thus reading to himself, and never otherwise; and having long sat silent (for who durst intrude on one so intent?) we were fain to depart, conjecturing, that in the small interval, which he obtained, free from the din of others' business, for the recruiting of his mind, he was loath to be taken off; and perchance he feared lest if the author he read should deliver anything obscurely, some attentive or perplexed hearer should

desire him to expound it, or to discuss some of the harder questions; so that his time being thus spent, he could not turn over so many volumes as he desired; although the preserving of his voice (which a very little speaking would weaken), might be the truer reason for his reading to himself. But with what intent soever he did it, certainly in such a man it was good.

4. I, however, had no opportunity of inquiring what I wished of that so holy oracle of Thine, his breast, unless the thing might be answered briefly. But those tides in me, to be poured out to him, required his full leisure, and never found it. I heard him indeed every Lord's day, *rightly expounding the Word of truth*,¹ among the people; and I was more and more convinced, that all the knots of those crafty calumnies, which those our deceivers had knit against the Divine Books, could be unravelled. But when I understood withal, that the words, "*man, created by Thee, after Thine own image,*" were not so understood by Thy spiritual sons, whom of the Catholic Mother Thou hast regenerated through grace, as though they believed and conceived of Thee as bounded by human shape; (although what a spiritual substance should be I had not even a faint or shadowy notion); yet, with joy I blushed at having so many years barked not against the Catholic faith, but against the fictions of carnal imaginations. For so rash and impious had I been, that what I ought by inquiring to have learned, I

had ignorantly pronounced upon, condemning. For Thou, Most High, and most near, most secret, and most present, Who hast not limbs some larger, some smaller, but art wholly everywhere, and nowhere in space, art not of corporeal shape, yet hast Thou made man after Thine own image; and behold, from head to foot is he contained in space.

IV. 5. Being ignorant then how this Thy image should subsist, I should have knocked and proposed the question, how it was to be believed, and not insultingly opposed it, as if believed. Doubt, then, as to what to hold for certain, the more sharply gnawed my heart, the more ashamed I was, that so long deluded and deceived by the promise of certainties, I had with childish error and vehemence, prated of so many uncertainties. For that they were falsehoods, became clear to me later. However, I was certain that they were uncertain, and that I had formerly accounted them certain, when with a blind contentiousness, I accused Thy Catholic Church, whom I now discovered, not indeed as yet to teach truly, but at least not to teach that for which I had grievously censured her. So I was confounded, and converted: and I joyed, O my God, that the One Only Church, the body of Thine Only Son (wherein the name of Christ had been put upon me as an infant), had no taste for infantine conceits; nor in her sound doctrines maintained any tenet which should confine Thee, the Creator of all, in space, however great and large, yet bounded everywhere by the limits of a human form.

6. I joyed also that the old Scriptures of the law and the prophets were laid before me, not now to be perused with that eye to which before they seemed absurd, when I reviled Thy holy ones for so thinking, whereas indeed they thought not so : and with joy I heard Ambrose, in his sermons to the people, oftentimes most diligently recommend this text for a rule, *The letter killeth, but the Spirit giveth life ;*¹ whilst he drew aside the mystic veil, laying open spiritually what, according to the letter, seemed to teach something unsound ; teaching herein nothing that offended me, though he taught what I knew not as yet whether it were true. For I kept my heart from assenting to anything, fearing to fall headlong ; but by hanging in suspense I was the worse killed. For I wished to be as assured of the things I saw not, as I was that seven and three are ten. For I was not so mad as to think that even this could not be comprehended ; but I desired to have other things as clear as this, whether things corporeal, which were not present to my senses, or spiritual, whereof I knew not how to conceive, except corporeally. By believing I might have been cured, and the eyesight of my soul being cleared, might have been directed to Thy truth, which abideth always, and in no part faileth. But as he who has tried a bad physician, fears to trust himself with a good one, so was it with the health of my soul, which could not be healed but by believing, and lest it should believe falsehoods, refused to be cured ; resisting Thy hands, who hast

prepared the medicines of faith, and hast applied them to the diseases of the whole world, and given unto them so great authority.

V. 7. Being led, however, from this to prefer the Catholic doctrine, I felt that her proceeding was more unassuming and honest, in that she required belief in things not demonstrated (whether it was that they could in themselves be demonstrated but not to certain persons, or could not at all be), whereas among the Manichees our credulity was mocked by a promise of certain knowledge, and then so many most fabulous and absurd things were imposed to be believed, because they could not be demonstrated. Then Thou, O Lord, little by little with most tender and merciful hand, touching and composing my heart, didst persuade me,—considering what innumerable things I believed, which I saw not, nor was present while they were done, as so many things in secular history, so many reports of places and of cities which I had not seen, so many reports of friends, so many of physicians, so many continually of other men, which unless we should believe, we should know nothing at all in this life; lastly, with how unshaken an assurance I believed of what parents I was born, which I could not know had I not believed upon hearsay,—considering all this, Thou didst persuade me, that not they who believed Thy Books (which Thou hast established in so great authority among almost all nations), but they who believed them not, were to be blamed; and that they were not to be heard who should say to me, “How knowest thou

those Scriptures to have been imparted unto mankind by the Spirit of the one true and most true God?" For this very thing was of all most to be believed, since no contentiousness of all that multitude of blasphemous questionings which I had read in the self-contradicting philosophers, could wring this belief from me, "That Thou art" whatsoever Thou art¹ (what I knew not), and "That the government of human things belongs to Thee."

8. This I believed, sometimes more strongly, more weakly other-whiles; yet I ever believed both that Thou art, and hast a care of us; though I was ignorant both what was to be thought of Thy substance, and what way led or led back to Thee. Since, then, we are too weak by abstract reasonings to find out truth, and for this very cause need the authority of Holy Writ, I began to believe that Thou wouldest never have given such excellency of authority to Scripture in all lands, hadst Thou not willed thereby to be believed in, and sought. For those things, sounding strangely in the Scripture, which were wont to offend me, being now expounded satisfactorily, I referred to the depth of the mysteries; and its authority appeared to me the more venerable, and more worthy of religious credence, in that while it lay open to all to read, it reserved the majesty of its mysteries within its profounder meaning, stooping to all in the great plainness of its words and lowness of its style, yet calling forth the intensest application of such as are not light of

¹ Ex. iii. 14.

heart ; that so it might receive all in its open bosom, and through narrow passages waft over towards Thee some few, yet many more than if it stood not aloft on such a height of authority, nor drew multitudes within its bosom by its holy lowness. These things I thought on, and Thou wert with me ; I sighed, and Thou hearest me ; I wavered and Thou didst guide me ; I wandered through the broad way of the world, and Thou didst not forsake me.

VI. 9. I panted after honors, gains, marriage ; and Thou deridedst me. In these desires I underwent most bitter crosses, Thou being the more gracious, the less Thou sufferedst aught to grow sweet to me which was not Thyself. Behold my heart, O Lord, who wouldest I should remember all this, and confess to Thee. Let my soul cleave unto Thee, now that Thou hast freed it from that fast-holding birdlime of death. How wretched was it ! and Thou didst irritate the sense of its wounds, that, forsaking all else, it might be converted unto Thee, who art above all, and without whom all things would be nothing ; and so be converted, and healed. How miserable was I then, and how didst Thou deal with me to make me feel my misery on that day when I was preparing to recite a panegyric of the Emperor,¹ wherein I was to utter many a lie, and, lying, was to be applauded by those who knew I lied, and my heart was panting with these anxieties, and boiling with the feverishness of consuming thoughts. For,

¹ Valentinian II. : Compare Aug. *Contra Petilianum*, III. 25, and Posidonus *De Vita Augustini*, 1.—ED.

passing through one of the streets of Milan, I observed a poor beggar, then, I suppose, with a full belly, joking and joyous: and I sighed, and spoke to the friends around me of the many sorrows of our ambitions; for that by all such efforts of ours, as those wherein I then toiled, dragging along, under the goading of desire, the burthen of my own wretchedness, and, by dragging, augmenting it, we yet looked to arrive only at that very joyousness, whither that beggar-man had arrived before us, who should never perchance attain it. For what he had obtained by means of a few begged pence, the same was I plotting for by many a toilsome turning and winding,—the joy of a temporary felicity. For he verily had not the true joy; but yet I, with those my ambitious designs, was seeking one much less true. For certainly he was joyous, I anxious; he void of care, I full of fears. But should any ask me, had I rather be merry or fearful? I would answer, merry. Again, if he asked had I rather be such as he was, or what I then was? I should choose to be myself, though worn with cares and fears; but would this be wise, and according to reason? For I ought not to prefer myself to him, because more learned than he, seeing I had no joy therein, but sought to please men by it; and that not to instruct, but simply to please. Wherefore, also Thou didst break my bones with the staff of Thy correction.

10. Away with those, then, from my soul, who say to her, "It makes a difference whence a man's joy is. That beggar-man joyed in drunkenness; Thou

wouldest joy in glory." What glory, Lord? That which is not in Thee. For even as his was no true joy, so was that no true glory: and it overthrew my soul more. For he that very night would digest his drunkenness; but I had slept and risen again with mine, and was to sleep again, and again to rise with it, how many days, Thou, God, knowest. But "it doth make a difference whence a man's joy is." I know it, and the joy of a faithful hope lieth incomparably beyond such vanity. Yea, and so was that beggar then beyond me: for he verily was the happier; not only for that he was thoroughly drenched in mirth, I disembowelled with cares: but he, by fair wishes had gotten wine; I, by lying, was seeking for empty, swelling praise. Much to this purpose said I then to my friends: and I often marked in them the same experience with my own; and I found it went ill with me, and grieved, and doubled that very ill; and if any prosperity smiled on me, I was loath to catch at it, for almost before I could grasp it, it flew away.

VII. 11. These things we, who were living as friends together, bemoaned together, but chiefly and most familiarly did I speak thereof with Alypius and Nebridius. Alypius was born in the same town with me, of persons of chief rank there, but he was younger than I. He had studied under me, both when I first lectured in our town, and afterwards at Carthage, and he loved me much, because I seemed to him kind, and learned; and I loved him for his great towardliness to virtue, which was eminent in

one of no greater years. Yet the whirlpool of Carthaginian habits (amongst whom those idle spectacles are hotly followed) had drawn him into the madness of the Circus. But while he was miserably tossed therein, and I, professing rhetoric there in a public school, he as yet came not under my teaching, by reason of some unkindness risen betwixt his father and me. I had found how deadly he doted upon the Circus, and was deeply grieved that he seemed likely to throw away so great promise: yet had I no means of advising or with a sort of constraint reclaiming him, either by the kindness of a friend, or the authority of a master. For I supposed that he thought of me as his father did; but it was not so; and laying aside his father's mind in that matter, he began to greet me, came sometimes into my lecture-room, hear a little, and begone.

12. I, however, had forgotten to deal with him, so that he should not, through a blind and headlong desire of vain pastimes, undo so good a wit. But Thou, O Lord, who guidest the course of all Thou hast created, hadst not forgotten him, who was one day to be among Thy children, a priest and dispenser of Thy Sacrament; and that his amendment might plainly be attributed to Thyself, Thou effectest it through me, but unknowingly. For as one day I sat in my accustomed place, with my scholars before me, he entered, greeted me, sat down, and applied his mind to what I then handled. I had by chance a passage in hand, which, while I was explaining, a likeness from the Cireensian races occurred to

me, as likely to make what I would convey pleasanter and plainer, seasoned with biting mockery of those whom that madness had enthralled; God, Thou knowest, that I then thought not of curing Alypius of that infection. But he took it wholly to himself, and thought that I said it simply for his sake. And what another would have taken as occasion of offence with me, that right-minded youth took as a ground of being offended at himself, and loving me more fervently. For Thou hadst said it long ago, and put it into Thy book, *Rebuke a wise man and he will love thee.*¹ But I had not rebuked him, but Thou, who employest all, knowing or not knowing, in that order which Thyself knowest (and that order is just), didst of my heart and tongue make burning coals, by which to set on fire the hopeful mind, thus languishing, and so cure it. Let him be silent in Thy praises, who considers not Thy mercies, which confess unto Thee out of my inmost soul. For upon that speech, Alypius burst out of that pit so deep, wherein he was wilfully plunged, and was blinded with its wretched pastimes; and he roused his mind with a strong self-command; whereupon all the filths of the Circensian pastimes flew off from him, nor returned he again thither. Upon this, he prevailed with his unwilling father, that he might be my scholar. He gave way, and gave in. And Alypius beginning to be my hearer again, was involved in the same superstition with me, loving in the Manichees that show of consistency, which he supposed

¹ Prov. ix. 8.

true and unfeigned. Whereas it was a sensless and seducing continity, ensnaring precious souls, unable as yet to reach the depth of virtue, yet readily beguiled with the surface of what was but a shadowy and counterfeit virtue.

VIII. 13. Not forsaking that secular course which his parents had charmed him to pursue, he had gone before me to Rome, to study law, and there he was carried away incredibly with an incredible eagerness after the shows of gladiators. For being utterly averse to and detesting such spectacles, he was one day by chance met by divers of his acquaintances and fellow-students coming from dinner, and they with a familiar violence haled him, vehemently refusing and resisting, into the Amphitheatre, during these cruel and deadly shows, he thus protesting: “Though you hale my body to that place, and there set me, can you force me also to turn my mind or my eyes to those shows? I shall then be absent while present, and so shall overcome both you and them.” They hearing this, led him on nevertheless, desirous perchance to try that very thing, whether he could do as he said. When they were come thither, and had taken their places as they could, the whole place kindled with that savage pastime. But he, closing the passages of his eyes, forbade his mind to range abroad after such evils; and would he had stopped his ears also! For in the fight, when one fell, a mighty cry of the whole people striking him strongly, overcome by curiosity, and as if prepared to despise and be superior to it whatsoever it were, even when seen,

he opened his eyes, and was stricken with a deeper wound in his soul, than the gladiator, whom he desired to behold, was in his body; and he fell more miserably than he, upon whose fall that mighty noise was raised, which entered through his ears and unlocked his eyes, to make way for the striking and beating down of a soul, bold rather than resolute, and the weaker, in that it had presumed on itself, which ought to have relied on Thee. For so soon as he saw that blood, he therewith drunk down savageness; nor turned away, but fixed his eye, drinking in frenzy, unawares, and was delighted with that guilty fight, and intoxicated with the bloody pastime. Nor was he now the man he came, but one of the throng he came unto, yea, a true associate of theirs that brought him thither. Why say more? He beheld, shouted, kindled, carried thence with him the madness which should goad him to return not only with them who first drew him thither, but also before them, yea, and to draw in others. Yet thence didst Thou with a most strong and most merciful hand pluck him, and taughtest him to have confidence not in himself, but in Thee. But this was afterwards.

IX. 14. All this was being laid up in his memory to be a medicine hereafter. So was this, also, that when he was yet studying under me at Carthage, and was thinking over at mid-day in the market-place what he was to say by heart (as scholars are accustomed), Thou sufferedst him to be apprehended by the officers of the market-place for a thief. For no other cause I deem, didst Thou, our God, suffer

it, but that he, who was hereafter to prove so great a man, should already begin to learn that, in judging of causes, man is not readily to be condemned by man out of a rash credulity. For as he was walking up and down by himself before the judgment-seat, with his note-book and pen, lo! a young man, a lawyer, the real thief, privily bringing a hatchet, got in, unperceived by Alypius, as far as the leaden gratings, which fence in the silversmiths' shops, and began to cut away the lead. But the noise of the hatchet being heard, the silversmiths beneath began to make a stir, and sent to apprehend whomever they should find. But the thief hearing their voices, ran away, leaving his hatchet, fearing to be taken with it. Alypius now, who had not seen him enter, was aware of his leaving, and saw with what speed he made away. And being desirous to know the matter, entered the place ; where finding the hatchet, he was standing, wondering and considering it, when behold, those that had been sent, find him alone with the hatchet in his hand, the noise whereof had startled and brought them thither. They seize him, hale him away, and gathering the dwellers in the market-place together, boast of having taken a notorious thief, and so he was being led away to be taken before the judge.

15. But thus far was Alypius to be instructed. For forthwith, O Lord, Thou succoredst his innocence, whereof Thou alone wert witness. For as he was being led either to prison or to punishment, a certain architect met them, who had the chief charge

of the public buildings. Glad they were to meet him especially, by whom they were wont to be suspected of stealing the goods lost out of the market-place, that they might show him at last by whom these thefts were committed. He, however, had frequently seen Alypius at a certain senator's house, to whom he often went to pay his respects; and recognizing him immediately, he took him aside by the hand, and inquiring the occasion of so great a calamity, heard the whole matter, and bade all present, amid much uproar and threats, to go with him. So they came to the house of the young man, who had done the deed. There, before the door, was a boy, so young, as to be likely, not apprehending any harm to his master, to disclose the whole. For he had attended his master to the market-place. Whom, so soon as Alypius remembered, he told the architect: and he, showing the hatchet to the boy, asked him "Whose that was?" — "Ours," quoth he, presently: and being further questioned, he discovered everything. Thus the crime was transferred to that house, and the multitude which had begun to insult over Alypius, was ashamed; and he who was to be a dispenser of Thy Word, and an examiner of many causes in Thy Church, went away better experienced and instructed.

X. 16. This Alypius I found at Rome, and he clave to me by a strong tie, and went with me to Milan, both that he might not leave me, and might practise something of the law he had studied, more to please his parents than himself. There he had

thrice sat as assessor with an uncorruptness much wondered at by others, he wondering at others, rather, who could prefer gold to honesty. His character was tried, besides, not only with the bait of covetousness, but with the goad of fear. At Rome he was assessor to the Count of the Italian Treasury. There was at that time a very powerful senator, to whose favors many stood indebted, and whom many much feared. He would needs do, by abuse of power, what by the laws was unallowed. Alypius resisted it: a bribe was promised; with all his heart he scorned it: threats were held out; he trampled upon them: all wondering at so unwonted a spirit, which neither desired the friendship, nor feared the enmity of one so great and so renowned for innumerable means of doing good or evil. And the very judge also, whose counsellor Alypius was, although unwilling it should be, yet did not openly refuse, but put the matter off upon Alypius, alleging that he would not allow him to do it: for in truth had the judge done it, Alypius would have decided otherwise. With this one thing in the way of learning, however, was he well-nigh seduced, namely, that he might have books copied for him at the city's expense; but consulting justice, he altered his deliberation for the better; esteeming equity whereby he was hindered more gainful than the power whereby he were allowed. These are slight things, *but he that is faithful in little, is faithful also in much.*¹ Nor can that be void which proceeded out of the mouth of Thy

¹ Luke xvi. 10.

Truth ; If ye have not been faithful in the unrighteous Mammon, who will commit to your trust true riches ? And if ye have not been faithful in that which is another man's, who shall give you that which is your own ?¹ He being such, did at that time cleave to me, and with me wavered in purpose, what course of life was to be taken.

17. Nebridius, also, who, having left his native country near Carthage, yea, and Carthage itself, where he had lived some time, leaving his excellent family-estate and house, and a mother behind, who was not to follow him, had come to Milan, for no other reason but that with me he might live in a most ardent search after truth and wisdom. Like me he sighed, like me he wavered, an ardent searcher after true life, and a most acute examiner of the most difficult questions. Thus were there the mouths of three indigent persons sighing out their wants one to another, and *waiting upon Thee that Thou mightest give them their meat in due season.*² And in all the bitterness, which by Thy mercy followed our worldly affairs, as we looked towards the end, and asked why we should suffer all this, darkness met us ; and we turned away groaning, and saying, *How long shall these things be ?* This, too, we often said : and yet, so saying, forsook not these worldly things ; for as yet there dawned nothing certain which we might embrace in the place of them.

XI. 18. And I, viewing and reviewing things, wondered extremely at the length of time that had

¹ Luke xvi. 11, 12.

² Ps. cxlv. 15.

elapsed since my nineteenth year, when I first began to kindle with the desire of wisdom, resolving when I had found it to abandon all the empty hopes and lying frenzies of vain desires. And lo! I was now in my thirtieth year, sticking in the same mire, greedy of enjoying present things, which passed away and wasted my soul; while I said to myself, “To-morrow I shall find it; it will appear manifestly, and I shall grasp it; lo! Faustus the Manichee will come, and clear up everything! O you great men, ye Academicians, it is true then that no certainty can be attained for the ordering of life! Nay, let me search the more diligently, and despair not. Lo! things in the ecclesiastical books are not absurd to me now, which sometimes seemed absurd, and may be otherwise taken, and in a good sense. I will take my stand where, as a child, my parents placed me, until the clear truth be found out. But where shall it be sought, or when? Ambrose has no leisure; I have no leisure to read; where shall I find even the books? Whence, or when procure them? from whom borrow them? Let set times be appointed, and certain hours ordered for the health of my soul. Great hope has dawned; the Catholie Faith teaches not what I thought, and vainly accused it of; her instructed members hold it profane to believe God to be bounded by the figure of a human body: and shall I hesitate to ‘knock,’ that the rest ‘may be opened?’ The forenoons my scholars take up; what do I during the rest of the day? Why not examine this subject? But when shall I pay court to my

great friends, whose favor I need? When compose what I may sell to scholars? When refresh myself, unbending my mind from this intensesness of care?

19. Perish everything, dismiss these empty vanities, and betake myself to the one search for truth! Life is vain, death uncertain; if it steals upon me on a sudden, in what state shall I depart hence? and where shall I learn what here I have neglected? and shall I not rather suffer the punishment of this negligence? What, if death itself cut off and end all care and feeling? Then must this be ascertained. But God forbid this! It is no vain and empty thing, that the excellent dignity of the authority of the Christian Faith hath overspread the whole world. Never would such and so great things be by God wrought for us, if with the death of the body the life of the soul came to an end. Wherefore do I delay then to abandon worldly hopes, and give myself wholly to seek after God and the blessed life? But wait! Worldly things are pleasant; they have no small sweetness. I must not lightly abandon them, for it were a shame to return again to them. See, it is no difficult matter now to obtain some station, and then what more should I wish for? I have store of powerful friends; if nothing else offer, and I be in much haste, at least a presidentship¹ may be given me: and a wife with some money, that she increase not my charges: and this shall be the bound of my desire. Many great men and most worthy of imita-

¹ The government of a province.

tion, have given themselves to the study of wisdom in the state of marriage."

20. While I went over these things, and these winds shifted and drove my heart this way and that, time passed on, but I delayed to turn to the Lord; and from day to day deferred to live in Thee, and so died in myself. Loving a happy life, I feared to seek it in its own true abode, and sought it by fleeing from it. I thought I should be too miserable, unless folded in female arms; and of the medicine of Thy mercy to cure that infirmity I thought not, not having tried it. As for continency, I supposed it must be in our own power (though in myself I did not find that power), being so foolish as not to know what is written, *None can be continent unless Thou give it*;¹ and that Thou wouldest give it, if with inward groanings I did knock at Thine ears, and with a settled faith did cast my care on Thee.

XII. 21. Alypius indeed kept me from marrying; alleging, that in that case, we could not in undistracted leisure live together in the search after wisdom, as we had long desired. He himself was even then most chaste, so much so that it was wonderful; and all the more, since in the outset of his youth he had entered into that course, but had not stuck fast therein; rather had he felt remorse and revolting at it, living thenceforth until now most continently. But I opposed him with the examples of those who, as married men, had cherished wisdom, and served God acceptably, and retained their friends, and loved

¹ *Wisd. viii. 2. Vulg.*

them faithfully. Of whose greatness of spirit I came far short; and bound with the disease of the flesh, and its deadly sweetness, I drew along my chain, dreading to be loosed, and as if my wound had been fretted, put back his good persuasions, as it were the hand of one that would unchain me. Moreover, by me did the serpent speak unto Alypius himself, by my tongue weaving and laying in his path pleasurable snares, wherein his virtuous and free feet might be entangled.

22. For when he wondered that I, whom he esteemed not slightly, should stick so fast in the birdlime of that pleasure, as to protest (so oft as we discussed it) that I could never lead a single life; and urged in my defence, when I saw him wonder, that there was a great difference between his momentary and scarce-remembered knowledge of that life, which so he might easily despise, and my continued acquaintance with it, whereto if but the honorable name of marriage were added, he ought not to wonder why I could not contemn it; he began also to desire to be married,—not as overcome with desire of such pleasure, but out of curiosity. For he would fain know, he said, what that should be, without which my life, to him so pleasing, would to me seem not life but a punishment. For his mind, free from that chain, was amazed at my thraldom; and through that amazement was going on to a desire of trying it, thence to the trial itself, and thence perhaps to sink into that bondage whereat he wondered, seeing he was willing to *make a covenant with death*;¹ and,

¹ Is. xxviii. 15.

he that loves danger shall fall into it.¹ For whatever honor there be in the office of a well-ordered married life and a family, moved us but slightly. The habit of satisfying an insatiable appetite tormented me, while it held me captive; and an admiring wonder was leading him captive. Thus were we, until Thou, O Most High, not forsaking our dust, commiserating us miserable, didst come to our help, by wondrous and secret ways.

XIII. 23. Continual effort was made to have me married. I wooed, I was promised, chiefly through my mother's pains, that so once married, the health-giving baptism might cleanse me, towards which she rejoiced that I was becoming daily more disposed, and observed that her prayers, and Thy promises, were being fulfilled in my faith. At which time, verily, both at my request and her own longing, with strong cries of heart she daily begged of Thee, that Thou wouldest by a vision discover unto her something concerning my future marriage; but Thou never wouldest. She saw indeed certain vain and fantastic things, such as the energy of the human spirit, busied thereon, brought together; and these she told me of, not with that confidence she was wont, when Thou showest her anything, but slighting them. For she could, she said, through a certain feeling, which in words she could not express, discern betwixt Thy revelations, and the dreams of her own soul. Yet the matter was pressed on, and a maiden asked in marriage, two years under the fit age; but, as I liked her, I waited for her.

¹ Ecclus. iii. 27.

XIV. 24. And many of us friends conferring about, and detesting the turbulent turmoils of human life, had debated and now almost resolved on living apart from business and the bustle of men; and this was to be thus obtained; we were to bring whatever we might severally procure, and make one household of all; so that through the truth of our friendship nothing should belong especially to any; but the whole thus derived from all, should as a whole belong to each, and all to all. We thought there might be some ten persons in this society; some of us were very rich, especially Romanianus, our townsman, from childhood a very familiar friend of mine, whom the grievous perplexities of his affairs had brought up to court. He was the most earnest for this project; and his voice was of great weight, because his ample estate far exceeded any of the rest. We had settled, also, that two annual officers, as it were, should provide all things necessary, the rest being undisturbed. But when we began to consider whether the wives, which some of us already had, and others hoped to have, would allow this, all that plan, which was being so well moulded, fell to pieces in our hands, and was utterly dashed and cast aside. Thence we betook us to sighs, and groans, and to follow the *broad and beaten ways* of the world.¹ Many were the thoughts in our heart, *but Thy counsel standeth forever.*² Out of which counsel Thou didst deride ours, and preparedst Thine own; purposing to give us meat in due season, and

¹ Matt. vii. 13.² Ps. xxxiii. 11.

to open Thy hand, and to fill our souls with blessing.¹

XV. 25. Meanwhile my sins were multiplied, and my concubine being torn from my side as a hindrance to my marriage, my heart, which clave unto her, was torn and wounded and bleeding. And she returned to Africa, vowing unto Thee never to know any other man, leaving with me my son by her. But unhappy I, who could not imitate a very woman, impatient because not till after two years was I to obtain my wife, and not being so much a lover of marriage as a slave to lust, procured another concubine, that so, by the servitude of an enduring custom, the disease of my soul might be kept up and carried on in its vigor, or even augmented, into the dominion of marriage. Nor was my wound cured, which had been made by the previous incision, but after inflammation and most acute pain, it mortified, and then my pains became less acute, but more desperate.

XVI. 26. Praise be to Thee, glory to Thee, O Fountain of mercies. I was becoming more miserable, and Thou becoming nearer. Thy right hand was continually ready to pluck me out of the mire, and to wash me thoroughly, and I knew it not; nor did anything call me back from a yet deeper gulf of carnal pleasures, but the fear of death, and of Thy judgment to come; which, amid all my changes, never departed from my breast. And in my disputes with my friends, Alypius and Nebridius, concerning the nature of good and evil, I held that

¹ Ps. cxiv. 15, 16.

Epicurus would have, in my mind, won the palm, had I not believed that after death there remained a life for the soul, and places of requital according to men's deserts, which Epicurus would not believe. And I asked, "were we immortal, and to live in perpetual bodily pleasure, without fear of losing it, why should we not be happy, or what else should we seek?" not knowing that great misery was involved in this very thing, that, being thus sunk and blinded, I could not discern that light of excellence and beauty, to be embraced for its own sake, which the eye of flesh cannot see, and which is seen only by the inner man. Nor did I, unhappy, consider from what source it sprung, that even on these things, foul as they were, I with pleasure discoursed with my friends; nor could I, even according to the notions I then had of happiness, be happy without friends, amid what abundance soever of carnal pleasures. And yet these friends I loved for themselves only, and I felt that I was beloved of them again for myself only.

O crooked paths! Woe to the audacious soul, which hoped, by forsaking Thee, to gain some better thing! Tossed up and down, upon back, sides, and breast, it found only pain; for Thou alone art rest. And behold, Thou art at hand, and deliverest us from our wretched wanderings, and placest us in Thy way, and dost comfort us, and say, "Run; I will carry you; yea, I will bring you through; beyond also will I carry you."

THE SEVENTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE'S THIRTY-FIRST YEAR — HE IS GRADUALLY EXTRICATED FROM HIS ERRORS, BUT STILL WITH MATERIAL CONCEPTIONS OF GOD — AIDED BY AN ARGUMENT OF NEBRIDIUS — SEES THAT THE CAUSE OF SIN LIES IN FREE-WILL — REJECTS THE MANICHLEAN HERESY, BUT CANNOT ALTOGETHER EMBRACE THE DOCTRINE OF THE CHURCH — RECOVERED FROM THE BELIEF IN ASTROLOGY, BUT MISERABLY PERPLEXED ABOUT THE ORIGIN OF EVIL — IS LED TO FIND IN THE PLATONISTS THE SEEDS OF THE DOCTRINE OF THE DIVINITY OF THE WORD, BUT NOT OF HIS HUMILIATION — HENCE HE OBTAINS CLEARER NOTIONS OF GOD'S MAJESTY, BUT, NOT KNOWING CHRIST TO BE THE MEDIATOR, REMAINS ESTRANGED FROM HIM — ALL HIS DOUBTS REMOVED BY THE HOLY SCRIPTURE, ESPECIALLY ST. PAUL.

I. 1. My evil and abominable youth was now ended, and I was passing into early manhood; the more defiled by vain things as I grew in years, for I could not imagine any substance but such as is wont to be seen with these eyes. I did not think of Thee, O God, under the figure of an human body; since I began to hear aught of wisdom, I always avoided this; and rejoiced to have found the same in the faith of our spiritual mother, Thy Catholic Church. But what else to conceive Thee I knew not. And I, a man, and such a man, sought to conceive of Thee the sovereign, only, true God; and I did in my inmost soul believe that Thou art incorruptible, and uninjurable, and unchangeable; because, though not knowing whence or how, yet I saw plainly and was

sure that the corruptible must be inferior to the incorruptible; what could not be injured, I preferred unhesitatingly to what could receive injury; the unchangeable, to things subject to change. My heart passionately cried out against all phantoms, and with one blow I sought to beat away from the eye of my mind all that unclean troop which buzzed around it. And lo! being scarcely driven off, in the twinkling of an eye they gathered again thick about me, flew against my face, and beclouded it; so that, though not under the form of the human body, yet was I constrained to conceive of Thee (that incorruptible, uninjurable, and unchangeable, which I preferred before the corruptible, and injurable, and changeable) as being in space, either infused into the world, or diffused infinitely without it. Because, whatsoever I conceived deprived of this space seemed to me nothing, yea, altogether nothing; not even a void, as if a body were taken out of its place, and the place should remain empty of any body at all, of earth and water, air and heaven, yet would it remain a void place, as it were a spacious nothing.

2. I then being thus gross-hearted, nor clear even to myself, whatsoever was not extended over certain spaces, nor diffused, nor condensed, nor swelled out, or did not or could not receive some of these dimensions, I thought to be altogether nothing. For over such forms as my eyes are wont to range, did my heart then range: nor yet did I see that this same notion of the mind, whereby I formed those very images, was not of this sensuous sort, and yet the

mind could not have formed them, had not itself been some great thing. So also did I endeavor to conceive of Thee, Life of my life, as vast, through infinite spaces on every side penetrating the whole mass of the universe, and beyond it, every way, through unmeasurable boundless spaces; so that the earth should have Thee, the heaven have Thee, all things have Thee, and they be bounded in Thee, and Thou bounded nowhere. For as the body of this air which is above the earth hindereth not the light of the sun from passing through it, penetrating it, not by bursting or by cutting, but by filling it wholly: so I thought the body not of heaven, air, and sea only, but of the earth too, pervious to Thee, so that in all its parts, the greatest as the smallest, it should admit Thy presence, by a secret inspiration, within and without, directing all things which Thou hast created. So I guessed, only as unable to conceive aught else, for it was false. For in that case, a greater part of the earth would contain a greater portion of Thee, and a less, a lesser: and all things would be full of Thee, in such manner that the body of an elephant would contain more of Thee than that of a sparrow, since it is larger, and takes up more room; and thus Thou wouldest make the several portions of Thyself present unto the several portions of the world, in fragments, large to the large, little to the little. But such art not Thou, who hadst not as yet enlightened my darkness.

II. 3. It was enough for me, Lord, to oppose to those deceived deceivers, and dumb praters, what

Nebridius used to propound, while we were yet at Carthage, at which all we that heard it were staggered : " That kingdom of darkness, which the Manichees are wont to set as an opposing mass, over against God, what could it have done unto God, had He refused to fight with it ? For, if they answer, ' it would have done God some hurt,' then would God be subject to injury and corruption : but if they answer ' it could do God no hurt,' then there was no reason why God should fight with it ; and fighting, too, in such wise, as that a certain portion or member of God, or offspring of His very Substance, should be mingled with opposed powers and natures not created by God, and be by them so far corrupted and changed to the worse, as to be turned from happiness into misery, and need assistance, whereby it might be extricated and purified ; and that this offspring of God's Substance was the soul, which being enthralled, defiled, corrupted, the Divine Word, free, pure, and whole, might relieve ; that Word Itself being also corruptible, because It was of one and the same Substance.¹ So then, should they affirm God, whatsoever He is (that is, the Substance whereby He is), to be incorruptible, then were all these sayings false and execrable ; but if corruptible, the very statement showed it to be false and revolting." This argument, then, of Nebridius sufficed against those, who deserved wholly to be vom-

¹ Compare the account of the Manichæan cosmogony, together with that of the Basilidean and Valentinian Gnosticism, in Guericke's Church History, §§ 46, 47, 54. — ED.

ited out of the overcharged stomach ; for they had no escape from horrible blasphemy of heart and tongue, thus thinking and speaking of Thee.

III. 4. But although I held, and was firmly persuaded, that Thou our Lord the true God, who madest not only our souls, but our bodies, and not only our souls and bodies, but all beings, and all things, art undefilable and unalterable, and in no degree mutable, yet I understood not, clearly and without difficulty, the cause of evil. And yet, whatever it were, I perceived it was in such wise to be sought out, as should not constrain me to believe the immutable God to be mutable, lest I should become the evil I was seeking to understand. I sought it out, then, thus far free from anxiety, certain of the untruth of what the Manichees held, from whom I shrunk with my whole heart ; for I saw that, through inquiring the origin of evil, they were filled with evil, in that they preferred to think that Thy substance did suffer ill than that their own did commit it.

5. And I strained to perceive what I now heard, that freewill was the cause of our *doing* ill, and Thy just judgment of our *suffering* ill. But I was not able clearly to discern it. So, then, endeavoring to draw my soul's vision out of that deep pit, I was again plunged therein, and endeavoring often, I was plunged back as often. But this raised me a little into Thy light, so that I knew as well that I had a will, as that I lived : when then I did will or nill anything, I was most sure that no other than myself did will and nill : and I all but saw that there was

the cause of my sin. But what I did against my will, I saw that I suffered rather than did, and I judged not to be my fault, but my punishment; whereby, however, holding Thee to be just, I speedily confessed myself to be not unjustly punished. But again I said, Who made me? Did not my God, who is not only good, but goodness itself? Whence then came I to will evil and nill good, so that I am thus justly punished? who set this in me, and in-grafted into me this plant of bitterness, seeing I was wholly formed by my most sweet God? If the devil were the author, whence is that same devil? And if he also by his own perverse will, of a good angel became a devil, whence, again, came in him that evil will whereby he became a devil,¹ seeing the whole nature of angels was made by that most good Creator? By these thoughts I was again sunk down and choked; yet not brought down to that hell of error (where no man confesseth unto Thee), to think rather that Thou dost suffer ill, than that man doth it.²

IV. 6. For I was striving to find out the rest, having already found that the incorruptible must needs be better than the corruptible: and whatsoever Thou wert, I confessed Thee to be incorruptible. For never soul was, nor shall be, able to conceive anything which may be better than Thou, who art the sovereign and the best good. But since, most truly and certainly, the incorruptible is

¹ The question: What is the efficient cause of an evil will? Augustine, at a later day, affirmed to be inadmissible, because it involves a self-contradiction. See *De Civitate Dei*, XII. 7.—ED.

² Ps. vi. 5.

preferable to the corruptible (as I did now prefer it), then if Thou wert not incorruptible, I could in thought have arrived at something better than my God. Where then I saw the incorruptible to be preferable to the corruptible, there ought I to seek for Thee, and there observe “wherein evil itself was;” that is, whence corruption comes, by which Thy substance can by no means be impaired. For corruption does no ways impair our God; by no will, by no necessity, by no unlooked-for chance: because He is God, and what he wills is good, and Himself is that good; but to be corrupted is not good. Nor art Thou against Thy will constrained to do anything, since Thy will is not greater than Thy power. But greater should it be, were Thyself greater than Thyself. For the will and power of God, is God Himself. And what can be unlooked-for by Thee, who knowest all things? Nor is there any nature in things, but Thou knowest it. And what more reason should we give, “why that substance which God is should not be corruptible,” seeing if it were so, it should not be God?

V. 7. And I sought, “whence is evil,” and sought in an evil way; and saw not the evil in my very search. I set now before the sight of my spirit the whole creation, whatsoever we can see therein (as sea, earth, air, stars, trees, mortal creatures), yea, and whatever in it we do not see, as the firmament of heaven, all angels moreover, and all the spiritual inhabitants thereof. But these very beings, as though they were bodies, did my fancy dispose each in its

own place, and I made one great mass of Thy creation, distinguished as to the kinds of bodies ; some, real bodies; some, what myself had feigned for spirits. And this mass I made huge, not as it was (which I could not know), but as I thought fitting, yet every way finite. But Thee, O Lord, I imagined on every part environing and penetrating it, though every way infinite : as if there were a sea, everywhere, and on every side, through unmeasured space, one only boundless sea, and it contained within it a sponge, huge, but bounded ; that sponge must needs, in all its parts, be filled from that unmeasurable sea : so conceived I Thy creation, itself finite, full of Thee, the Infinite ; and I said, Behold God, and behold what God hath created ; and God is good, yea, most mightily and incomparably better than all these : but yet He, the Good, created them good : and see how He environs and full-fills them. Where is evil, then ? and whence, and how crept it in hither ? What is its root, and what its seed ? Or, hath it no being ? Why then fear we and avoid what is not ? Or, if we fear it idly, then is that very fear evil, whereby the soul is thus idly goaded and racked. Yea, and so much a greater evil, as we have nothing to fear, and yet do fear. Therefore either that evil which we fear actually exists, or else our fear is evil. Whence is evil, then ? seeing God, the Good, hath created all these things good. He indeed, the greater and chiefest Good, hath created these lesser goods ; still both Creator and created, all are good. Whence, then, is evil ? Was there some evil matter out of which He made,

and formed, and ordered these lesser goods, yet left something in this matter which He did not convert into good? Why so, then? Had He no might to turn and change the whole, so that no evil should remain in it, seeing He is All-mighty? Lastly, why would He make anything at all of it, and not rather by the same Allmightiness cause it not to be at all? Or, could it then be, against His will? Or, if it were from eternity, why suffered He it so to be for infinite spaces of times past, and was pleased so long after to make something out of it? Or, if He were suddenly pleased now to effect somewhat, this rather should the Almighty have effected, that this evil matter should not be, and He alone be, the whole, true, sovereign and infinite Good. Or, if it was not good that He, who is good, should not also frame and create something that were good, then, that evil matter being taken away and brought to nothing, He might form good matter, whereof to create all things. For He would not be Almighty, if He might not create something good without the aid of that matter which Himself had not created. These thoughts I revolved in my miserable heart, overcharged with the most gnawing anxiety lest I should die ere I had found the truth; yet was the faith of Thy Christ our Lord and Saviour, professed in the Church Catholic, firmly fixed in my heart, in many points, although yet unformed, and fluctuating from the rule of doctrine; yet my mind did not utterly leave it, but rather daily took in more and more of it.

VI. 8. By this time, also, had I rejected the lying divinations and impious dotages of the astrologers. Let Thine own mercies, out of my very inmost soul, confess unto Thee for this also, O my God. For Thou, Thou altogether (for who else calls us back from the death of all errors, save the Life which cannot die, and the Wisdom which, needing no light, enlightens the minds that need it, whereby the universe is directed, down to the whirling leaves of trees?) Thou madest provision for my obstinacy wherewith I struggled against Vindicianus,¹ an acute old man, and Nebridius, a young man of admirable talents; the first vehemently affirming, and the latter often (though with some doubtfulness) saying, "That there was no such art whereby to foresee things to come, but that men's conjectures were a sort of lottery, and that out of many things, which they said should come to pass, some actually did, unawares to them who spake it, who stumbled upon it, through their oft speaking." Thou providest then a friend for me, who was no negligent consulter of the astrologers; nor yet was he well skilled in those astrological arts, but (as I said) a curious consulter with astrologers and yet knowing something, which he said he had heard from his father, which how far it went to overthrow the estimation of that art, he knew not. This man then, Firminus by name, of liberal education, and well taught, in Rhetoric, consulted me, as one very dear to him, to know what, according to his so-called constellations, I thought in

¹ See B. IV. c. iii.

regard to certain affairs of his, wherein his worldly hopes had risen ; and I, who had now begun to incline towards Nebridius's opinion, did not altogether refuse to conjecture, and tell him what came into my unresolved mind ; but added, that I was now almost persuaded, that these were but empty and ridiculous follies. Thereupon he told me that his father had been very curious in such books, and had a friend as earnest in them as himself, who with joint study and conference fanned the flame of their affections to these toys, so that they would observe the moments whereat the very dumb animals which bred about their houses gave birth, and then observed the relative position of the heavens, thereby to make fresh experiments in this so-called art. He said then that he had heard from his father, that when his mother was about to give birth to him, Firminus, a woman-servant of that friend of his father's was also with child, a fact which could not escape her master, who took care with most exact diligence to know the births of his very puppies. And it so happened, that while the one for his wife, and the other for his servant, with the most careful observation, was reckoning days, hours, nay, the lesser divisions of the hours, both women were delivered at the same instant ; so that both were constrained to allow the same constellations, even to the minutest points, the one for his son, the other for his new-born slave. For so soon as the women began to be in labor, each gave notice to the other what was fallen out in their houses, and had messengers ready to send to one

another, so soon as they had notice of the actual birth,—of which they had easily provided, each in his own case, to receive instant intelligence. And the messengers of the respective parties met, he averred, at such an equal distance from either house, that neither of them could make out any difference in the position of the stars, or any other minutest points; and yet Firminus, born in a high estate in his parents' house, ran his course through the gilded paths of life, was increased in riches, raised to honors; whereas that slave continued to serve his masters, without any relaxation of his yoke, as Firminus, who knew him, told me.

9. Upon hearing and believing these things, told by one of such credibility, all my resistance gave way; and first I endeavored to reclaim Firminus himself from his hankering after astrology, by telling him that upon inspecting his constellations, I ought, if I were to predict truly, to have seen in them parents eminent among their neighbors, a noble family in its own city, high birth, good education, liberal learning. But if that servant had consulted me upon the same constellations, since they were his also, I ought again (if I would tell him, too, truly) to see in them a lineage the most abject, a slavish condition, and everything else, utterly at variance with the former. Whence, then, if I spake the truth, I should, from the same constellations, speak diversely, or if I spake the same, speak falsely: thence it followed most certainly, that whatever, upon consideration of the constellations, was spoken

truly, was spoken not out of art, but chance; and whatever spoken falsely, was not out of ignorance in the art, but the failure of the chance.

10. An opening thus made, ruminating with myself on the like things, that no one of those dotards (who lived by such a trade, and whom I longed to attack, and with derision to confute) might urge against me, that Firminus had informed me falsely, or his father him; I bent my thoughts on those that are born twins, who for the most part come out of the womb so near one to other, that the small interval (how much force soever in the nature of things folk may pretend it to have) cannot be noted by human observation, or be at all expressed in those figures which the Astrologer is to inspect, that he may pronounce truly. Yet they cannot be true: for looking into the same figures, he must have predicted the same of Esau and Jacob, whereas the same happened not to them. Therefore he must speak falsely; or if truly, then, looking into the same figures, he must not give the same answer. Not by art, then, but by chance would he speak truly. For Thou, O Lord, most righteous Ruler of the Universe, while consulters and consulted know it not, dost by Thy hidden inspiration effect that the consulter should hear what according to the hidden deservings of souls, he ought to hear, out of the abyss of Thy just judgment; to Whom let no man say, What is this? Why that? Let him not so say, for he is man.

VII. 11. Now then, O my Helper, hadst Thou

loosed me from those fetters : and I sought “ whence is evil,” and found no way. But Thou sufferedst me not by any fluctuations of thought to be carried away from the Faith whereby I believed Thee both to be, and Thy substance to be unchangeable, and that Thou hast a care of, and wouldest judge men, and that in Christ, Thy Son, our Lord, and the holy Scriptures, which the authority of Thy Catholic Church pressed upon me, Thou hadst set the way of man’s salvation, to that life which is to be after this death. These things being safe and immovably settled in my mind, I sought anxiously “ whence was evil ? ” What were the pangs of my teeming heart, what groans, O my God ! yet even there were Thine ears open, and I knew it not : and when in silence I vehemently sought, those silent contritions of my soul were strong cries unto Thy mercy. Thou knewest what I suffered, but no man knew. For how insignificant was that which was through my tongue distilled into the ears of my most familiar friends ? Could the whole tumult of my soul, for which neither time nor utterance sufficed, reach them ? Yet went up the whole to Thy hearing, all which I roared out from the groanings of my heart ; and my desire was before Thee, but the light of mine eyes was not with me ;¹ for that was within, I without : nor was that confined to space, but I was intent on things contained in space, and in space I found no resting-place ; nor did these visible things so receive me, that I could say “ It is enough,” “ it is

¹ Ps. xxxvii. 9—11. Vulg.

well:" nor did they yet suffer me to turn back, where it might be well enough with me. For to these things was I superior, but inferior to Thee; and Thou art my true joy only when I am subjected to Thee, and Thou subjectest to me only what Thou hast created below me. And this was the true temperament, and middle region of my safety, to remain in Thy image, and by serving Thee, rule the body. But when I rose proudly against Thee, and *ran against the Lord with my neck, with the thick bosses of my buckler*,¹ even these inferior things were set above me, and pressed me down, and no where was there respite or space of breathing. They met my sight on all sides by heaps and troops, and in thought the images thereof presented themselves unsought, as I would return to Thee, as if they would say unto me, "Whither goest thou, unworthy and defiled?" And these things had grown out of my wound; for Thou "humblest the proud like one that is wounded,"² and through my own swelling was I separated from Thee; yea, my pride-swollen face closed up mine eyes.

VIII. 12. But Thou, Lord, *abidest for ever*, yet *not for ever art Thou angry with us*;³ because Thou pitiest our dust and ashes, and it was pleasing in Thy sight to reform my deformities; and by inward goads didst Thou rouse me, that I should be ill at ease, until Thou wert manifested to my inward sight. Thus, by the secret hand of thy medicining was my swelling abated, and the trou-

¹ Job xv. 26.

² Ps. lxxxviii. 11. Vulg.

³ Ps. cii. 13.

bled and bedimmed eye-sight of my mind, by the smarting anointings of healthful sorrows, was from day to day healed.

IX. 13. And Thou, willing first to shew me how Thou *resistest the proud, but givest grace unto the humble*,¹ and by how great an act of Thy mercy Thou hast traced out to men the way of humility, in that Thy WORD was made flesh, and dwelt among men:—Thou procuredst for me, by means of one puffed up with most unnatural pride, certain books of the Platonists, translated from Greek into Latin. And therein I read, not indeed in the very words, but to the very same purpose, enforced by many and divers reasons, that *In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God: the Same was in the beginning with God: all things were made by Him, and without Him was nothing made: that which was made by Him is life, and the life was the light of men, and the light shineth in the darkness, and the darkness comprehended it not.*² And that the soul of man, though it bears witness to the light, yet itself is not that light; but the Word of God, being God, is that true light that lighteth every man that cometh into the world.³ And that *He was in the world, and the world was made by Him, and the world knew him not.*⁴ But, that *He came unto His own, and His own received Him not;*⁵ but as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of

¹ James iv. 6. 1 Pet. v. 5.

³ John i. 9.

⁵ John i. 11.

² John i. 1—5.

⁴ John i. 10.

God, as many as believed in his name ;¹ this I read not there.

14. Again I read there, that *God the Word was born not of flesh nor of blood, nor of the will of man, nor of the will of the flesh, but of God.²* But that *the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us,³* I read not there. For I traced in those Platonic books, that it was many and divers ways said that *the Son was in the form of the Father, and thought it not robbery to be equal with God,* for that naturally He was the Same Substance. But that *He emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men, and found in fashion as a man, humbled Himself, and became obedient unto death, and that the death of the cross : wherefore God exalted Him from the dead, and gave Him a name above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth ; and that every tongue should confess that the Lord Jesus Christ is in the glory of God the Father ;⁴* those Platonic books have not. For that before all times and above all times Thy Only-Begotten Son remaineth unchangeably, coëternal with Thee, and that *of His fulness souls receive,⁵* that they may be blessed ; and that by participation of wisdom abiding in them, they are renewed, so as to be wise, is there. But that *in due time he died for the ungodly ;⁶* and that *Thou sparedst not Thine Only Son, but deliveredest*

¹ John i. 12.

² John i. 13.

³ John i. 14.

⁴ Phil. ii. 6—11.

⁵ John i. 16.

⁶ Rom. v. 6.

*Him for us all,¹ is not there. For Thou hiddest these things from the wise, and revealedst them to babes; that they that labor and are heavy laden, might come unto Him, and He refresh them, because He is meek and lowly in heart;² and the meek He directeth in judgment, and the gentle He teacheth His ways,³ beholding our lowliness and trouble, and forgiving all our sins.⁴ But such as are lifted up by the buskin of some would-be sublimer learning, hear not Him, saying, *Learn of Me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, and ye shall find rest to your souls.*⁵ Although they know God, yet they glorify Him not as God, nor are thankful, but wax vain in their thoughts; and their foolish heart is darkened; professing that they are wise, they become fools.⁶*

15. And therefore did I read there also, that they had changed the glory of Thy incorruptible nature into idols and divers shapes, into the likeness of the image of corruptible man, and birds and beasts, and creeping things;⁷ hankering after that Egyptian food,⁸ for which Esau lost his birth-right,⁹ since Thy first-born people worshipped the head of a four-footed beast instead of Thee,¹⁰ turning back in heart towards Egypt, and bowing Thy image, their own soul, before the image of a calf that eateth hay.¹¹ These things found I here, but I fed not on them. For it pleased Thee, O Lord, to take away the re-

¹ Rom. viii. 32.

⁵ Matt. xi. 29.

⁹ Gen. xxv. 33, 34.

² Matt. xi. 25, 28, 29.

⁶ Rom. i. 21, 22.

¹⁰ Ex. xxxii. 1—6.

³ Ps. xxv. 9.

⁷ Rom. i. 23.

¹¹ Ps. cxi. 20.

⁴ Ps. xxv. 18. ⁸ The lentil; compare Augustine Enarratio in Ps. xlvi.

proach of diminution from Jacob, *that the elder should serve the younger*:¹ and Thou callest the Gentiles into Thine inheritance. And I had come to Thee from among the Gentiles; and I set my mind upon the gold which Thou willest Thy people to take from Egypt, seeing Thine it was, wheresoever it were.² And to the Athenians Thou saidst by Thy Apostle, *that in Thee we live, move, and have our being, as one of their own poets had said*.³ And verily these Platonic books came from thence. But I set not my mind on the idols of Egypt, *whom they served with Thy gold*,⁴ *who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator*.⁵

X. 16. And being thence admonished to return to myself, I entered even into my inward self, Thou being my Guide: and I was able to do so because Thou wert become my Helper. And I entered and beheld with the eye of my soul, (such as it was,) even above my soul, above my mind,— the Light Unchangeable. Not this ordinary light, which all flesh may look upon, nor as it were a greater of the same kind, as though the brightness of this should be manifold brighter, and with its greatness take up all space. Not such was this light, but different, far different from all these. Nor was it above my soul, as oil is above water, nor yet as heaven above earth: but above my soul, because It made me; and I below It, because I was made by It. He that knows

¹ Rom. ix. 13.

³ Acts xvii. 28.

⁵ Rom. i. 25.

² Exod. iii. 22. xi. 2.

⁴ Hos. ii. 8.

the Truth, knows what that Light is; and he that knows It, knows eternity. Love knoweth it. O Truth Who art Eternity! and Love Who art Truth! and Eternity Who art Love! Thou art my God, to Thee do I sigh night and day. When I first knew Thee, Thou liftedst me up, that I might see there was somewhat for me to see, and that I was not yet able to see. And Thou didst beat back the weakness of my sight, streaming forth Thy beams of light upon me most strongly, and I trembled with love and awe: and I perceived myself to be far off from Thee, in the region of unlikeness, as if I heard this Thy voice from on high: "I am the food of grown men; grow, and thou shalt feed upon Me; nor shalt thou convert Me, like the food of thy flesh, into thee, but thou shalt be converted into Me." And I learned, that *Thou for iniquity chastenest man, and Thou madest my soul to consume away like a spider.*¹ And I said, "Is Truth therefore nothing because it is not diffused through space finite or infinite?" And Thou criedst to me from afar; "Yea, verily, *I AM that I AM.*"² And I heard, as the heart heareth, nor had I room to doubt, and I should sooner doubt that I live, than that Truth is not, *which is clearly seen, being understood by those things which are made.*³

XI. 17. And I beheld the other things below Thee, and I perceived that they neither altogether are, nor altogether are not; for they are, since they are from Thee, but are not, because they are not

¹ Ps. xxxix. 11.² Exod. iii. 14.³ Rom. i. 20.

what Thou art. For that truly is which remains unchangeably. *It is good then for me to hold fast unto God;*¹ for if I remain not in Him, I cannot in myself; but *He remaining in Himself, reneweth all things.*² *And Thou art the Lord my God, since Thou standest not in need of my goodness.*³

XII. 18. And it was manifested unto me, that those things are good which yet are corruptible; which if they were sovereignly good, or if they were not at all good, could not be corrupted: for if sovereignly good, they were incorruptible; if not good at all, there were nothing in them to be corrupted. For corruption injures, but unless it diminished goodness, it could not injure. Either then corruption injures not, which cannot be; or, which is most certain, all which is corrupted is deprived of good. But if they be deprived of all good, they shall cease to be. For if they shall be, and can now no longer be corrupted, they shall be better than before, because they shall abide incorruptibly. And what more monstrous, than to affirm things to become better by losing all their good? Therefore if they shall be deprived of all good, they shall no longer be. So long therefore as they are, they are good: therefore whatsoever substantially is, is good. That evil then which I sought to know whence it is, is not any substance: for were it a substance, it should be good. For either it should be an incorruptible substance, and so a chief good, or a corruptible substance; which unless it were good, could not be cor-

¹ Ps. lxxiii. 28.

² Wisd. vii. 27.

³ Ps. xvi. 1.

rupted. I perceived therefore, and it was manifested to me, that Thou madest all things good, nor is there any substance at all, which Thou madest not; and because Thou madest not all things equal, therefore is there a diversity of things; for each is good, and all together are very good, because our God made all things very good.¹

XIII. 19. And to Thee is nothing whatsoever evil: yea, not only to Thee, but also to Thy creation as a whole, because there is nothing without, which may break in and corrupt that order which Thou hast appointed. But in the parts thereof, some things, because unharmonizing with other some, are accounted evil: whereas those very things harmonize with others, and are good; and in themselves are good. And all these things which harmonize not together, do yet harmonize with the inferior part, which we call Earth, which has its own cloudy and windy sky harmonizing with it. Far be it then that I should say, "These things should not be:" for should I see nought but these, I should long for the better; but still I must even for these alone praise Thee; for that Thou art to be praised do shew from the earth, *dragons, and all deeps, fire, hail, snow, ice, and stormy wind, which fulfil Thy word.* *Mountains, and all hills, fruitful trees, and all cedars, beasts, and all cattle, creeping things, and flying fowls, kings of the earth, and all people, princes and all judges of the earth, young men and maidens, old men and young, praise Thy Name.*

¹ Gen. i. 31; Eccli. xxxix.

But when from heaven Thy works praise Thee, our God, *all Thy angels in the heights, all Thy hosts, sun and moon, all the stars and light, the Heaven of heavens, and the waters that be above the heavens, praise Thy Name!*¹ I did not now long for things better, because I thought of all: and with a sounder judgment I apprehended that the things above were better than these below, yet that all together were better than those above by themselves.

XIV. 20. There is no soundness in them, whom aught of Thy creation displeaseth: as neither in me, when much which Thou hast made displeased me. And because my soul durst not be displeased at my God, it would fain not account that to be Thine, which displeased it. Hence it had gone into the opinion of two substances, and had no rest, but talked idly. And returning thence, it had made to itself a God through infinite measures of all space; and thought it to be Thee, and placed it in its heart; and had again become the temple of its own idol, to Thee abominable. But after Thou hadst soothed my head, unknown to me, and closed *mine eyes that they should not behold vanity*,² I ceased somewhat of my former self, and my frenzy was lulled to sleep; and I awoke in Thee, and saw Thee infinite, but in another way, and this sight was not derived from the flesh.

XV. 21. And I looked back on other things; and I saw that they owed their being to Thee; and were all bounded in Thee: but in a different way,

¹ Ps. cxlviii. 1—12.

² Ps. cxix. 37.

not as being in space, but because Thou containest all things in Thine hand, in Thy Truth; and all things are true so far as they be; nor is there any falsehood, unless when that is thought to be, which is not. And I saw that all things did harmonize, not with their places only, but with their seasons. And thou, who only art Eternal, didst not begin to work after innumerable spaces of times spent; for that all spaces of times, both which have passed, and which shall pass, neither go nor come but through Thee working and abiding.

XVI. 22. And I perceived and found it nothing strange, that bread which is pleasant to a healthy palate, is loathsome to one distempered: and to sore eyes light is offensive, which to the sound eye is delightful. And Thy righteousness displeaseth the wicked; much more the viper and reptiles, which Thou hast created good, fitting in with the inferior portions of Thy Creation, with which the very wicked also fit in; and that the more, by how much they be unlike Thee; but with the superior creatures, by how much they become more like to Thee. And I enquired what iniquity was, and found it to be no substance, but the perversion of the will, turned aside from Thee, O God, the Supreme, towards these lower things, and *casting out its bowels*, and puffed up outwardly.

XVII. 23. And I wondered that I now loved Thee, and no phantasm for Thee. And yet did I not press on to enjoy my God; but was borne up to Thee by Thy beauty, and soon borne down from

Thee by mine own weight, sinking with sorrow into inferior things. This weight was carnal custom. Yet dwelt there with me a remembrance of Thee; nor did I any way doubt, that there was One to whom I might cleave, but that I was not yet such as to cleave to Thee: because *the body which is corrupted, preseth down the soul, and the earthly tabernacle weigheth down the mind that museth upon many things.*¹ And most certain I was, that *Thy invisible works from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even Thy eternal power and Godhead.*² For examining whence it was that I admired the beauty of bodies celestial or terrestrial; and what aided me in judging soundly on things mutable, and pronouncing, "This ought to be thus, this not;" examining, I say, whence it was that I so judged, seeing I did so judge, I had found the unchangeable and true Eternity of Truth, above my changeable mind. And thus by degrees, I passed from bodies to the soul which through the bodily senses perceives; and thence to its inward faculty, to which the bodily senses represent things external, whitherto reaches the faculties of beasts; and thence again to the reasoning faculty, to which what is received from the senses of the body is referred to be judged. Which finding itself also to be in me a thing variable, raised itself up to its own understanding, and drew away my thoughts from the power of habit, withdrawing itself from those troops of contradic-

¹ Wisd. ix. 15.

² Rom. i. 20.

tory phantasms; that so it might find what that light was, whereby it was bedewed, when, without all doubting, it cried out, "That the unchangeable was to be preferred to the changeable;" whence also it knew That Unchangeable, which, unless it had in some way known, it had had no sure ground to prefer it to the changeable. And thus with the flash of one trembling glance it arrived at THAT WHICH IS. And then I saw Thy *invisible things understood by the things which are made.*¹ But I could not fix my gaze thereon; and my infirmity being struck back, I was thrown again on my wonted habits, carrying along with me only a loving memory thereof, and a longing for what I had, as it were, perceived the odor of, but was not yet able to feed on.

XVIII. 24. Then I sought a way of obtaining strength, sufficient to enjoy Thee; and found it not, until I embraced *that Mediator betwixt God and men, the Man Christ Jesus,*² *who is over all, God blessed for evermore,*³ calling unto me, and saying, *I am the way, the truth, and the life,*⁴ and mingling that food which I was unable to receive, with our flesh. *For, the Word was made flesh,*⁵ that Thy Wisdom, whereby Thou createdst all things, might provide milk for our infant state. For not being humbled, I did not understand the humiliation of my Lord Jesus Christ; nor knew I yet whereto His infirmity would guide us. For Thy Word, the Eter-

¹ Rom. i. 20.

³ Rom. ix. 5.

⁵ Ib. i. 14.

² 1 Tim. ii. 5.

⁴ John xiv. 6.

nal Truth, being far above Thy highest creatures, raises up the subdued unto Itself: but in this lower world It built for Itself a lowly habitation of our clay, whereby to abase from themselves such as would be subdued, and bring them over to Itself; allaying their swelling pride, and fomenting their love; that they might go on no further in self-confidence, but rather consent to become weak, on seeing at their feet the Divinity infirm by having taken on our *coats of skin*;¹ and wearied, might cast themselves down upon It, and It rising, might lift them up.

XIX. 25. But I thought otherwise; conceiving only of my Lord Christ as of a man of excellent wisdom, whom no one could be equalled unto; especially, for that being wonderfully born of a Virgin, He seemed, in conformity therewith, through the Divine care for us, to have attained that great eminence of authority, for an ensample of despising things temporal for the obtaining of immortality. But what mystery there lay in, "*The Word was made flesh*," I could not even imagine. Only I had learnt out of what is delivered to us in Scripture of Him, that He did eat, and drink, sleep, walk, rejoiced in spirit, was sorrowful, discoursed; that, flesh did not cleave by itself unto Thy Word, but with the human soul and mind. All know this, who know the unchangeableness of Thy Word, which I now knew, as far as I could, nor did I at all doubt thereof. For, now to move the limbs of the body by will, now not, now to be moved by some af-

¹ Gen. iii. 21.

fection, now not, now to deliver wise sayings through human signs, now to keep silence, belong to soul and mind subject to variation. And should these things prove to be falsely written of Him, all the rest of Scripture also would be put in jeopardy, nor would there remain in those books any saving faith for mankind. Since then they were written truly, I acknowledged a perfect man to be in Christ; not the body of a man only, nor, with the body, a sensitive soul without a rational, but very man; whom, not only as being a form of Truth, but for a certain great excellency of human nature and more perfect participation of wisdom, I judged to be preferred before others. But Alypius imagined the Catholics to believe God to be so clothed with flesh, that besides God and flesh, there was no soul at all in Christ, and did not think that a human mind was ascribed to Him. And because he was well persuaded, that the actions recorded of Him, could only be performed by a vital and a rational creature, he moved the more slowly towards the Christian Faith. But understanding afterwards, that this was the error of the Apollinarian heretics, he joyed in and was conformed to the Catholic Faith. But somewhat later, I confess, did I learn, how in that saying, *The Word was made flesh*, the Catholic truth is distinguished from the falsehood of Photinus.¹ For the rejection of heretics makes the tenets of Thy Church, and sound doctrines, to stand out more clearly. *For there must also be heresies,*

¹ Guericke's Church History, § 84.

that the approved may be made manifest among the weak.¹

XX. 26. But having then read those books of the Platonists, and thence been taught to search for incorporeal truth, I saw Thy *invisible things, understood by those things which are made*;² and though cast back, I perceived what that was, which, through the darkness of my mind, I was hindered from contemplating, being assured “that Thou art, and art infinite, and yet not diffused in space, finite or infinite; and that Thou truly art who art the same ever, in no part nor motion varying; and that all other things are from Thee, on this most sure ground alone, that they are.” Of these things I was assured, yet too unsure to enjoy Thee. I prated as one well skilled; but had I not sought Thy way in Christ our Saviour, I had proved to be, not skilled, but killed. For now I had begun to wish to seem wise, being filled with mine own punishment, yet I did not mourn, but rather scorn, puffed up with knowledge.³ For where was that charity building upon the *foundation of humility, which is Christ Jesus?*⁴ or when should these Platonic books teach me it? Upon these, I believe, Thou therefore willest that I should fall, before I studied Thy Scriptures, that it might be imprinted on my memory how I was affected by them; and that afterwards, when my spirits were tamed through Thy books, and my wounds touched by Thy healing fingers, I might

¹ 1 Cor. xi. 19.

² Rom. i. 20.

³ 1 Cor. viii. 1.

⁴ 1 Cor. iii. 11.

discern and distinguish between presumption and confession ; between those who saw whither they were to go, yet saw not the way,— a way that leadeth not merely to behold the beatific country, but to dwell in it. For, had I first been formed in Thy Holy Scriptures, and hadst Thou in the familiar use of them grown sweet unto me, and had I then fallen upon those other volumes, they might perhaps have withdrawn me from the solid ground of piety ; or, had I continued in that healthful frame which I had thence imbibed, I might have thought that it might have been obtained by the study of the Platonic books alone.

XXI. 27. Most eagerly, then, did I seize that venerable writing of Thy Spirit, and chiefly the Apostle Paul ; whereupon those difficulties vanished away wherein he once seemed to me to contradict himself, and the text of his discourse not to agree with the testimonies of the Law and the Prophets. And the face of that pure word appeared to me one and the same ; and I learned to *rejoice with trembling*.¹ So I began ; and whatsoever truth I had read in those other books, I found here amid the praises of Thy grace ; that whoso sees, may not *so glory as if he had not received*,² not only what he sees, but also that he sees (*for what hath he, which he hath not received?*), and that he may be not only admonished to behold Thee, *Who art ever the same*, but also, being healed, to hold Thee ; and that *he who cannot see afar off*, may yet walk on the way,

¹ Ps. ii. 11.

² 1 Cor. iv. 7.

whereby he may arrive, and behold, and hold Thee. For, though a man be delighted with the law of God after the inner man,¹ what shall he do with that other law in his members which warreth against the law of his mind, and bringeth him into captivity to the law of sin which is in his members?² For Thou art righteous, O Lord; but we have sinned, and committed iniquity, and have done wickedly,³ and Thy hand is grown heavy upon us, and we are justly delivered over unto that ancient sinner, the king of death; because he persuaded our will to be like his will, whereby he abode not in Thy truth. What shall wretched man do? who shall deliver him from the body of this death, but only Thy grace, through Jesus Christ our Lord,⁴ whom Thou hast begotten coëternal, and formedst in the beginning of Thy ways,⁵ in whom the prince of this world found nothing worthy of death,⁶ yet killed he Him; and the handwriting, which was contrary to us, was blotted out?⁷ This the Platonic writings contain not. Those pages present not the image of this piety, the tears of confession, Thy sacrifice, a troubled spirit, a broken and a contrite heart,⁸ the salvation of the people, the Bridal City,⁹ the earnest of the Holy Ghost,¹⁰ the Cup of our Redemption.¹¹ No man sings there, Shall not my soul be submitted unto God? for of Him cometh my salvation. For He is

¹ Rom. vii. 22.⁵ Prov. viii. 22.⁸ Ps. li. 17.² Rom. vii. 23.⁶ John xiv. 30.⁹ Rev. xxi. 2.³ Song of the Three Children, 4 sqq.⁷ Col. ii. 14.¹⁰ 2 Cor. v. 5.⁴ Rom. vii. 24.¹¹ Ps. cxvi. 13.

my God and my salvation, my guardian, I shall no more be moved.¹ No one hears Him call in those books, *Come unto Me all ye that labor.²* They scorn to learn of Him, because He is meek and lowly in heart; for these things hast Thou hid from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.³ For it is one thing, from the mountain's shaggy top to see the land of peace, and to find no way thither,⁴ and in vain to strive towards it through paths impassable, opposed and beset by fugitives and deserters led by their captain *the lion and the dragon*; and quite another thing to keep on the way that leads thither, guarded by the hosts of the heavenly General, where those who have deserted the heavenly army spoil and rob not, for they avoid that army as very torment itself. These things did wonderfully sink into my heart, when I read that *least of Thy Apostles*,⁵ and meditated upon Thy works, and trembled exceedingly.

¹ Ps. lxii. 1, 2.

² Matt. xi. 28.

³ Matt. xi. 29.

⁴ Deut. xxxii. 49.

⁵ 1 Cor. xv. 9.

THE EIGHTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE'S THIRTY-SECOND YEAR—HE CONSULTS SIMPLICIANUS—
FROM HIM HE HEARS THE HISTORY OF THE CONVERSION OF VICTORINUS, AND LONGS TO DEVOTE HIMSELF ENTIRELY TO GOD, BUT IS
MASTERED BY HIS OLD HABITS—IS STILL FURTHER ROUSED BY THE
HISTORY OF ANTONY, AND THE CONVERSION OF TWO COURTIERS—
DURING A SEVERE STRUGGLE, HEARS A VOICE FROM HEAVEN,
OPENS SCRIPTURE, AND IS CONVERTED, WITH HIS FRIEND ALYPIUS—
HIS MOTHER'S VISION FULFILLED.

I. O my God! let me, with thanksgiving, remember, and confess unto Thee Thy mercies to me. *Let my bones* be bedewed with Thy love, and let them *say unto Thee, Who is like unto Thee, O Lord?*¹ *Thou hast broken my bonds in sunder, I will offer unto Thee the sacrifice of thanksgiving.*² And how Thou hast broken them, I will declare; and all who worship Thee, when they hear this, shall say, “Blessed be the Lord, in heaven and in earth, great and wonderful is his name.” Thy words had stuck fast in my heart, and *I was hedged round about on all sides by Thee.*³ Of Thy eternal life I was now certain, though I saw it in a figure and as *through a glass.*⁴ Yet I had ceased to doubt that there was an incorruptible substance, whence was all other substance; nor did I now desire to be more certain of Thee, but more steadfast in Thee. As for my tem-

¹ Ps. xxxv. 10.

² Ps. cxvi. 16, 17.

³ Job. i. 10.

⁴ 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

poral life, all was wavering, and *my heart had to be purged from the old leaven.*¹ *The Way,*² the Saviour Himself, well pleased me, but as yet I shrunk from going through its straitness. And Thou didst put into my mind, and it seemed good in my eyes, to go to Simplicianus, who seemed to me a good servant of Thine; and Thy grace shone in Him. I had heard also, that from his very youth he had lived most devoted unto Thee. Now he was grown into years; and by reason of so great age spent in such zealous following of Thy ways, he seemed to me likely to have learned much experience; and so he had. Out of which store, I wished that he would tell me (setting before him my anxieties) which were the fittest way for one in my case to walk in Thy paths.

2. For I saw the church full; and one went this way, and another that way. But I was displeased, that I led a secular life; yea, now that my desires no longer inflamed me, as of old, with hopes of honor and profit, a very grievous burden it was to undergo so heavy a bondage. For, in comparison of Thy sweetness, *and the beauty of Thy house which I loved,*³ those things delighted me no longer. But still I was enthralled with the love of woman; nor did the Apostle forbid me to marry, although he advised me to something better, chiefly wishing *that all men were as himself was.*⁴ But I, being weak, chose the more indulgent place; and because of this

¹ 1 Cor. v. 7.

² John xiv. 6.

³ Ps. xxvi. 8.

⁴ 1 Cor. vii. 8.

alone, was tossed up and down in all beside, faint and wasted with withering cares, because in other matters I was constrained against my will to conform myself to a married life, to which I was given up and enthralled. I had heard from the mouth of the Truth, *that there were some eunuchs, which had made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake*: but, saith He, *let him who can receive it receive it*.¹ *Surely vain are all men who are ignorant of God, and could not out of the good things which are seen, find out Him who is good*.² But I was no longer in that vanity; I had surmounted it; and by the common witness of all Thy creatures had found Thee our Creator, and Thy Word, God with Thee, and together with Thee one God, by whom Thou createdst all things. There is yet another kind of ungodly, *who knowing God glorified Him not as God, neither were thankful*.³ Into this also had I fallen, but *Thy right hand upheld me*,⁴ and took me thence, and Thou placedst me where I might reeover. For Thou hast said unto man, *Behold, the fear of the Lord is wisdom*,⁵ and *Desire not to seem wise*;⁶ because they *who affirmed themselves to be wise, became fools*.⁷ But I had now *found the goodly pearl, which, selling all that I had*,⁸ I ought to have *bought*, and I hesitated.

II. 3. To Simplicianus then I went, the spiritual father of Ambrose (a Bishop now), and whom Ambrose truly loved as a father. To him I related the

¹ Matt. xix. 12.

⁴ Ps. xviii. 35.

⁷ Rom. i. 22.

² Wisd. xliii. 1.

⁵ Job xxviii. 28.

⁸ Matt. xiii. 46.

³ Rom. i. 21.

⁶ Prov. iii. 7.

mazes of my wanderings. But when I mentioned that I had read certain books of the Platonists, which Victorinus, sometime Rhetoric Professor of Rome (whō had died a Christian, as I had heard), had translated into Latin, he testified his joy that I had not fallen upon the writings of other philosophers, full of *fallacies and deceits, after the rudiments of this world*,¹ whereas the Platonists many ways led to the belief in God and His Word. Then to exhort me to the humility of Christ, *hidden from the wise, and revealed to little ones*,² he spoke of Victorinus himself, whom, while at Rome, he had most intimately known: and of him he related what I will not conceal. For it contains great *praise of Thy grace*, to be confessed unto Thee, how that aged man, most learned and skilled in the liberal sciences, and who had read and weighed so many works of the philosophers; the instructor of so many noble Senators; who also, as a monument of his excellent discharge of his office, had (which men of this world esteem a high honor) both deserved and obtained a statue in the Roman Forum; he, to that time of life a worshipper of idols, and a partaker of the sacrilegious rites, to which almost all the nobility of Rome were given up, and which had inspired the people with the love of

Anubis, barking deity, and all
The monster gods of every kind, who fought
'Gainst Neptune, Venus, and Minerva:

whom Rome had once conquered, and now adored,

all which the aged Victorinus had with thundering eloquence so many years defended ;— he now blushed not to be the child of Thy Christ, and the new-born babe of Thy fountain ; submitting his neck to the yoke of humility, and subduing his forehead to the reproach of the Cross.

4. O Lord, Lord, *Which hast bowed the heavens and come down, touched the mountains and they did smoke*,¹ by what means didst Thou convey Thyself into that breast ? He used to read (as Simplicianus said) the holy Scripture, most studiously sought and searched into all the Christian writings, and said to Simplicianus (not openly, but privately, and as a friend), “Understand that I am already a Christian.” Whereto Simplicianus answered, “I will not believe it, nor will I rank you among Christians, unless I see you in the Church of Christ.” The other, in banter, replied, “Do walls then make Christians ?” And this he often said, that he was already a Christian ; and Simplicianus as often made the same answer, and the conceit of the “walls” was by the other as often renewed. For he feared to offend his friends, proud daemon-worshippers ; from the height of whose Babylonian dignity, as from *cedars of Libanus*,² which the *Lord* had not yet broken down, he supposed the weight of enmity would fall upon him. But after that by reading and earnest thought he had gathered firmness, and feared to be *denied by Christ before the holy angels, should he now be afraid to confess Him before men*,³ and appeared to him-

¹ Ps. cxliv. 5.

² Ps. xxix. 5.

³ Luke ix. 26.

self guilty of a heavy offence, in being ashamed of the Sacraments of Thy lowly Word and not ashamed of the sacrilegious rites of those proud dæmons, whose pride he had imitated and their rites adopted, he became bold-faced against vanity, and shame-faced towards the truth, and suddenly and unexpectedly said to Simplicianus (as himself told me), “Go we to the church; I wish to be made a Christian.” But he, not containing himself for joy, went with him. And having been admitted to the first saerament and become a Catechumen, not long after he further gave in his name, that he might be regenerated by baptism,—Rome wondering, the church rejoicing. The proud *saw, and were wroth; they gnashed with their teeth, and melted away.*¹ But the *Lord God was the hope of Thy servant, and he regarded not vanities and lying madness.*²

5. To conclude: when the hour was come for making profession of his faith (which profession at Rome they who are about to approach to Thy grace deliver, from an elevated place, in the sight of all the faithful, in a set form of words committed to memory), the presbyters, he said, offered Victorinus (as was done to such as seemed likely through bashfulness to be alarmed) to make his profession more privately; but he chose rather to profess his salvation in the presence of the holy multitude. “For it was not salvation that he taught in rhetoric, and yet that he had publicly professed: how much less then ought he, when pronouncing Thy word, to

¹ Ps. cxii. 10.

² Ps. xxxi. 6, 40, etc

fear Thy meek flock, who, when delivering his own words, had not feared a mad multitude!" When, then, he went up to make his profession, all, as they knew him, whispered his name one to another with the voice of congratulation. And who there knew him not? And there ran a low murmur through all the mouths of the rejoicing multitude, Victorinus! Victorinus! Sudden was the burst of rapture, that they saw him; suddenly were they hushed that they might hear him. He pronounced the true faith with an excellent boldness, and all wished to draw him into their very heart: yea, by their love and joy they drew him thither; such were the hands where-with they drew him.

III. 6. Good God! what takes place in man, that he should more rejoice at the salvation of a soul despaired of, and freed from greater peril, than if there had always been hope of him, or the danger had been less? For so Thou also, merciful Father, *dost more rejoice over one penitent, than over ninety-nine just persons, that need no repentance.*¹ And with much joyfulness do we hear, so often as we hear with what joy *the sheep which has strayed is brought back upon the shepherd's shoulder, and the groat is restored to Thy treasury, the neighbors rejoicing with the woman who found it;*² and the joy of the solemn service of Thy house forceth to tears, when in Thy house it is read of Thy *younger son, that he was dead and liveth again; had been lost, and is found.* For Thou *rejoicest in us, and in Thy holy angels, holy through holy charity.* For Thou

¹ Luke xv. 7

² Luke xv. 5—9

art ever the same; for all things which abide not the same nor for ever, Thou for ever knowest in the same way.

7. What then takes place in the soul, when it is more delighted at finding or recovering the things it loves, than if it had ever had them? yea, and other things witness hereunto; and all things are full of witnesses, crying out, "So is it." The conquering commander triumpheth; yet had he not conquered unless he had fought; and the more peril there was in the battle, so much the more joy is there in the triumph. The storm tosses the sailors, threatens shipwreck; all wax pale at approaching death; sky and sea are calmed, and they are exceeding joyed, as having been exceeding afraid. A friend is sick, and his pulse threatens danger; all who long for his recovery are sick in mind with him. He is restored, though as yet he walks not with his former strength; yet there is such joy as was not when before he walked sound and strong. Yea, the very pleasures of human life men acquire by difficulties, not those only which fall upon us unlooked for, and against our wills, but even by self-chosen, and pleasure-seeking trouble. Eating and drinking have no pleasure, unless there precede the pinching of hunger and thirst. Men, given to drink, eat certain salt meats to procure a troublesome heat, which, the drink allaying, causes pleasure. It is also ordered that the affianced bride should not at once be given, lest as a husband he should hold cheap her whom, as betrothed, he sighed not after.

8. This law holds in foul and accursed joy ; in permitted and lawful joy ; in the very purest perfection of friendship ; in him *who was dead, and lived again, had been lost and was found.* Everywhere the greater joy is ushered in by the greater pain. What means this, O Lord my God, whereas Thou art everlasting joy to Thyself, and some things around Thee evermore rejoice in Thee ? What means this, that this portion of things thus ebbs and flows alternately displeased and reconciled ? Is this their allotted measure ? Is this all Thou hast assigned to them, whereas from the highest heavens to the lowest earth, from the beginning of the world to the end of ages, from the angel to the worm, from the first motion to the last, Thou settest each in its place, and realizest each in their season, every thing good after its kind ? Woe is me ! how high art Thou in the highest, and how deep in the deepest ! and Thou never departest from us, and we scarcely return to Thee.

IV. 9. Up, Lord, and do ; stir us up, and recall us ; kindle and draw us ; inflame, grow sweet unto us ; let us now love, *let us run.*¹ Do not many, out of a deeper hell of blindness than Victorinus, return to Thee, approach, and are enlightened, receiving that *Light,* which *they who receive, receive power from Thee to become Thy sons.*² But if they happen to be less known to the people, even those that do know them rejoice less for them in conversion. For when many rejoice together, each also has more exuberant joy ; for that they are kindled and

¹ Cant. i. 4.

² John i. 12.

inflamed one by the other. Again, because those that are widely known influence many more towards salvation, and lead the way with many to follow; therefore do they also who preceded these widely known persons much rejoice in them, because they rejoice not in them alone. For far be it, that in Thy tabernacle the persons of the rich should be accepted before the poor, or the noble before the ignoble; seeing rather that *Thou hast chosen the weak things of the world, to confound the strong; and the base things of this world, and the things despised hast Thou chosen, and those things which are not, that Thou mightest bring to nought things that are.*¹ And yet even that *least of Thy apostles,*² by whose tongue Thou soundest forth these words, when, through his warfare, Paulus the Proconsul, his pride conquered, was made to pass under the *easy yoke* of Thy Christ, and became a provincial of the great King, he also for his former name Saul, was pleased to be called Paul, in testimony of so great a victory. For the enemy is more overcome in one, of whom he hath more hold, and by whom he hath hold of more. But the proud he hath more hold of, through their nobility; and by them, of more through their authority. By how much the more welcome then the heart of Victorinus was esteemed, which the devil had held as an impregnable possession; and the tongue of Victorinus, with which mighty and keen weapon he had slain many; by so much the more abundantly ought Thy sons to rejoice, for that

¹ 1 Cor. i. 27, 28.

² 1 Cor. xv. 9.

our King hath bound the strong man,¹ and they saw his vessels taken from him and cleansed, and made meet for Thy honor,² and become serviceable for the Lord, unto every good work.³

V. 10. Now when that man of Thine, Simplicianus, related to me this of Victorinus, I was on fire to imitate him; and for this very end had he related it. But when he had subjoined, also, how in the days of the Emperor Julian, a law was made, whereby Christians were forbidden to teach the liberal sciences or oratory; and how he, obeying this law, chose rather to give over the wordy school than Thy Word, by which Thou makest eloquent the tongues of the dumb;⁴ he seemed to me not more resolute than blessed, in having thus found opportunity to wait on Thee only. Which thing I was sighing for, bound as I was, not with another's irons, but by my own iron will. My will the enemy held, and thence had made a chain for me, and bound me. For of a perverse will comes lust; and a lust served becomes custom; and custom not resisted becomes necessity. By which links, as it were, joined together (whence I called it a chain) a hard bondage held me enthralled. But that new will which had begun to be in me, freely to serve Thee, and to wish to enjoy Thee, O God, the only assured pleasantness, was not yet able to overcome my former wilfulness strengthened by age. Thus did my two wills, one new, and the other old, one carnal, the other spiritual, strnggle within me; and by their discord, undid my soul.

1 Matt. xii. 29.

2 Luke xi. 22, 25.

3 2 Tim. ii. 21.

4 Wisd. x. 21.

11. Thus I understood, by my own experience, what I had read, how *the flesh lusteth against the spirit, and the spirit against the flesh.*¹ It was myself verily either way ; yet more myself, in that which I approved in myself, than in that which in myself I disapproved.² For in this last, it was now for the more part not myself, because in much I rather endured against my will, than acted willingly. And yet it was through me that custom had obtained this power of warring against me, because I had come willingly whither I willed now not to be. And who has any right to speak against it, if just punishment follow the sinner ? Nor had I now any longer my former plea, that I therefore as yet hesitated to be above the world and serve Thee, for that the truth was not altogether ascertained to me ; for now it was. But I, still under service to the earth, refused to fight under Thy banner, and feared as much to be freed of all incumbrances, as I ought to have feared to be encumbered therewith : Thus with the baggage of this present world was I held down pleasantly, as in sleep : and the thoughts wherein I meditated on Thee, were like the efforts of such as would awake, who yet overcome with a heavy drowsiness, are again drenched therein. And as no one would sleep for ever, and in all men's sober judgment, waking is better, yet a man very often feeling a heavy lethargy in all his limbs defers to shake off sleep, and, though half displeased, yet, even after it is time to rise, with pleasure yields to it, so was I assured, that much

¹ Gal. v. 17.

² Rom. vii. 17.

better were it for me to give myself up to Thy charity, than to give myself over to mine own cupidity; but though the former course satisfied me and gained the mastery, the latter pleased me and held me mastered. Nor had I anything to answer Thee calling to me, *Awake, thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light.*¹ And when Thou didst on all sides show me that what Thou saidst was true, I, convicted by the truth, had nothing at all to answer, but only those dull and drowsy words, “Anon, anon,” “presently;” “leave me but a little.” But “presently, presently,” had no present, and my “little while” went on for a long while; in vain I delighted in *Thy law according to the inner man, when another law in my members rebelled against the law of my mind, and led me captive under the law of sin which was in my members.*² For the law of sin is the violence of custom, whereby the mind is drawn and holden, even against its will; but deservedly, for that it willingly fell into it. *Who then should deliver me thus wretched from the body of this death, but Thy grace only, through Jesus Christ our Lord?*³

VI. 13. And how Thou didst deliver me out of the bonds of desire, wherewith I was bound most straitly to carnal concupiscence, and out of the drudgery of worldly things, I will now declare, and confess unto Thy name, *O Lord, my helper and my redeemer.*⁴ Amid increasing anxiety, I was doing my wonted business, and daily sighing unto Thee. I at-

¹ Eph. v. 14.

² Rom. vii. 22.

³ Ver. 24, 25.

⁴ Ps. xix. 14.

tended Thy Church, whenever free from the business under the burden of which I groaned. Alypius was with me, now after the third sitting released from his law business, and awaiting to whom to sell his counsel, as I sold the skill of speaking, if indeed teaching can impart it. To please us, Nebridius had now consented to teach under Verecundus, a citizen and a grammarian of Milan, and a very intimate friend of us all; who urgently desired, and by the right of friendship challenged from our company, such faithful aid as he greatly needed. Nebridius then was not drawn to this by any desire of advantage (for he might have made much more of his learning had he so willed), but as a most kind and gentle friend, he would not be wanting to a good office, and slight our request. But he acted herein very discreetly, shunning to become known to personages great according to this world, avoiding the distraction of mind thence ensuing, and desiring to have it free and at leisure, as many hours as might be, to seek, or read, or hear something concerning wisdom.

14. One day then, Nebridius being absent (I recollect not why), there came to see me and Alypius, one Pontitianus, our countryman so far as being an African, in high office in the Emperor's court. What he would with us, I know not, but we sat down to converse, and it happened that upon a gaming-table, before us, he observed a book, took, opened it, and, contrary to his expectation, found it the Apostle Paul; for he had thought it some of those books

which I was wearing myself in teaching. Whereat smiling, and looking at me, he expressed his joy and wonder, that he had on a sudden found this book, and this only before my eyes. For he was a Christian, and baptized, and often bowed himself before Thee our God in the Church, in frequent and continued prayers. When then I had told him that I bestowed very great pains upon those Scriptures, a conversation arose (suggested by his account) on Anthony the Egyptian Monk: whose name was in high reputation among Thy servants, though to that hour unknown to us. Which when he discovered, he dwelt more upon that subject, informing, and wondering at our ignorance of one so eminent. But we stood amazed, hearing of Thy wonderful works (most fully attested, in times so recent, and almost in our own time) wrought in the true Faith and Church Catholic. We all wondered; we, that they were so great, and he, that they had not reached us.

15. Thence his discourse turned to the flocks in the Monasteries, and their holy ways, a sweet-smelling savor unto Thee, and the fruitful deserts of the wilderness, whereof we knew nothing. And there was a Monastery at Milan, full of good brethren, without the city walls, under the fostering care of Ambrose, and we knew it not. He went on with his discourse, and we listened in intent silence. He told us then how one afternoon at Triers, when the Emperor was taken up with the Circensian games, he and three others, his companions, went out to walk in gardens near the city walls, and there as they hap-

pened to walk in pairs, one went apart with him, and the other two wandered by themselves ; and these latter, in their wanderings, lighted upon a certain cottage, inhabited by certain of Thy servants, *poor in spirit, of whom is the kingdom of heaven*,¹ and there they found a little book, containing the life of Anthony. This, one of them began to read, admire, and kindle at it ; and as he read, to meditate on taking up such a life, and giving over his secular service to serve Thee. And these two were of those whom they style agents for the public affairs. Then suddenly, filled with an holy love, and a sober shame, in anger with himself he cast his eyes upon his friend, saying, “Tell me, I pray thee, what would we attain by all these labors of ours ? what aim we at ? what serve we for ? Can our hopes in court rise higher than to be the Emperor’s favorites ? and in this, what is there not brittle, and full of perils ? and by how many perils arrive we at a greater peril ? and when arrive we thither ? But, if I desire it, I can become now at once a friend of God.” So spake he. And in pain with the travail of a new life, he turned his eyes again upon the book, and read on, and was changed inwardly, where Thou lookest, and his mind was stripped of the world, as soon appeared. For as he read, and rolled up and down the waves of his heart, he stormed at himself a while, then discerned, and determined on a better course ; and now being Thine, said to his friend, “Now have I broken loose from those our hopes, and am resolved to serve God ;

¹ Matt. v. 3.

and from this hour, in this place, I begin upon this. If thou likest not to imitate me, do not oppose me." The other answered, that he would cleave to him, to partake so glorious a reward, so glorious a service. Thus both being now Thine, were *building* the tower at the necessary *cost*, the *forsaking all that they had and following Thee*.¹ Then Pontitianus and the other with him, that had walked in other parts of the garden, came in search of them to the same place; and finding them, reminded them to return, for the day was now far spent. But they relating their resolution and purpose, and how that determination was begun, and settled in them, begged them, if they would not join, not to molest them. Their friends, though nothing altered from their former selves, did yet bewail themselves (as he affirmed), and piously congratulated them, recommending themselves to their prayers; and so, with hearts lingering on the earth, went away to the palace. But the other two, fixing their hearts on heaven, remained in the cottage. And both had affianced brides, who, when they heard hereof, also dedicated their virginity unto God.

VII. 16. Such was the story of Pontitianus; but Thou, O Lord, while he was speaking, didst turn me round towards myself, taking me from behind my back where I had placed me, unwilling to observe myself; and setting me before my face, that I might see how foul I was, how crooked and defiled, bespotted and ulcerous. And I beheld, and stood aghast;

¹ Luke xiv. 26—35.

and whither to flee from myself I found not. And if I sought to turn mine eye from off myself, he went on with his relation, and Thou again didst set me over against myself, and thrustedst me before my eyes, that *I might find out mine iniquity, and hate it.*¹ I had known it, but made as though I saw it not, winked at it, and forgot it.

17. But now, the more ardently I loved those whose healthful affections I heard of, that they had resigned themselves wholly to Thee to be cured, the more did I abhor myself, when compared with them. For many of my years (some twelve) had now run out with me since my nineteenth, when, upon the reading of Cicero's Hortensius, I was stirred to an earnest love of wisdom; and still I was deferring to reject mere earthly felicity, and give myself to search out that, whereof not the finding only but the very search, was to be preferred to the treasures and kingdoms of the world, though already found, and to the pleasures of the body, though spread around me at my will. But, I wretched, most wretched, in the very commencement of my early youth, had begged chastity of Thee, and said, "Give me chastity and continency, *only not yet.*" For I feared lest Thou shouldest hear me soon, and soon cure me of the disease of concupiscence, which I wished to have satisfied rather than extinguished. And I had wandered through crooked ways in a sacrilegious superstition, not indeed assured thereof, but as preferring it to

¹ Ps. xxxvi. 2.

the truth which I did not seek religiously, but opposed maliciously.

18. And I had heretofore thought, that I therefore deferred from day to day to reject the hopes of this world, and follow Thee only, because there did not appear aught certain, whither to direct my course. And now was the day come wherein I was to be laid bare to myself, and my conscience was to upbraid me. “Where art thou now, my tongue? Thou saidst, that for an uncertain truth thou likedst not to cast off the baggage of vanity; now truth is certain, and yet that burden still oppresseth thee; while they who neither have so worn themselves out with seeking it, nor for ten years and more have been thinking thereon, have had their shoulders lightened, and received wings to fly away.” Thus was I gnawed within, and exceedingly confounded with an horrible shame, while Pontitianus was speaking. And he having brought to a close his tale and the business he came for, went his way; and I into myself. What said I not against myself? with what scourges of condemnation lashed I not my soul, that it might follow me, striving to go after Thee! Yet it drew back; refused, but excused not itself. All arguments were spent and confuted; there remained a mute shrinking; and she feared as she would death, to be restrained from the flux of that custom, whereby she was wasting to death.

VIII. 19. Then in this great contention of my inward dwelling, which I had strongly raised against

myself in *the chamber*¹ of my heart, troubled in mind and countenance, I turned upon Alypius. "What ails us?" I exclaim: "what is it? what heardest thou? The unlearned start up and *take heaven by force*² and we with our learning, and without heart, wallow in flesh and blood! Are we ashamed to follow, because others are gone before, and are not ashamed not even to follow?" Some such words I uttered, and my fever of mind tore me away from him, while he, gazing on me in astonishment, kept silence. For it was not my wonted tone; and my forehead, cheeks, eyes, color, tone of voice, spake my mind more than the words I uttered. A little garden there was to our lodging, which we had the use of, as of the whole house; for the master of the house, our host, was not living there. Thither had the tumult of my breast hurried me, where no man might hinder the hot contention wherein I had engaged with myself, until it should end as Thou knewest, but I knew not. Only I was healthfully distracted and dying, to live; knowing what evil thing I was, and not knowing what good thing I was shortly to become. I retired then into the garden, and Alypius on my steps. For his presence did not lessen my privacy; and how could he forsake me so disturbed? We sate down as far removed as might be from the house. I was troubled in spirit, most vehemently indignant that I entered not into Thy will and covenant, O my God, which *all my bones cried out* unto me to enter, and praised it to the skies.

¹ Isaiah xxvi. 20; Matt. vi. 6.

² Matt. vi. 12.

And therein* we enter not by ships, or chariots, or feet, no, move not so far as I had come from the house to that place where we were sitting. For, not only to go, but to arrive, was nothing else but to will to go,—but to will resolutely and thoroughly; not to turn and toss this way and that a maimed half-divided will, struggling, with one part sinking as another rose.

20. Lastly, in the very fever of my irresoluteness, I made with my body many such motions as men sometimes would, but cannot, because they have not the limbs, or are bound with bands, weakened with infirmity, or in some way hindered. Thus, if I tore my hair, beat my forehead, if locking my fingers I clasped my knee, it was done because I willed it. But I might have willed, and not done it, if the power of motion in my limbs had not obeyed. Many things then I did, when “to will” was not in itself “to be able;” but I did not what both I longed incomparably more to do, and what soon after, when I should will, I should be able to do; because soon after, when I should will, I should will *thoroughly*. For in these spiritual things ability is one with will, and to will is to do; and yet at that time was it not done: and more easily did my body obey the weakest willing of my soul, in moving its limbs at its nod, than the soul obeyed itself to accomplish in the will alone this its momentous will.

IX. 21. Whence is this monstrousness? and to what end? Let Thy mercy gleam that I may ask, if the secret penalties of men, and those darkest

pangs of the sons of Adam, may perhaps answer me. Whence is this monstrousness? and to what end? The mind commands the body, and it obeys instantly; the mind commands itself, and is resisted. The mind commands the hand to be moved; and such readiness is there, that command is scarce distinct from obedience. Yet the mind is mind, the hand is body. The mind commands the mind, its own self, to will, and yet it doth not. Whence this monstrousness? and to what end? It commands itself, I say, to will, and would not command, unless it willed, and what it commands is not done. But it willeth not *entirely*: therefore doth it not command entirely. For so far forth it commandeth, as it willeth: and, so far forth is the thing commanded, not done, as it willeth not. For the will commandeth that there be a will; not another, but itself. But it doth not command entirely, therefore what it commandeth, is not. For were the will entire, it would not even command it to be, because it would already be. It is therefore no monstrousness partly to will, partly to nill, but a disease of the mind, that it doth not wholly rise, by truth up-borne, borne down by custom. And therefore are there two wills, for that one of them is not entire: and what the one lacketh, the other hath.

X. 22. *Let them perish from Thy presence,*¹ O God, as *vain talkers and seducers*² of the soul, who, because they observe that in deliberating there are two determinations, affirm that there are two mental

¹ Psalm lxviii. 2.

² Tit. i. 10.

natures in us of two kinds, one good; the other evil. Themselves are truly evil, when they hold these evil things; and themselves shall become good when they hold the truth and assent unto the truth, that Thy Apostle may say to them, *Ye were sometimes darkness, but now light in the Lord.*¹ But they, wishing to be light, not *in the Lord* but in themselves, imagining the nature of the soul to be that which God is, are made more gross darkness through a dreadful arrogance; going *back farther from Thee, the true Light that enlighteneth every man that cometh into the world.*² Take heed what you say, and blush for shame: *draw near unto Him and be enlightened, and your faces shall not be ashamed.*³ Deliberating upon serving the Lord my God now, as I had long purposed, it was I who willed, I who nilled, I, I myself. I neither willed entirely, nor nilled entirely. Therefore was I at strife with myself, and rent asunder by myself. And this rent befel me against my will, and yet indicated not the presence of another mind, but the punishment of my own. *Therefore it was no more I that wrought it, but sin that dwelt in me;*⁴ the punishment of a sin more freely committed, in that I was a son of Adam.

23. For if there be so many contrary natures as there be conflicting wills, there shall be not two only, but many. If a man deliberate whether he should go to their conventicle, or to the theatre, these Manichees cry out, Behold, here are two na-

¹ Eph. v. 8.

² John i. 9.

³ Ps. xxxiv. 5.

⁴ Rom. vii. 17.

tures : one good, draws this way ; another bad, draws back that way. For whence else is this hesitation between conflicting wills ? But I say, that both be bad : that which draws to them, as that which draws back to the theatre. But they believe that will to be good, which draws to them. What then if one of us should deliberate, and amid the strife of his two wills be in a strait, whether he should go to the theatre, or to our church ? would not these Manichees also be in a strait what to answer ? For either they must confess (which they fain w^duld not) that the will which leads to our church is good, or they must suppose two evil natures, and two evil souls conflicting in one man, instead of seeing the truth, that in deliberation, one soul fluctuates between contrary wills.

24. Let them no more say, then, when they perceive two conflicting wills in one man, that the conflict is between two contrary souls, of two contrary substances, from two contrary principles, one good, and the other bad. For Thou, O true God, dost disprove, check, and convict them by facts ; as when, both wills being bad, one deliberates, whether he should kill a man by poison, or by the sword ; whether he should seize this or that estate of another's, when he cannot both ; whether he should purchase pleasure by luxury, or keep his money by covetousness ; whether he go to the circus, or the theatre, if both be open on one day ; or, thirdly, to rob another's house, if he have the opportunity ; or, fourthly, to commit adultery, if at the same time he have the means thereof also. All these, meeting to-

gether in the same juncture of time, and all being equally desired, which cannot at one time be acted, do rend the mind amid four, or even (amid the vast variety of things desired) more conflicting wills; but who will say that there are so many divers substances? So also in wills which are good. For I ask them, is it good to take pleasure in reading the Apostle? or good to take pleasure in a sober Psalm? or good to discourse on the Gospel? They will answer to each, "It is good." What then if all give equal pleasure, and all at once? Do not divers wills distract the mind, while he deliberates which he should rather choose? yet are they all good, and are at variance till one be chosen, whither the one entire will may be borne, which before was divided into many. Thus also, when eternity above delights us, and the pleasure of temporal good holds us down below, it is the same soul which willeth neither way with an entire will; and therefore is it rent asunder with grievous perplexities, because its love of truth sets this first, while its habit sets the other one first.

XI. 25. Thus soul-sick was I, and tormented, accusing myself much more severely than my wont, rolling and turning me in my chain, till that were wholly broken, whereby I now was but just, but still was, held. And Thou, O Lord, didst press upon me inwardly by a severe mercy, redoubling the lashes of fear and shame, lest I should again give way, and, not bursting that slight remaining tie, it should recover strength, and bind me the faster. For I said within myself, "Be it done now, be it done now;" and

as I spake, I all but performed it; I all but did it, and did it not; yet sunk not back to my former state, but kept my stand hard by, and took breath. And I essayed again, and wanted somewhat less of it, and somewhat less, and all but touched, and laid hold of it; and yet came not to it, nor touched nor laid hold of it; hesitating to die to death and to live to life; and the worse, whereto I was inured, prevailed more with me than the better whereto I was unused; and as the moment approached wherein I was to become other than I was, the greater horror did it strike into me; yet did it not strike me back, nor turned me away, but held me in suspense.

26. The very toys of toys, and vanities of vanities, my ancient mistresses, still held me; they plucked my fleshly garment, and whispered softly, “Dost thou cast us off? and from that moment shall we no more be with thee for ever? and from that moment shall not this or that be lawful for thee for ever?” And what was it which they suggested in that I said, “this or that,” O my God? Let Thy mercy turn it away from the soul of Thy servant. What defilements did they suggest! what shame! But now I much less than half heard them, not openly showing themselves and contradicting me, but muttering as it were behind my back, and privily plucking me, as I was departing, but to look back on them. Yet they did retard me, so that I hesitated to burst and shake myself free from them, and to spring over whither I was called; a violent habit saying to me, “Thinkest thou, thou canst live without them?”

27. But now it spake very faintly. For on that side whither I had set my face, and whither I trembled to go, there appeared unto me the chaste dignity of Continency, serene, not dissolutely gay, honestly alluring me to come and doubt not ; and stretching forth to receive and embrace me, her holy hands full of multitudes of good examples : there were so many young men and maidens here, a multitude of youth and every age, grave widows and aged virgins ; and Continence herself in all, not barren, but a *fruitful mother of children* of joys, by Thee her Husband, O Lord. And she smiled on me with a persuasive mockery, as if she would say, “ Canst not thou do what these youths, what these maidens can ? or do they do it of themselves, and not rather by the Lord their God ? The Lord their God gave me unto them. Why standest thou in thyself, and so standest not ? cast thyself upon Him, fear not, He will not withdraw Himself that thou shouldest fall ; cast thyself fearlessly upon Him, He will receive, and will heal thee.” And I blushed exceedingly, for that I yet heard the murmuring of those toys, and hung in suspense. And she again seemed to say, “ Stop thine ears against *those thy unclean members on the earth*, that they may be *mortified*. *They tell thee of delights, but not as doth the law of the Lord thy God.*”¹ This controversy in my heart was self against self only. But Alypius sitting close by my side, in silence waited the issue of my unwonted emotion.

¹ Ps. cxix. 85. Old Ver.

XII. 28. And when a deep consideration had from the secret bottom of my soul drawn together and heaped up all my misery in the sight of my heart, there arose a mighty storm, bringing a mighty shower of tears. Which that I might pour forth wholly, in its natural expressions, I rose from Alypius: solitude seemed to me fitter for the business of weeping; so I retired so far that even his presence could not be a burden to me. Thus was it with me, and he perceived something of it; for I suppose I had spoken something, wherein the tones of my voice appeared choked with weeping, as I had risen up. He remained where we were sitting, most extremely astonished. I cast myself down I know not how, under a certain fig-tree, giving full vent to my tears; and the floods of mine eyes gushed out an acceptable sacrifice to *Thee*. And, not indeed in these words, yet to this purpose, spake I much unto *Thee*: *and Thou, O Lord, how long? how long, Lord, wilt Thou be angry for ever?*¹ *Remember not our former iniquities,*² for I felt that I was held by them. I sent up these sorrowful words; How long? how long? “to-morrow, and to-morrow?” Why not now? why this hour is there not an end to my uncleanness?

29. So was I speaking, and weeping in the most bitter contrition of my heart, when, lo! I heard from a neighbouring house a voice, as of boy or girl, I know not, chanting, and oft repeating, “Take up and read; Take up and read.” Instantly, my coun-

¹ Psalm vi. 4.² Psalm lxxix. 5, 8.

tenance altered, I began to think most intently, whether children were wont in any kind of play to sing such words: nor could I remember ever to have heard the like. So checking the torrent of my tears, I arose; interpreting it to be no other than a command from God to open the book and read the first chapter I should find. For I had heard of Antony, that coming in during the reading of the Gospel, he received the admonition, as if what was being read was spoken to him: *Go, sell all that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven, and come and follow me:*¹ and by such oracle he was forthwith converted unto Thee.—Eagerly then I returned to the place where Alypius was sitting; for there had I laid the volume of the Apostle, when I arose thence. I seized, opened, and in silence read that passage, on which my eyes first fell: *Not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying: but put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh,*² in concupiscence. No further would I read; nor needed I: for instantly at the end of this sentence, by a light as it were of serenity infused into my heart, all the darkness of doubt vanished away.

30. Then putting my finger between, or some other mark, I shut the volume, and with a calmed countenance made it known to Alypius. And what was wrought in him, which I knew not, he thus showed me. He asked to see what I had read: I

¹ Matt. xix. 21.

² Rom. xiii. 13, 14.

showed him ; and he looked even further than I had read, and I knew not what followed. This followed : *him that is weak in the faith, receive ;*¹ which he applied to himself, and disclosed to me. And by this admonition was he strengthened ; and by a good resolution and purpose, and according to his natural character, in which he was far different from me, and far better, without any turbulent delay he joined me. Thence we go in to my mother ; we tell her ; she rejoices ; we relate in order how it took place ; she leaps for joy, and triumphs, and blesses Thee, *Who art able to do above that which we ask or think ;*² for she perceived that Thou hadst given her more for me, than she was wont to beg by her pitiful and most sorrowful groanings. For Thou convertedst me unto Thyself, so that I sought neither wife, nor any hope of this world, standing in that rule of faith, where Thou hadst showed me unto her in a vision, so many years before.³ And Thou didst convert her mourning into joy,⁴ much more plentiful than she had desired, and in a much more precious and purer way than she erst required, when she asked grandchildren of my body.

¹ Rom. xiv. 1.

² Eph. iii. 20.

³ Compare Book III. xi.

⁴ Psalm xxx. 11.

THE NINTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE DETERMINES TO DEVOTE HIS LIFE TO GOD, AND TO ABANDON HIS PROFESSION OF RHETORIC, QUIETLY HOWEVER—RETIRES TO THE COUNTRY TO PREPARE HIMSELF TO RECEIVE THE RITE OF BAPTISM, AND IS HAPPIED WITH ALEYPIUS, AND HIS SON ADEODATUS—AT OSTIA, ON HIS WAY TO AFRICA, HIS MOTHER MONICA DIES, IN HER FIFTY-SIXTH YEAR, THE THIRTY-THIRD OF AUGUSTINE—HER LIFE AND CHARACTER.

I. 1. *O Lord, I am Thy servant; I am Thy servant, and the son of Thy handmaid; Thou hast broken my bonds in sunder. I will offer to Thee the sacrifice of praise.¹ Let my heart and my tongue praise Thee; yea, let all my bones say, O Lord, who is like unto Thee?* Let them say, and answer Thou, and say unto my soul, *I am thy salvation.² Who am I, and what man am I? Rather what evil have I not been, either in my deeds, or if not in my deeds, in my words, or if not in my words, in my will?* But Thou, O Lord, art good and merciful, and Thy right hand had respect unto the depth of my death, and from the bottom of my heart emptied that abyss of corruption. And this Thy whole gift was, to nill what I willed, and to will what Thou willest. But where, through all those years, was my free will, and

¹ Psalm cxvi. 16, 17.

² Psalm xxxv. 10.

out of what low and deep recess was it called forth in a moment, so that I submitted my neck to Thy *easy yoke*,¹ and my shoulders unto Thy *light burden*, *O Christ Jesus, my Helper and my Redeemer?*² How sweet did it at once become to me, to give up the sweetesses of those toys! and what I feared to be parted from, was now a joy to part with. For Thou didst cast them forth from me, Thou true and highest sweetness. Thou castedst them forth, and in place of them enteredst in Thyself, sweeter than all pleasure, though not to flesh and blood; brighter than all light, but more hidden than all depths; higher than all honor, but not to the high in their own conceits. Now was my soul free from the biting cares of canvassing and getting, and weltering in filth, and scratching off the itch of lust. And my infant tongue spake freely to Thee, my brightness, and my riches, and my health, the Lord my God.

II. 2. And I resolved in Thy sight, not tumultuously to tear, but gently to withdraw, the service of my tongue from the marts of lip-labor: that the young, who studied not Thy law, nor Thy peace, but lying dotages and law-skirmishes, should no longer buy at my mouth arms for their madness. And very seasonably, it now wanted but very few days unto the Vacation of the Vintage, and I resolved to endure them, then in a regular way to take my leave, and having been purchased by Thee, to sell myself no more. Our purpose then was known to Thee; but to men, other than our own friends, was it not

¹ Matt. xi. 30.² Psalm xix. 4.

known. For we had agreed among ourselves not to disclose it to any: although to us, now ascending from the *valley of tears*, and singing that *song of degrees*, Thou hadst given *sharp arrows*, and *destroying coals*, against whatever *subtle tongue*, that on pretence of advising would thwart us, and would out of love devour us, as it doth its meat.

3. For Thou hadst pierced our hearts with Thy love, and we carried Thy words as it were fixed in our bowels: and the examples of Thy servants, whom for black Thou hadst made bright, and for dead, alive, being piled together in the receptacle of our thoughts, kindled and burned up our heavy torpor, that we should not sink down to the abyss; and they fired us so vehemently, that all the blasts of *subtle tongues* from gainsayers might only inflame us the more fiercely, not extinguish us. Nevertheless, because for *Thy Name's* sake which Thou hast *hallowed* throughout the earth, this our vow and purpose might also find some to commend it, it seemed like ostentation not to wait for the vacation now so near, but to quit beforehand a public profession, which was before the eyes of all; so that all looking on this act of mine, and observing how near was the time of vintage which I wished to anticipate, would talk much of me, as if I had desired to appear some great one. And what end had it served me, that people should repute and dispute upon my purpose, and that *our good should be evil spoken of?*¹

4. Moreover, it had at first troubled me, that in

¹ Rom. xiv. 16.

this very summer my lungs began to give way, amid too great literary labor, and to breathe deeply with difficulty, and by the pain in my chest to show that they were injured, and to refuse any full or lengthened speaking; this had troubled me, for it almost constrained me of necessity, to lay down that burden of teaching; or, if I could be cured and recover, at least to intermit it. But when the full wish for leisure, that I might see *how that Thou art the Lord*,¹ arose, and was fixed, in me, my God, Thou knowest, I began even to rejoice that I had this secondary, and no feigned, excuse, which might somewhat moderate the offence taken by those, who for their sons' sake wished me never to have the freedom of Thy sons. Full then of such joy, I endured till that interval of time were run; it may have been some twenty days, yet they were endured manfully; endured, for the covetousness which aforetime bore a part of this heavy business, had left me, and I remained alone, and had been overwhelmed, had not patience taken its place. Perchance, some of Thy servants, my brethren, may say, that I sinned in this, that with a heart fully set on Thy service, I suffered myself to sit even one hour in the chair of lies. Nor would I be contentious. But hast not Thou, O most merciful Lord, pardoned and remitted this sin also, with my other most horrible and deadly sins, in the holy waters of baptism?

III. 5. Verecundus was worn down with care about this our blessedness, for that being held back

by bonds, whereby he was most straitly bound, he saw that he should be severed from us. For himself was not yet a Christian, his wife one of the faithful; and yet hereby, more rigidly than by any other chain, was he let and hindered from the journey which we had now essayed. For he would not, he said, be a Christian on any other terms than on those he could not. However, he offered us courteously to remain at his country house, so long as I should stay there. Thou, O Lord, shalt reward him *in the resurrection of the just*,¹ seeing Thou hast already given him *the lot of the righteous*.² For, in my absence at Rome, he was seized with bodily sickness, and therein being made a Christian, and one of the faithful, he departed this life; thus *hadst Thou mercy not on him only, but on me also*:³ lest remembering the exceeding kindness of my friend towards me, yet unable to number him among Thy flock, I should be agonized with intolerable sorrow. Thanks unto Thee, my God, I am Thine: Thy suggestions and consolations tell me, Faithful in promises, that Thou now requitest Verecundus for his country house of Cassiacum, where from the fever of the world I reposed in Thee, with the eternal freshness of Thy Paradise: for that Thou hast forgiven him his sins upon earth, in that rich mountain, that mountain which yieldeth milk, Thine own mountain.

6. He, however, was at that time troubled, but Nenibradius rejoiced. For although he too, not being yet a Christian, had fallen into the pit of that most per-

¹ Luke xiv. 14.

² Psalm cxxv. 3.

³ Phil. ii. 27.

nicious error, believing the flesh of Thy Son to be a phantom: yet emerging thence, he believed as I did; not as yet indued with any Saeraments of Thy Church, but a most ardent searcher-out of truth. Whom, not long after my conversion and regeneration by Thy Baptism, becoming also a faithful member of the Church Catholic, and serving Thee in perfect chastity and continence amongst his people in Africa, his whole house having through him first been made Christian, didst Thou release from the flesh; and now he lives in Abraham's bosom.¹ Whatever that be, which is signified by that bosom, there lives my Nebridius, my sweet friend, and Thy child, O Lord, adopted of a freed man: there he liveth. For what other place is there for such a soul? There he liveth, whereof he asked much of me, a poor inexperienced man. Now lays he not his ear to my mouth, but his spiritual mouth unto Thy fountain, and drinketh as much as he can receive, wisdom in proportion to his thirst, endlessly happy. Nor do I think that he is so inebriated therewith, as to forget me; seeing Thou, Lord, Whom he drinketh, art mindful of me. But now I tried to comfort Verecundus, who sorrowed, as far as friendship permitted, that my conversion was of such sort; exhorting him to become faithful, according to his state of married life; and expecting Nebridius to follow me, which he was all but doing. And so those days rolled by at length; for long and many they seemed, for the love I bare to the easeful liberty, in which I could sing to Thee from

¹ Compare Augustini De Anima IV. 15, 16. — ED.

my inmost marrow, *My heart hath said unto Thee, I have sought Thy face: Thy face, Lord, will I seek.*¹

IV. 7. Now was the day come, wherein I was indeed to be freed of my Rhetic Professorship, whereof in thought I was already freed. And it was done. Thou didst rescue my tongue, whence Thou hadst before rescued my heart. And I blessed Thee, rejoicing; retiring with all my friends to the villa. What I there did in writing, which was now enlisted in Thy service, though still, in this breathing-time as it were, panting from the school of pride, my *Treatises* may witness, as well what I debated with others, as what with myself alone, before Thee:² what with Nebridius, who was absent, my *Epistles* bear witness. And when shall I have time to rehearse all Thy great benefits towards me at that time, especially when hastening on to yet greater mercies? For my remembrance recalls me, and pleasant is it to me, O Lord, to confess to Thee, by what inward goads Thou tamedst me; and how Thou hast evened me, *lowering the mountains and hills of my high imaginations, straightening my crookedness, and smoothing my rough ways;* and how Thou also subduedst the brother of my heart, Alypius, unto the Name of Thy Only Begotten, our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, which he would not at first vouchsafe to have inserted in my writings. For rather would he have

¹ Psalm xxvii. 8.

² Their subjects, and order, may be found in Augustine's *Retractationes* I. 1-4.—Ed.

them savor of the lofty *cedars* of the Schools, which *the Lord* hath now *broken down*,¹ than of the wholesome herbs of the Church, the antidote against serpents.

8. Oh, in what accents spake I unto Thee, my God, when I read the Psalms of David, those faithful songs, and sounds of devotion, which allow of no swelling spirit, as yet a Catechumen, and a novice in Thy real love, resting in that villa, with Alypius a Catechumen, my mother cleaving to me, in female garb, with masculine faith, with the tranquillity of age, motherly love, Christian piety. Oh, what accents did I utter unto Thee in those Psalms, and how was I by them kindled towards Thee, and on fire to rehearse them, if possible, through the whole world, against the pride of mankind. And they are sung through the whole world, nor can *any hide himself from Thy heat*.² With what vehement and bitter sorrow was I angered at the Manichees! and again I pitied them, for that they knew not those Sacraments, those medicines, and were mad against the antidote, which might have recovered them of their madness. How I would they had then been somewhere near me, and without my knowing that they were there, could have beheld my countenance, and heard my words, when I read the fourth Psalm in that time of my rest, and seen how that Psalm wrought upon me. *When I called, the God of my righteousness heard me; in tribulation Thou enlargest me. Have mercy upon me, O Lord,*

¹ Psalm xxix. 5.

² Psalm xix. 6.

*and hear my prayer.*¹ Would that what I uttered on these words, they could hear, without my knowing whether they heard, lest they should think I spake it for their sakes. For, in truth, neither should I speak the same things, nor in the same way, if I perceived that they heard and saw me; nor if I spake them, would they so receive them, as when I spake by and for myself before Thee, out of the natural feelings of my soul.

9. I trembled for fear, and again kindled with hope, and with rejoicing in Thy mercy, O Father; and all my soul issued forth both by mine eyes and voice, when Thy good Spirit turning unto us, said, *O ye sons of men, how long slow of heart? why do ye love vanity, and seek after leasing?*² For I had loved vanity, and sought after leasing. *And Thou, O Lord, hadst already magnified Thy Holy One, raising Him from the dead, and setting Him at Thy right hand,*³ whence *from on high He should send His promise, the Comforter, the Spirit of truth.*⁴ And He had already sent Him, but I knew it not; He had sent Him, because He was now magnified, rising again from the dead, and ascending into heaven.⁵ For till then, *the Spirit was not yet given, because Jesus was not yet glorified.*⁶ And the prophet cries out, *How long, slow of heart? why do ye love vanity, and seek after leasing? Know this, that the Lord hath magnified His Holy One.* He

¹ Ps. iv. 1. Old Ver.

² Ps. iv. 2.

³ Eph. i. 20.

⁴ Luke xxiv. 49; John xiv. 16, 17.

⁵ Acts ii. 1—4.

⁶ John vii. 39.

cries out, *How long?* He cries out, *Know this:* and I so long, not knowing, *loved vanity, and sought after leasing:* and therefore I heard and trembled, because it was spoken unto such as I remembered myself to have been. For in those phantoms which I had held for truths, was there *vanity and leasing;* and I spake aloud many things earnestly and forcibly, in the bitterness of my remembrance. Which would they had heard, who yet *love vanity and seek after leasing!* They would perchance have been troubled, and have vomited it up; and *Thou wouldest hear them when they cried unto Thee;* for by a true death in the flesh did He die for us, who now *intercedeth unto Thee for us.*¹

10. I further read, *Be angry, and sin not.*² And how was I moved, O my God, who had now learned to be angry at myself for things past, that I might not sin in time to come! Yea, to be justly angry; for it was not another nature of dark spirits which sinned for me,³ as they say who are not angry at themselves, and *treasure up wrath against the day of wrath, and of the revelation of Thy just judgment.*⁴ Nor were my *good things* now sought from without, nor sought with the eyes of flesh in the earthly sun; for they that would have joy from without soon become vain, and waste themselves on the things seen, and temporal, and in their famished thoughts do lick their very shadows. Oh that they

¹ Rom. viii. 34.

² Eph. iv. 26.

³ The allusion is to the Gnostico-Manichæan theory of evil, which places the ultimate source of sin out of human nature.—ED.

⁴ Rom. ii. 5.

were wearied out with their famine, and said, *Who will show us good things?*¹ Then we would say, and they hear, *The light of Thy countenance is sealed upon us.*² For we are not *that light which enlighteneth every man,*³ but we are enlightened by Thee; that *having been sometimes darkness, we may be light in Thee.*⁴ Oh that they could see the Eternal internal, which having tasted, I was grieved that I could not show It them, so long as they brought me their heart in their eyes roving abroad from Thee, while they said, *Who will show us good things?*⁵ For there, where I was *angry within myself in my chamber,* where I was inwardly pricked, where I had sacrificed, slaying my old man and commencing the purpose of a new life, *putting my trust in Thee,*⁶—there hadst Thou begun to grow sweet unto me, and *hadst put gladness in my heart.*⁷ And I cried out, as I read this outwardly, and found it inwardly. Nor would I be multiplied with worldly goods; wasting away time, and wasted by time; whereas I had in Thy eternal Simple Essence other *corn, and wine, and oil.*

11. And with a loud cry of my heart I cried out in the next verse, *Oh ! in peace, Oh for The Self-Same !* Oh what a word ! *I will lay me down and sleep;*⁸ for who shall hinder us, when *cometh to pass that saying which is written, Death is swallowed up in victory?*⁹ And Thou surpassingly art the Self-Same, who *art not changed;* and in Thee is rest which

1 Ps. iv. 6.

3 John i. 9.

5 Ps. iv. 6.

7 Ps. iv. 7.

9 1 Cor. xv. 54.

2 Ps. iv. 6.

4 Eph. v. 8.

6 Ps. iv. 5.

8 Ps. iv. 8.

forgetteth all toil, for there is none other with Thee, nor are we to seek those many other things, which are not what Thou art : but Thou, Lord, *alone* hast *made me dwell in hope*. I read, and kindled ; nor found I what to do to those deaf and dead, of whom I myself had been one, a pestilent person, a bitter and a blind bawler against those writings, which are honied with the honey of heaven, and lightsome with Thine own light : and I was consumed with zeal at the enemies of this Scripture.

12. When shall I recall all which passed in those holydays ? Yet neither have I forgotten, nor will I pass over the severity of Thy scourge, and the wonderful swiftness of Thy mercy. Thou didst then torment me with pain in my teeth ; which when it had come to such height that I could not speak, it came into my heart to desire all my friends present to pray for me to Thee, the God of all manner of health. And this I wrote on wax, and gave it them to read. Presently so soon as with humble devotion we had bowed our knees, that pain went away. But what pain ? or how went it away ? I was affrighted, O my Lord, my God ; for from infancy I had never experienced the like. And the power of Thy nod was deeply impressed upon me, and rejoicing in faith, I praised Thy name. And that faith suffered me not to be at ease about my past sins, which were not yet forgiven me by Thy baptism.

V. 13. The vintage-vacation ended, I gave notice to the Milanese to provide their scholars with

another master to sell words to them ; for that I had both made choice to serve Thee, and through my difficulty of breathing and pain in my chest, was not equal to the Professorship. And by letters I signified to Thy prelate, the holy man Ambrose, my former errors and present desires, begging his advice what of Thy Scriptures I had best read, to become readier and fitter for receiving so great grace. He recommended Isaiah the Prophet ; I believe, because he above the rest is a more clear foreshower of the Gospel and of the calling of the Gentiles. But I, not understanding the first lesson in him, and imagining the whole to be like it, laid it by, to be resumed when better practised in our Lord's own words.

VI. 14. When the time was come, wherein I was to give in my name for baptism, we left the country and returned to Milan. It pleased Alypius also to be with me born again¹ in Thee, being already clothed with the humility befitting Thy Sacraments ; and a most valiant tamer of the body, so as, with unwonted venture, to wear the frozen ground of Italy with his bare feet. We joined with us the boy Adeodatus, born after the flesh; of my sin. Excellently hadst Thou made him. He was not quite fifteen, and in wit surpassed many grave and learned men. I confess unto Thee Thy gifts, O Lord my God, Creator of all, and abundantly able to reform our deformities : for I had no part in that boy, but

¹ *Renasci*: here, as often in the patristic writers, employed to denote the initiating rite of baptism, with allusion, probably, to the phrase "born of water and the Spirit," in John iii. 5. — ED.

the sin. If I brought him up in Thy discipline, it was Thou, none else, that inspired me to it. I confess unto Thee Thy gifts. There is a book of mine entitled *The Master*;¹ it is a dialogue between him and me. Thou knowest, that all there ascribed to the person conversing with me were his ideas, in his sixteenth year. Much besides, and yet more admirable, I found in him. His talent struck awe into me. And who but Thou could be the workmaster of such wonders? Soon didst Thou take his life from the earth: and I now remember him without anxiety, fearing nothing for his childhood or youth, or his whole self. Him we joined with us, our contemporary in grace, to be brought up in Thy discipline; and we were baptized, and anxiety for our past life vanished from us. Nor was I sated in those days with the wondrous sweetness of contemplating the depth of Thy counsels concerning the salvation of mankind. How did I weep, in hearing Thy Hymns and Canticles, touched to the quick by the voices of Thy sweet-attuned church! The voices flowed into mine ears, and the Truth distilled into my heart, whence the affections of my devotion overflowed, and tears ran down, and happy was I therein.

VII. 15. Not long had the church of Milan begun to use this kind of consolation and exhortation, the brethren zealously joining with harmony of voice and hearts. For it was a year, or not much more, since Justina, mother to the Emperor Valentinian, yet a child, persecuted Thy servant Ambrose, in

¹ De Magistro: Compare Augustini *Retractationes* I. 12.—ED.

favor of her heresy, to which she was seduced by the Arians. The devout people kept watch in the church, ready to die with their bishop Thy servant. There my mother Thy handmaid, bearing a chief part of those anxieties and watchings, lived for prayer. I, though yet unwarmed by the heat of Thy Spirit, still was stirred up by the sight of the amazed and disquieted city. Then it was first instituted that after the manner of the Eastern churches, hymns and psalms should be sung, lest the people should wax faint through the tediousness of sorrow: and from that day to this the custom is retained,—divers, yea, almost all Thy congregations, throughout other parts of the world, following herein.

16. Then didst Thou by a vision discover to Thy forenamed bishop, where the bodies of Gervasius and Protasius the martyrs lay hid (whom Thou hadst in Thy secret treasury stored uncorrupted so many years), whence Thou mightest seasonably produce them to repress the fury of a woman indeed, but an empress. For when they were discovered and dug up, and with due honor translated to the Ambrosian Basilica, not only they who were vexed with unclean spirits (the devils confessing themselves) were cured, but a certain man, who had for many years been blind, a citizen, and well known to the city, asking and hearing the reason of the people's confused joy, sprang forth, desiring his guide to lead him thither. Led thither, he begged to be allowed to touch with his handkerchief the bier of Thy saints,

whose death is precious in Thy sight.¹ Which when he had done, and put to his eyes, they were forthwith opened.² Thence did the fame spread, thence Thy praises glowed, shone; thence the mind of that enemy Justina, though not turned to the soundness of believing, was yet turned back from her fury of persecuting. Thanks to Thee, O my God. Whence and whither hast Thou thus led my remembrance, that I should confess these things also unto Thee? which great though they be, I had passed by in forgetfulness. And yet then, when *the odor of Thy ointments was so fragrant*, did I not *run after Thee?*³ Therefore did I the more weep during the singing of Thy hymns; at first sighing after Thee, and at length breathing in Thee, so far as vital breath can enter into this our house of grass.

VIII. 17. *Thou that makest men to dwell of one mind in one house⁴* didst join with me Euodius also, a young man of my own city; who being an officer of court, was before me converted to Thee and baptized, and quitting his secular warfare, girded himself to Thine. We were together, about to dwell together in our devout purpose. We sought where we might serve Thee most usefully, and were together returning to Africa: but when we came as far as Ostia, my mother departed this life. I omit much in my story, being in haste. Receive my confessions and thanksgivings, O my God, for innumerable things

¹ Ps. exvi. 15.

² Augustine mentions this miracle again, with others, in *De Civitate Dei*, XXII. viii — ED.

³ Cant. i. 2, 3.

⁴ Ps. lxviii. 6.

whereof I am silent. But I will not omit whatsoever my soul would bring forth concerning Thy handmaid, who brought me forth, both in the flesh, that I might be born to this temporal light, and in heart, that I might be born to Light eternal. Not her gifts, but Thine in her, would I speak of: for neither did she make or educate herself. Thou createdst her; nor did her father and mother know what creature should come from them. And the sceptre of Thy Christ, the discipline of Thine only Son, in a Christian house, a good member of Thy Church, educated her in Thy fear. Yet for her good discipline, was she wont to commend not so much her mother's diligence, as that of a certain decrepit maid-servant, who had carried her father when a child, as little ones use to be carried at the backs of elder girls. For which reason, and for her great age, and excellent conversation, was she, in that Christian family, well respected by its heads; and the charge of her master's daughters was intrusted to her; to which she gave diligent heed, restraining them earnestly, when necessary, with holy severity, and teaching them with a grave discretion. For, except at those hours wherein they were most temperately fed at their parent's table, she would not suffer them, though parched with thirst, to drink even water; preventing an evil custom, and adding this wholesome advice: "You drink water now, because you have not wine in your power; but when you come to be married, and be made mistresses of cellars and cupboards, you will scorn water, but the custom of

drinking will abide." By this method of instruーション, and the authority she had, she abated the greediness of childhood, and moulded their very thirst to such an excellent moderation, that what they should not, that they would not.

18. And yet (as Thy handmaid told me her son) there had crept upon her a love of wine. For when (as the custom was) she was bidden by her parents to draw wine out of the hogshead, holding the vessel under the tap, before she poured the wine into the flagon, she sipped a little with the tip of her lips: for more her natural taste refused. This she did, not out of any love of drink, but out of the exuberance of youth, whereby it boils over in mirthful freaks, which in youthful spirits are wont to be kept under by the gravity of their elders. And thus by adding to that little, daily littles (*for whoso despiseth little things, shall fall by little and little*),¹ she had fallen into such a habit, as greedily to drink off her little cup brim-full almost of wine. Where was then that discreet old woman, and her earnest countermanding? Would aught avail against a secret disease, if Thy healing hand, O Lord, watched not over us? Father, mother, and governors absent, Thou present, who createdst, who callest, who also by those set over us workest something towards the salvation of our souls, what didst Thou then, O my God? how didst Thou cure her? how heal her? Didst Thou not out of another soul bring forth a hard and a sharp taunt, like a lancet out of Thy se-

¹ Eccl. xix. 1.

cret store, and with one touch remove all that foul stuff? For a maid-servant with whom she used to go to the cellar, falling to words (as it happens) with her little mistress, when alone with her, taunted her with this fault, with most bitter insult, calling her wine-bibber. With which taunt, stung to the quick, she saw the foulness of her fault, and instantly condemned and forsook it. As flattering friends pervert, so reproachful enemies often correct. Yet by what themselves purposed, not what Thou doest by them, dost Thou repay them. For she in her anger sought to vex her young mistress, not to amend her; and did it in private, either because the time and place of the quarrel so found them; or lest she herself should be blamed for discovering it thus late. But Thou, Lord, Governor of all in heaven and earth, who turnest to Thy purposes the deepest currents, and rulest the turbulence of the tide of times, didst by the very unhealthiness of one soul, heal another; lest any, when he observes this, should ascribe it to his own power, even when another, whom he wished to be reformed, is reformed through words of his.

IX. 19. Brought up thus modestly and soberly, and made subject rather by Thee to her parents, than by her parents to Thee, so soon as she was of marriageable age, being bestowed upon a husband, she served him as her lord; and did her diligence to win him unto Thee, preaching Thee unto him by her conversation; by which Thou madest her beautiful, reverently amiable, and admirable unto her husband. And she so endured the wronging of her bed, as

never to have any quarrel with her husband thereon. For she looked for Thy mercy upon him, that believing in Thee, he might be made chaste. Besides this, he was fervid, as in his affections, so in anger: but she had learnt, not to resist an angry husband, even in word. Only when he was smoothed and tranquil, and in a temper to receive it, she would give an account of her actions, if haply he had over-hastily taken offence. In a word, while many matrons, who had milder husbands, yet bore even in their faces marks of blows, and would in familiar talk blame their husbands' lives, she would blame their tongues, giving them, as in jest, earnest advice: “That from the time they heard the marriage writings read to them, they should account them as indentures, whereby they were made servants; and so, remembering their condition, ought not to set themselves up against their lords.” And when they, knowing what a choleric husband she endured, marvelled that it had never been heard, nor by any token perceived, that Patricius had beaten his wife, or that there had been any domestic difference between them, even for one day, and confidentially asked the reason, she taught them her practice above mentioned. Those wives who observed it found the benefit, and thanked her; those who observed it not, found no relief, and suffered.

20. Her mother-in-law also, at first by whisperings of evil servants incensed against her, she so overcame by kindnesses and persevering endurance and meekness, that she of her own accord discovered to

her son the meddling tongues whereby the domestic peace betwixt her and her daughter-in-law had been disturbed, asking him to correct them. Then, when in compliance with his mother, and for the well-ordering of the family, and the harmony of its members, he had with stripes corrected them, she promised the like recompense to any who, to please her, should speak ill of her daughter-in-law to her: and, none now venturing, they lived together with a remarkable sweetness of mutual kindness.

21. This great gift also Thou bestowedst, O my God, my Mercy, upon that good handmaid of Thine in whose womb Thou createdst me, that between any disagreeing and discordant parties, where she was able, she showed herself such a peacemaker, that hearing on both sides most bitter things, such as swelling and indigested choler uses to break out into, when the crudities of enmities are breathed out in sour discourses to a present friend against an absent enemy, she never would disclose aught of the one unto the other, but what might tend to their reconciliation: A small good this might appear to me, did I not to my grief know numberless persons, who through some horrible and wide-spreading contagion of sin, not only disclose to persons mutually angered things said in anger, but add, withal, things never spoken; whereas to a humane man, it ought to seem a light thing not to foment or increase ill-will by ill words, but to study withal by good words to quench it. Such was she, Thyself, her most inward Instructor, teaching her in the school of the heart.

22. Finally, her own husband, towards the very end of his earthly life, did she gain unto Thee ; nor had she to complain after he became a Christian, of what, before he was a believer, she had borne from him. She was also the servant of Thy servants ; whosoever of them knew her, did much praise and honor and love Thee in her ; for through the witness of the fruits of a holy conversation they perceived Thy presence in her heart. For she had been *the wife of one man, had requited her parents, had governed her house piously, was well reported of for good works, had brought up children,*¹ *travailing in birth of them,*² *as often as she saw them swerving from Thee.* Lastly, as though she had been mother of us all, she took care of all of Thy servants, O Lord (whom on occasion of Thy own gift Thou sufferest to speak), who, before her sleeping in Thee, lived united together having received the grace of Thy baptism, and served us, as though she had been child to us all.

X. 23. The day now approaching whereon she was to depart this life (which day Thou well knew-est, we knew not), it came to pass, Thyself, as I believe, by Thy secret ways so ordering it, that she and I stood alone, leaning in a certain window, which looked into the garden of the house where we now lay, at Ostia ; where removed from the din of men, we were recruiting from the fatigues of a long journey, for the voyage. We were discoursing then together, alone, very sweetly ; and *forgetting those*

¹ 1 Tim. v. 4, 9, 10.

² Gal. iv. 19.

*things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,*¹ we were inquiring between ourselves in the presence of the Truth, which Thou art, of what sort the eternal life of the saints was to be, *which eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, nor hath it entered into the heart of man.*² But yet unsatisfied, we gasped with the mouth of our heart, after those heavenly streams of Thy fountain, *the fountain of life*, which is *with Thee* ;³ that being bedewed thence according to our capacity, we might in some sort meditate upon so high a mystery.

24. And when our discourse was brought to that point, that we perceived the very highest delight of the earthly senses, in the very purest material light, was, in respect of the sweetness of that heavenly life, not only not worthy of comparison, but not even of mention, we, raising up ourselves with a more glowing affection towards the “Self-same,” did by degrees pass through all things bodily, even the very heaven, whence sun and moon and stars shine upon the earth ; yea, we were soaring higher yet, by inward musing, and discourse, and admiring of Thy works ; and we came to our own minds, and went beyond them, that we might arrive at that region of never-failing plenty, where *Thou feedest Israel*⁴ for ever with the food of truth, and where life is the very *Wisdom by whom all these things are made*, both what have been, and what shall be. But Wisdom is not made, but is, as she hath been, and so shall she be ever ; yea rather, to “have been,” and

¹ Phil. iii. 13.

² 1 Cor. ii. 9.

³ Ps. xxxvi. 9.

⁴ Ps. lxxx. 1.

"hereafter to be," are not in her, but only "to be," seeing she is eternal. For to "have been," and to "be hereafter," are not eternal. And while we were discoursing and panting after her, we slightly touched on her with the whole effort of our heart; and we sighed, and there we left bound *the first fruits of the Spirit*;¹ and returned to vocal expressions of our mouth, where the word spoken has beginning and end. And what is like unto Thy Word, our Lord, who *endureth in Himself* without becoming old, and *maketh all things new?*²

25. We were saying to ourselves then : If the tumult of the flesh were hushed, hushed the images of earth, and waters and air, hushed also the poles of heaven, yea the very soul hushed to herself, and by not thinking on self surmounting self, hushed all dreams and imaginary revelations, every tongue and every sign, and whatsoever exists only in transition, — if they all should be hushed, having only roused our ears to Him who made them (since if any can hear, all these say, *We made not ourselves, but He made us that abideth forever*), and He alone should then speak, not by them, but by Himself, that we might hear His Word, not through any tongue of flesh, nor angel's voice, nor sound of thunder, nor in the dark riddle of a similitude, but might hear Him whom in these things we love, might hear His very Self without these (as we two now strained ourselves to hear, and in swift thought touched on that Eternal Wisdom, which abideth over all); — could

¹ Rom. viii. 22.

² Wisd. vii. 27.

this be continued on, and other visions of kind far unlike be withdrawn, and this one should ravish, and absorb, and wrap up its beholder amid these inward joys, so that life might be for ever like that one moment of intuition which now we sighed after ; were not this the *Enter into thy Master's joy?*¹ And when shall that be ? When we shall all rise again, though we shall not all be changed ?²

26. Such things was I speaking, and even if not in this very manner, and these same words, yet, Lord, Thou knowest, that in that day when we were speaking of these things, and this world with all its delights became, as we spake, contemptible to us, my mother said, "Son, for mine own part I have no further delight in anything in this life. What I do here any longer, and to what end I am here, I know not, now that my hopes in this world are accomplished. One thing there was, for which I desired to linger for a while in this life, that I might see thee a Catholic Christian before I died. My God hath done this for me more abundantly, in that I now see thee despising earthly happiness, and become His servant. What do I here ?"

XI. 27. What answer I made her unto these things, I remember not. For scarce five days after, or not much more, she fell sick of a fever ; and in that sickness one day she fell into a swoon, and was for a while withdrawn from these visible things. We hastened round her ; but she was soon brought back to her senses ; and looking on me and my

¹ Matt. xxv. 21.

² 1 Cor. xv. 51. Vulg., etc.

brother standing by her, said to us inquiringly, "Where was I?" And then looking fixedly on us, who were amazed with grief, she said: "Here shall you bury your mother." I held my peace, and restrained weeping; but my brother spake something, wishing for her, as the happier lot, that she might die, not in a strange place, but in her own land. Whereat, with anxious look, checking him with her eyes, because he still *savored such things*, and then looking upon me, "Behold," saith she, "what he saith:" and soon after to us both, "Lay this body anywhere; let not the care for that anyway disquiet you: this only I request, that you would remember me at the Lord's altar, wherever you be."¹

¹ This incident is cited by Roman Catholic writers, in proof that the Papal custom of prayers for the dead has the authority of Augustine, and of the church of his day, in its favor. But it should be noticed, that the mother of Augustine was an eminently pious person, and had been so for years. The "remembrance" which she desired might be had of her at the sacramental table, was not, therefore, a prayer either for her regeneration, or for her deliverance from penal torment. Augustine, it is true, in the petition which he offers, entreats God to pardon the sins which his mother must have committed after her baptism. But he adds: "I believe Thou hast already done what I ask." This prayer is merely the transfer of filial affection from time to eternity. He had been in the habit of praying for the spiritual welfare, the perfect deliverance from sin, of a beloved parent, while she was upon earth. This supplication he continues after her decease, from a merely instinctive feeling, and in logical inconsistency with his own belief that she had passed beyond the need of prayers. For he was so certain of her being in bliss, that he even "thought it not fitting to solemnize that funeral with tearful lament, and groanings, as though she were unhappy or altogether dead; whereas she was neither unhappy in her death, nor altogether dead." Monica in her request, and Augustine in his compliance with it, followed the practice of the Primitive church, but not of the Papal. The prayers of the Primitive church, in which the departed believer was mentioned, were *eucharistic*, — an offering of thanks for what divine grace had wrought in

And having delivered this sentiment in what words she could, she held her peace, being exercised by her growing sickness.

28. But I, considering Thy gifts, Thou unseen God, which Thou instildest into the hearts of Thy faithful ones, whence wondrous fruits do spring, did rejoice and give thanks to Thee, recalling what I before knew, how careful and anxious she had ever been, as to her place of burial, which she had provided and prepared for herself by the body of her husband. For because they had lived in great harmony together, she also wished (so little can the human mind embrace things divine) to have this addition to that happiness, and to have it remembered among men, that after her pilgrimage beyond the seas, what was earthly of this united pair had been permitted to be united beneath the same earth. But when this vanity, through the fulness of Thy goodness, first began to cease in her heart, I knew not,

nim. The churches, for example, "assembled upon the anniversary of the death of a martyr, at his tomb. The narrative of his sufferings was read, he was particularly mentioned in the public prayers, and the Lord's Supper was administered, in the vivid consciousness of the enduring communion between the living believer, and those who sleep in Jesus. The church in Smyrna, in the reign of Aurelius, specifies as the true end in celebrating these anniversaries, that it should contribute to the commemoration of those who had finished their course, and to train and prepare those that shall come after. In answer to the objection, that such remembrance was idolatrous, they say: Christ we worship as the Son of God; but the martyrs we deservedly love as the *disciples* and *imitators* of our Lord, of whom we would become associates and fellow-disciples." (Eusebius, IV. 15. Guericke, § 38.) The custom, however, was liable to abuse, and prepared the way for the distinctively Papal custom, of prayers for the salvation and repose of the souls of the dead. But this result dates later than the fourth century.—ED.

and rejoiced that it was so ; though indeed in that discourse in the window, when she said, "What do I here any longer?" there appeared no desire of dying in her own country. I heard afterwards, also, that while we were at Ostia, she with a maternal confidence, when I was absent, one day discoursed with certain of my friends about the contempt of this life, and the blessing of death ; and when they were amazed at such courage which Thou hadst given to a woman, and asked, "Whether she were not afraid to leave her body so far from her own city ?" she replied, "Nothing is far to God ; nor was it to be feared lest at the end of the world, He should not recognize whence He were to raise me up." On the ninth day then of her sickness, and the fifty-sixth year of her age, and the three and thirtieth of mine, was that religious and holy soul freed from the body.

XII. 29. I closed her eyes ; and there flowed withal a mighty sorrow into my heart, which was overflowing into tears ; mine eyes at the same time, by the violent command of my mind, drank up their fountain wholly dry ; and woe was me in such a strife ! But when she breathed her last, the boy Adelodatus burst out into a loud lament ; then, checked by us all, held his peace. In like manner, also, a childish feeling in me, which was finding its vent in weeping, through the juvenile voice of my heart, was checked and silenced. For we thought it not fitting to solemnize that funeral with tearful lament, and groanings, as though she were unhappy, or altogether dead ; whereas she was neither unhappy in

her death, nor altogether dead. Of this we were assured on good grounds, the testimony of her good conversation and her *faith unfeigned*.

30. What then was it which did grievously pain me within, but a fresh wound wrought through the sudden wrench of our most sweet and dear custom of living together? I joyed indeed in one testimony of her last sickness, that mingling her endearments with my acts of duty, she called me "dutiful," and mentioned, with great affection of love, that she never had heard any harsh or reproachful sound uttered by my mouth against her. But yet, O my God, Who madest us, what comparison is there betwixt that honor that I paid to her, and her slavery for me? Being then deprived of so great comfort in her, my soul was wounded, and that life rent asunder as it were, which, of hers and mine together, had been made but one.

31. The boy then being stilled from weeping, Eudius took up the Psalter, and began to sing the Psalm, *I will sing of mercy and judgment to Thee, O Lord*,¹ the whole house answering. But hearing what we were doing, many brethren and religious women came together; and whilst they whose office it was made ready for the burial, as the manner is, I (in another part of the house, where I might properly), together with those who thought not fit to leave me, discoursed upon something fitting the time; and by this balm of truth, I assuaged that torment, known to Thee, and which they listening in-

¹ Psalm ci.

tently, knew not, conceiving me to be without all sense of sorrow. But in Thy ears, where none of them heard, I chided the weakness of my feelings, and restrained my flood of grief, and it gave way a little unto me ; but again it came, as with a tide, yet not so as to burst out into tears, nor to a change of countenance ; still I knew what I was keeping down in my heart. And being very much displeased that these human things had such power over me, which in the due order and appointment of our natural condition must needs come to pass, with a new grief I grieved for my grief, and was thus worn by a double sorrow.

32. And behold, the corpse was carried to the burial ; we went and returned without tears. For neither in those prayers which we poured forth unto Thee, when the sacrifice of our ransom was offered for her (the corpse being by the grave's side, as the manner there is, previous to its being laid therein), did I weep even during those prayers ; yet was I the whole day in secret heavily sad, and with troubled mind prayed Thee, as I could, to heal my sorrow ; yet Thou didst not ; impressing, I believe, upon my memory by this one instance, how strong is the bond of all habit, even upon a soul, which now feeds upon no deceiving word. It seemed also good to me to go and bathe, having heard that the bath had its name (balneum) from the Greek βαλανεῖον, for that it drives sadness from the mind. And this also I confess unto Thy mercy, *Father of the fatherless*,¹ that

¹ Psalm lxviii. 5.

I bathed, and was the same as before I bathed. For the bitterness of sorrow could not be sweated out of my heart. Then I slept, and woke up again, and found my grief not a little softened; and as I was alone in my bed, I remembered those true verses of Thy Ambrose. For Thou art the

Maker of all, the Lord,
And Ruler of the height;
Who, robing day in light, hast poured
Soft slumbers o'er the night,

That to our limbs the power
Of toil may be renewed,
And hearts be raised that sink and cower,
And sorrows be subdued.

33. And then by little and little I recovered my former thoughts of Thy handmaid, her holy conversation towards Thee, her holy tenderness and observance towards us, whereof I was suddenly deprived; and I was minded to weep in Thy sight, for her and for myself, in her behalf and in my own. And I gave way to the tears which I before restrained, to overflow as much as they desired; reposing my heart upon them; and it found rest in them, for it was in Thy ears, not in those of man, who would have scornfully interpreted my weeping. And now, Lord, in writing I confess it unto Thee. Read it who will, and interpret it how he will; and if he finds sin therein, that I wept my mother for a small portion of an hour (the mother who for the time was dead to mine eyes, who had for many years wept for me

that I might live in Thine eyes), let him not deride me ; but rather, if he be one of large charity, let him weep himself for my sins unto Thee, the father of all the brethren of Thy Christ.

XIII. 34. But now, with a heart cured of that wound, wherein it might seem blamable for an earthly feeling, I pour out unto Thee, our God, in behalf of that Thy handmaid, a far different kind of tears, flowing from a spirit shaken by the thoughts of the dangers of every soul *that dieth in Adam.*¹ And although she, having been quickened in Christ, even before her release from the flesh had lived to the praise of Thy name for her faith and conversation ; yet dare I not say that, from the time that Thou regeneratedst her by baptism, no word issued from her mouth against Thy commandment.² Thy Son, the Truth, hath said, *Whosoever shall say unto his brother, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.*³ And woe be even unto the commendable life of men, if, laying aside mercy, Thou shouldest examine it. But because Thou art not extreme in inquiring after sins, we confidently hope to find some place with Thee. But whosoever reckons up his real merits to Thee, what reckons he up to Thee but Thine own gifts ? Oh that men would know themselves to be men ! and that he that glorieth, would glory in the Lord.⁴

35. I therefore, O my Praise and my Life, God of my heart, laying aside for awhile her good deeds, for which I give thanks to Thee with joy, do now be-

¹ 1 Cor. xv. 22.

² Matt. xii. 36.

³ Matt. v. 22.

⁴ 2 Cor. x. 17.

seech Thee for the sins of my mother. Hearken unto me, I entreat Thee, by the Medicine of our wounds, Who hung upon the tree, and now *sitting at Thy right hand, maketh intercession to Thee for us.*¹ I know that she dealt mercifully, and from her heart *forgave her debtors their debts;*² do Thou also *forgive her debts,*² whatever she may have contracted in so many years, since the water of salvation. Forgive her, Lord, forgive, I beseech Thee; *enter not into judgment with her.*³ Let Thy mercy be exalted above Thy justice,⁴ since Thy words are true, and *Thou hast promised mercy unto the merciful;*⁵ which thou gavest them to be, O Thou who *wilt have mercy on whom Thou wilt have mercy,* and *wilt have compassion on whom Thou hast had compassion.*⁶

36. And I believe Thou hast already done what I ask; but *accept, O Lord, the free-will offerings of my mouth.*⁷ For she, the day of her dissolution now at hand, took no thought to have her body sumptuously wound up, or embalmed with spices; nor desired she a choice monument, or to be buried in her own land. These things she enjoined us not, but desired only to have her name commemorated at Thy altar, which she had served without intermission of one day: whence she knew that holy sacrifice to be dispensed, by which the *handwriting that was against us is blotted out;*⁸ through which the enemy was tri-

¹ Rom. viii. 34.

⁴ James ii. 13.

⁷ Ps. cxix. 108.

² Matt. xviii. 35, vi. 12.

⁵ Matt. v. 7.

⁸ Col. ii. 14.

³ Ps. cxliii. 2.

⁶ Rom. ix. 15.

umphed over, who, summing up our offences, and seeking what to lay to our charge, *found nothing in Him*,¹ in whom we conquer. Who shall restore to Him His innocent blood ? Who repay Him the price wherewith He bought us, and so take us from Him? Unto the sacrament of our ransom, Thy handmaid bound her soul by the bond of faith. Let none sever her from Thy protection ; let neither *the lion nor the dragon*² interpose himself by force or fraud. For she will not answer that she owes nothing, lest she be convicted and seized by the crafty accuser ; but she will answer, that *her sins are forgiven* her by Him, to whom none can repay that price, which He, who owed nothing, paid for us.

37. May she rest, then, in peace, with the only husband she ever had ; whom she obeyed, *with patience bringing forth fruit*³ unto Thee, that she might win him also unto Thee. And inspire, O Lord my God, inspire Thy servants my brethren, Thy sons my masters, whom with voice and heart and pen I serve, that so many as shall read these Confessions, may at Thy altar remember Monica Thy handmaid, with Patricius her husband, by whose bodies Thou broughtest me into this life, I know not how. May they with devout affection remember my parents in this transitory light, who are my brethren under Thee our Father in our Catholic Mother, and my fellow-citizens in that eternal Jerusalem which Thy pilgrim people sigh after from their exodus, even until their return

¹ John xiv. 30.

² Psalm xcii. 13.

³ Luke viii. 15.

thither. That so, my mother's last request of me may, through my confessions, more than through my prayers, be, through the prayers of many, more abundantly fulfilled to her.

THE TENTH BOOK.

HAVING IN THE FORMER BOOKS SPOKEN OF HIMSELF BEFORE HIS RECEIVING THE RITE OF BAPTISM, IN THIS AUGUSTINE CONFESSES WHAT HE THEN WAS—BUT FIRST, HE INQUIRES BY WHAT FACULTY WE CAN KNOW GOD AT ALL, WHENCE HE ENLARGES ON THE MYSTERIOUS CHARACTER OF THE MEMORY, WHEREIN GOD, BEING MADE KNOWN, DWELLS, BUT WHICH COULD NOT DISCOVER HIM—THEN HE EXAMINES HIS OWN TRIALS UNDER THE TRIPLE DIVISION OF TEMPTATION, “LUST OF THE FLESH, LUST OF THE EYES, AND PRIDE”—WHAT CHRISTIAN CONTINENCY PRESCRIBES AS TO EACH —CHRIST THE ONLY MEDIATOR, WHO HEALS AND WILL HEAL ALL INFIRMITIES.

I. 1. Let me know Thee, O Lord, who knowest me; *let me know Thee as I am known.*¹ Power of my soul, enter into it, and fit it for Thee, that Thou mayest have and hold it *without spot or wrinkle.*² This is my hope, *therefore do I speak;*³ and in this hope do I rejoice, when I rejoice healthfully. Other things of this life are the less to be sorrowed for, the more they are sorrowed for; and the more to be sorrowed for, the less men sorrow for them. For behold, Thou *lovest the truth,*⁴ and *he that doeth it, cometh to the light.*⁵ This would I do in my heart before Thee in confession; and in my writing, before many witnesses.

¹ 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

³ Ps. cxvi. 10.

⁵ John iii. 20.

² Eph. v. 27.

⁴ Ps. li. 6.

II. 2. And from Thee, O Lord, *unto whose eyes*¹ the abyss of man's conscience is naked, what could be hidden in me even though I would not confess it? I might hide Thee from me, not me from Thee. But now, since my groaning is witness that I am displeased with myself, Thou shinest out, and art pleasing, and beloved, and longed for; that I may be ashamed of myself, and renounce myself, and choose Thee, and neither please Thee nor myself but in Thee. To Thee therefore, O Lord, am I open, whatever I am; and for what reason I confess unto Thee, I have said. Nor do I confess with words and sounds of the flesh, but with the words of my soul, and the cry of the thought which Thy ear knoweth. For when I am evil, then to confess to Thee, is nothing else than to be displeased with myself; but when holy, nothing else than to ascribe glory to Thee: because Thou, O Lord, *blessest the godly*,² but first Thou *justifiest him when ungodly*.³ My confession then, O my God, in Thy sight, is made silently, and not silently. For in sound, it is silent: in affection, it cries aloud. For neither do I utter anything right unto men, which Thou hast not before heard from me; nor dost Thou hear any such thing from me, which Thou hast not first said unto me.

III. 3. But what have I to do with men, that they should hear my confessions,—as if they could *heal all my infirmities*,⁴—a race curious to know the lives of others, slothful to amend their own? Why seek they to hear from me what I am, who will not

¹ Heb. iv. 13.

² Ps. v. 12.

³ Rom. iv. 5.

⁴ Ps. ciii. 3.

hear from Thee what themselves are? And how know they, when from myself they hear of myself, whether I say true; seeing *no man knows what is in man, but the spirit of man which is in him?*¹ But if they hear from Thee of themselves, they cannot say, "The Lord lieth." For what is it to hear from Thee of themselves, but to know themselves? and who knoweth and saith, "It is false," unless himself lieth? But because *charity believeth all things*² (that is, among those whom knitting unto itself it maketh one), I also, O Lord, will in such wise confess unto Thee, that men may hear, to whom I cannot demonstrate whether I confess truly; yet they believe me, whose ears charity openeth unto me.

4. But do Thou, my inmost Physician, make plain unto me what object I may gain by doing it. For the confessions of my past sins, which Thou hast *forgiven and covered*,³ that Thou mightest bless me in Thee, changing my soul by faith and Thy sacrament, when read and heard, stir up the heart, that it sleep not in despair and say "I cannot," but awake in the love of Thy mercy and the sweetness of Thy grace, whereby whoso is weak is strong, when by it he becomes conscious of his own weakness. And the good delight to hear of the past evils of such as are now freed from them, not because they are evils, but because they have been, and are not. With what object, then, O Lord my God, to whom my conscience daily confesseth, trusting more in the hope of Thy mercy than in her own innocence,—with what

¹ 1 Cor. ii. 11.

² 1 Cor. xiii. 7.

³ Ps. xxxii. 1

object, I pray, do I by this book confess to men also in Thy presence what I now am, not what I have been? For that other object, the knowledge of what I have been, I have spoken of and attained. But what I now am, at the very time of making these confessions, divers desire to know, who have or have not known me, who have heard from me or of me; but their ear is not at my heart, where I am, whatever I am. They wish then to hear me confess what I am within; whether neither their eye, nor ear, nor understanding, can reach; they wish it, as ready to believe,—but will they know? For charity, whereby they are good, telleth them, that in my confessions I lie not; and she in them, believeth me.

IV. 5. But for what object would they hear this? Do they desire to joy with me, when they hear how near, by Thy gift, I approach unto Thee? and to pray for me, when they shall hear how much I am held back by my own weight? To such will I discover myself. For it is no mean object, O Lord my God, that *by many, thanks should be given to Thee on our behalf*,¹ and Thou be by many intreated for us. Let the brotherly mind love in me what Thou teachest is to be loved, and lament what Thou teachest is to be lamented. Let a brotherly, not an alien mind do this,—not that of the *strange children, whose mouth talketh of vanity, and their right hand is a hand of iniquity*,² but that brotherly mind, which, when it approveth, rejoiceth for me, and when it disapproveth, is sorry for me; because, whether it ap-

proveth or disapproveth, it loveth me. To such will I discover myself: they will breathe freely at my good deeds, sigh for my ill. My good deeds are Thine appointments, and Thy gifts; my evil ones are my offences, and Thy judgments. Let them breathe freely at the one, sigh at the other; and let hymns and weeping go up into Thy sight, out of the hearts of my brethren, Thy *censers*.¹ And do Thou, O Lord, be pleased with the incense of Thy holy temple, *have mercy upon me according to Thy great mercy for Thine own name's sake*;² and no ways forsaking what Thou hast begun, perfect my imperfections.

6. This is the object of my confessions of what I am, not of what I have been,—to confess this, not before Thee only, in a secret *exultation with trembling*,³ and secret sorrow with hope, but in the ears also of the believing sons of men, sharers of my joy, and partners of my mortality, my fellow-citizens, and fellow-pilgrims, who are gone before, or are to follow on, companions of my way. These are Thy servants, my brethren, whom Thou willest to be Thy sons; my masters, whom Thou commandest me to serve, if I would live with Thee, of Thee. But this Thy Word were little did it only command by speaking, and not go before in performing. This, then, I do in deed and word; this I do *under Thy wings*; in over great peril, were not my soul subdued unto Thee under Thy wings, and my infirmity known unto Thee. I am a little one, but my Father ever liveth, and my Guardian is *sufficient for me*. For He is the same

¹ Rev. viii. 3.

² Ps.. ii. 1.

³ Ps. ii. 11.

who begat me, and defends me; and Thou Thyself art all my good; Thou, Almighty, who art with me, yea, before I am with Thee. To such, then, whom Thou commandest me to serve, will I discover, not what I have been, but what I now am and what I still am. *But neither do I judge myself.*¹ Thus therefore I would be heard.

V. 7. For *Thou, Lord, dost judge me:*² because, although *no man knoweth the things of a man, but the spirit of a man which is in him,* yet is there something of man, which not even *the spirit of man that is in him, itself knoweth.*³ But Thou, Lord, knowest all of him, Who hast made him. Yet I, though in Thy sight I despise myself, and account myself *dust and ashes,* know something of Thee, which I know not of myself. And, truly, *now we see through a glass darkly, not face to face*⁴ as yet. So long therefore as *I be absent from Thee,*⁵ I am more present with myself than with Thee; and yet I know Thee that Thou art in no ways temptable; but I know not what temptations I can resist, and what ones I cannot. And there is hope, because *Thou art faithful, Who will not suffer us to be tempted above that we are able; but wilt with the temptation also make a way to escape, that we may be able to bear it.*⁶ I will confess then what I know of myself, I will confess also what I know not of myself. And that because what I do know of myself, I know by Thy shining upon me; and what I know not of

¹ 1 Cor. iv. 3.

² 1 Cor. iv. 3.

³ 1 Cor. ii. 11.

⁴ 1 Cor. xiii. 12.

⁵ 2 Cor. v. 6.

⁶ 1 Cor. x. 3.

myself, so long know I it not, until *my darkness be made as the noonday*¹ in Thy countenance.

VI. 8. Not with doubting, but with assured consciousness, do I love Thee, Lord. Thou hast smitten my heart with Thy word, and I loved Thee. Yea, also *heaven, and earth, and all that therein is*, behold, on every side they bid me love Thee ; nor cease to say so unto all, *that they may be without excuse*.— But more deeply *wilt Thou have mercy on whom Thou wilt have mercy, and wilt have compassion on whom thou hast had compassion*:² else in deaf ears do the heaven and the earth speak Thy praises. But what do I love, when I love Thee ? not the beauty of bodies, nor the fair harmony of time, nor the brightness of the light so gladsome to our eyes, nor sweet melodies of varied songs, nor the fragrant smell of flowers and ointments and spices, not manna and honey, not limbs acceptable to the embracements of flesh. None of these do I love, when I love my God ; and yet I love a kind of light, a kind of melody, a kind of fragrance, a kind of meat, and a kind of embracement, when I love my God,— the light, the melody, the fragrance, the meat, the embracement of the inner man : where there shineth unto my soul, what space cannot contain, and there soundeth, what time beareth not away, and there smelleth, what breathing disperseth not, and there tasteth, what eating diminisheth not, and there clingeth, what satiety divorceeth not. This is it which I love when I love my God.

¹ Isa. lviii. 10.

² Rom. i. 20, ix. 15.

9. And what is this? I asked the earth, and it answered me, "I am not He;" and whatsoever are in it confessed the same. I asked the sea and the deeps, and the living creeping things, and they answered, "We are not thy God, seek above us." I asked the moving air; and the whole air with his inhabitants answered, "Anaximenes was deceived, I am not God." I asked the heavens, sun, moon, stars, "Nor (say they) are we the God whom thou seekest." And I replied unto all the things which encompass the door of my flesh: "Ye have told me of my God, that ye are not He; tell me something of Him." And they cried out with a loud voice, "He made us." My questioning them, was my thoughts on them: and their form of beauty gave the answer. And I turned myself unto myself, and said to myself, "Who art thou?" And I answered, "A man." And behold, in me there present themselves to me soul and body, one without, the other within. By which of these ought I to seek my God? I had sought Him in the body from earth to heaven, so far as I could send messengers, the beams of mine eyes. But the better is the inner, for to it as presiding and judging, all the bodily messengers reported the answers of heaven and earth, and all things therein, who said, "We are not God, but He made us." These things did my inner man know by the ministry of the outer: I, the inner, knew them; I, the mind, through the senses of my body. I asked the whole frame of the world about my God; and it answered me, "I am not He, but He made me."

10. Is not this corporeal figure apparent to all whose senses are perfect? why then speaks it not the same to all? Animals small and great see it, but they cannot interrogate it: because no reason is set over their senses to judge on what they report. But men can interrogate, so that *the invisible things of God are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made*;¹ only, that by love of them, they are made subject unto them, and subjects cannot judge. Things do not answer, unless the questioners can judge: they do not, however, change their voice (*i. e.*, their appearance), so as to appear one way to this man, another way to that; but appearing the same way to both, are dumb to this, speak to that; yea, rather speak to all; but they only understand, who compare the voice received from without, with the truth within. For truth saith unto me, "Neither heaven, nor earth, nor any other body, is thy God." And the very nature of created things saith to him that seeth them: "They are a mass; a mass is less in a part than in the whole." Now, O my soul (to thee I speak), thou art my better part: for thou quickenest the mass of my body, giving it life, which no body can give to a body: but thy God is even unto thee the Life of thy life.

VII. 11. What then do I love, when I love my God? Who is He so high above my soul? Yet by my very soul will I ascend to Him. I will pass beyond that vital power whereby I am united to my body, filling its whole frame with life. Nor can I by

that power find my God ; for so, *horse and mule that have no understanding*¹ might find Him ; seeing it is the same power, whereby even their bodies live. But another power there is, not that only whereby I animate (vivifico), but that too whereby I imbue with sense (sensifico), my flesh which the Lord hath framed for me : commanding the eye not to hear, and the ear not to see ; but the eye, to see, and the ear, to hear ; and to the other senses severally, what is to each their own peculiar seats and offices ; which, being divers, I the one mind, do through them act. I will pass beyond this sensational power also ; for this also have the horse and mule, for they also perceive through the body.

VIII. 12. I will pass then beyond this power of my nature also, rising by degrees unto Him, who made me. And I come to the fields and spacious palaces of my memory,² where are the treasures of innumerable images, brought into it from things of all sorts, perceived by the senses. There is stored up whatsoever besides we think, either by enlarging or diminishing, or any other way varying those things which the sense hath come to ; and whatever else hath been committed and laid up, which forgetfulness hath not yet swallowed up and buried. When

¹ Psalm xxxii. 9.

² By "memory," in this analysis of the mental operations, which follows, Augustine includes what goes under the name of "reflective consciousness," in the nomenclature of modern philosophy; and in many places his meaning will be clearer, if the term "consciousness" or "self-consciousness," and sometimes the word "mind" itself, be substituted for "memory." — ED.

I enter there, I require what I will to be brought forth, and something instantly comes ; others must be longer sought after, which are fetched, as it were, out of some inner receptacle ; others rush out in troops, and while one thing is desired and required, they start forth, as who should say, “Is it perchance I ?” These I drive away with the hand of my heart, from the face of my remembrance ; until what I wish for be unveiled, and appear in sight, out of its secret place. Other things come up readily, in unbroken order, as they are called for ; those in front making way for the following ; and as they make way, they are hidden from sight, ready to come, when I will. All which takes place when I relate a thing *memoriter.*

13. And all things are preserved distinctly and under general heads, each having entered by its own avenue : as light, and all colors and forms of bodies, by the eyes ; by the ears, all sorts of sounds ; all smells, by the avenue of the nostrils ; all tastes, by the mouth ; and by the sensation of the whole body, what is hard or soft, hot or cold, smooth or rugged, heavy or light, either outwardly or inwardly to the body. All these doth that great harbor of the memory receive in her numberless secret and inexpressible windings, to be forthcoming, and brought out at need ; each entering in by his own gate, and there laid up. Nor yet do the things themselves enter in ; only the images of the things perceived are there in readiness, for thought to recall. But how these images are formed, who can tell, though it doth plainly

appear by which sense each hath been brought in and stored up? For even while I dwell in darkness and silence, in my memory I can produce colors, if I will, and discern betwixt black and white, and what others I will: nor do sounds break in, and disturb the image drawn in by my eyes, which I am reviewing, though they also are there; lying dormant, and laid up, as it were, apart. For these too I call for, and forthwith they appear. And though my tongue be still, and my throat mute, I can sing as much as I will; nor do those images of colors, which notwithstanding be there, intrude themselves and interrupt, when another store is called for, which flowed in by the ears. So the other things, piled in and up by the other senses, I recall at my pleasure. Yea, I discriminate the breath of lilies from violets, though smelling nothing; and I prefer honey to sweet wine, smooth before rugged, at the time neither tasting, nor handling, but remembering only.

14. These things do I within, in that vast court of my memory. For there, are present with me, heaven, earth, sea, and whatever I could think on therein, besides what I have forgotten. There, also, meet I with myself, and recall myself, and when, where, and what I have done, and under what feelings. There, is all which I remember, either on my own experience, or others' testimony. Out of the same store do I myself continually combine with the past fresh likenesses of things, which I have experienced, have believed: and thence again infer future actions, events and hopes, and all these again I .

reflect on, as present. “I will do this or that,” say I to myself, in that great receptacle of my mind, stored with the images of things so many and so great, “and this or that will follow.” “Oh that this or that might be!” “God avert this or that!” So speak I to myself: and when I speak, the images of all I speak of are present, out of the same treasury of memory; nor would I speak of any thereof, were the images wanting.

15. Great is this force of memory, excessive great, O my God! a large and boundless chamber! who ever sounded the bottom thereof? yet is this a power of mine, and belongs unto my nature; nor do I myself comprehend all that I am. Therefore is the mind too strait to contain itself. And where should that be, which it containeth not of itself? Is it without it, and not within? how then doth it not comprehend itself? A wonderful admiration surprises me, amazement seizes me upon this. And men go abroad to admire the heights of mountains, the mighty billows of the sea, the broad tides of rivers, the compass of the ocean, and the circuits of the stars, and pass themselves by; nor wonder, that when I spake of all these things, I did not see them with mine eyes, yet could not have spoken of them, unless I then actually saw the mountains, billows, rivers, stars, which I had seen, and that ocean which I believe to be, inwardly in my memory, and that, too, with the same vast spaces between, as if I saw them abroad. Yet did not I by seeing draw them into myself, when with mine eyes I actually beheld them;

nor are they themselves with me, but their images only. And I know by what sense of the body each was impressed upon me.

IX. 16. Yet not these alone does the unmeasurable capacity of my memory retain. Here, also, are all those things that have been learnt from the liberal sciences, and have not yet fallen out of the mind; removed as it were to some inner place, which is yet no place: nor are they the images thereof, but the very things themselves. For, what literature is, what the art of disputing, how many kinds of logical questions there be,— whatsoever of these things I know, does not exist in my memory, in such manner as that I have taken in the image and left out the thing, or that it should have sounded and passed away like a voice fixed on the ear by that impress whereby it might be recalled, as if it sounded, when it no longer sounded; or as a smell while it passes and evaporates into air affects the sense of smell, whence it conveys into the memory an image of itself, which remembering, we renew; or as meat, which verily in the belly hath now no taste, and yet in the memory still in a manner tasteth; or as anything which the body by touch perceiveth, and which when removed from us, the memory still conceives. For such things as these latter are not themselves transmitted into the memory, but their images only are with an admirable swiftness caught up, and stored as it were in wondrous cabinets, and thence wonderfully by the act of remembering, brought forth.

X. 17. But now when I hear that there be three kinds of questions: "Whether the thing be? what it is? of what kind it is?" I do indeed hold the images of the sounds of which those words be composed, and know that those sounds passed with a noise through the air, and now are not. But the things themselves which are signified by those sounds, I never reached with any sense of my body, nor ever discerned them otherwise than in my mind; yet in my memory have I laid up not their images, but themselves. Which how they entered into me, let them say if they can; for I have gone over all the avenues of my flesh, but cannot find any by which they entered. For the eyes say, "If those images were colored, we reported of them." The ears say, "If they sound, we gave knowledge of them." The nostrils say, "If they smell, they passed by us." The taste says, "Unless they have a savor, ask me not." The touch says, "If it have not size, I handled it not; if I handled it not, I gave no notice of it." Whence and how entered these things into my memory? I know not how. For when I learned them, I gave not credit to another man's mind, but recognized them in mine; and approving them for true, I commended them to it, laying them up as it were, whence I might bring them forth when I willed. In my heart then they were, even before I learned them, but in my memory they were not. Where then? or wherefore, when they were spoken, did I acknowledge them, and said, "So is it, it is true," unless that they were already in the memory,

but so thrown back and buried as it were in deeper recesses, that had not the suggestion of another drawn them forth, I had perchance been unable to conceive of them ?

XI. 18. Wherefore we find, that to learn these things whereof we imbibe not the images by our senses, but perceive them within by themselves, as they are, without images, is nothing else but by reflection to bring together those things which the memory did before contain at random and unarranged, and, by marking, to take care that they be laid up at hand as it were in that same memory, where before they lay unknown, scattered and neglected, and so readily occur to the mind, familiarized to them. And how many things of this kind does my memory carry which have been already found out, and, as I said, placed as it were at hand, which we are said to have learned and come to know ; which were I for some short space of time to cease to call to mind, they are again so buried, and glide back, as it were, into the deeper recesses, that they must again, as if new, be thought out thence, for other abode they have none : but they must be drawn together again, that they may be known ; that is to say, they must as it were be collected together from their dispersion : whence the word “cognition” is derived. For *cogo* (collect) and *cogito* (re-collect) have the same relation to each other as *ago* and *agito, facio* and *factito*. But the mind bath appropriated to itself this word (cognition), so that, not what is “collected” anyhow, but what is “re-collected,”—*i. e.*,

brought together, in the mind,—is properly said to be cogitated, or thought upon.

XII. 19. The memory containeth, also, innumerable reasons and laws of numbers and dimensions, none of which hath any bodily sense impressed ; seeing they have neither color, nor sound, nor taste, nor smell, nor touch. I have heard the sound of the words whereby when discussed they are denoted : but the sounds are other than the things. For the sounds are other in Greek than in Latin : but the things are neither Greek, nor Latin, nor any other language. I have seen the lines of architects, the very finest, like a spider's thread ; but those reasons and laws, above mentioned, are still different ; they are not the images of those lines which the eye of flesh showed me : he knoweth them, whosoever without any conception whatsoever of a body, recognizes them within himself. I have perceived also the numbers with which we number all the senses of my body ; but those invisible numbers wherewith we number, are different from the visible things numbered ; nor are they the images of these, and therefore they absolutely are. Let him who seeth them not, deride me for saying these things, and I will pity him, while he derides me.

XIII. 20. All these things I remember, and how I learnt them I remember. Many things also most falsely objected against them have I heard, and remember ; which though they be false, yet is it not false that I remember them ; and I remember also that I have discerned betwixt those truths and these

falsehoods objected to them. And I perceive that the present discerning of these things is different from remembering that I oftentimes discerned them, when I often thought upon them. I remember then to have often understood these things; and what I now discern and understand, I lay up in my memory, that hereafter I may remember that I understood it now. So then I remember also to have remembered; as, if hereafter I shall call to remembrance that I have now been able to remember these things, by the force of memory shall I call it to remembrance.

XIV. 21. The same memory contains also the affections of my mind, not in the same manner that my mind itself contains them, when it feels them; but far otherwise, according to a power of its own. For without rejoicing I remember myself to have joyed; and without sorrow do I recollect my past sorrow. And that I once feared, I review without fear; and without desire call to mind a past desire. Sometimes, on the contrary, with joy do I remember my fore-past sorrow, and with sorrow, joy. Which is not wonderful, as to the body; for mind is one thing, body another. If I therefore with joy remember some past pain of the body, it is not so wonderful. But now seeing this very memory itself is mind (for when we give a thing in charge, to be kept in memory, we say, "See that you keep it in mind;" and when we forget, we say, "It did not come to my mind," and, "It slipped out of my mind," calling the memory itself the mind);—this being so, how is it,

that when with joy I remember my past sorrow, the mind hath joy, the memory hath sorrow; the mind upon the joyfulness which is in it, is joyful, yet the memory upon the sadness which is in it, is not sad? Does the memory perchance not belong to the mind? Who will say so? The memory then is, as it were, the belly of the mind, and joy and sadness, like sweet and bitter food; which, when committed to the memory, are, as it were, passed into the belly, where they may be stowed, but cannot taste. Ridiculous it is to imagine these to be alike; and yet are they not utterly unlike.

22. But, behold, out of my memory I bring it, when I say there be four perturbations of the mind: desire, joy, fear, sorrow; and whatsoever I can dispute thereon, by dividing each into its subordinate species, and by defining it, in my memory find I what to say, and thence do I bring it: yet am I not disturbed by any of these perturbations, when by calling them to mind, I remember them; yea, and before I recalled and brought them back, they were there; and therefore could they, by recollection, thence be brought. Perchance, then, as meat is by chewing the cud brought up out of the belly, so by recollection, these out of the memory. Why then does not the disputer, thus recollecting, taste in the mouth of his musing the sweetness of joy, or the bitterness of sorrow? Is the comparison unlike in this respect, because not in all respects like? For who would willingly speak thereof, if, so oft as we name grief or fear, we should be compelled to be sad or

fearful? And yet could we not speak of them, did we not find in our memory, not only the sounds of the names according to the images impressed by the senses of the body, but notions of the very things themselves which we never received by any avenue of the body, but which the mind itself perceiving by the experience of its own passions, committed to the memory, or the memory of itself retained, without being committed unto it.

XV. 23. But whether by images or no, who can readily say? Thus, I name a stone, I name the sun, the things themselves not being present to my senses, but their images to my memory. I name a bodily pain, yet it is not present with me, when nothing aches: yet unless its image were present in my memory, I should not know what to say thereof, nor in discoursing discern pain from pleasure. I name bodily health; being sound in body, the thing itself is present with me; yet, unless its image also were present in my memory, I could by no means recall what the sound of this name should signify. Nor would the sick, when health were named, recognize what were spoken, unless the same image were by the force of memory retained, although the thing itself were absent from the body. I name numbers whereby we number; and not their images, but themselves are present in my memory. I name the image of the sun, and that image is present in my memory. For I recall not the image of its image, but the image itself is present to me, calling it to mind. I name memory, and I recognize what I name. And where do I rec-

ognize it, but in the memory itself? Is it also present to itself by its image, and not by itself?

XVI. 24. How is it, when I name forgetfulness, and withal recognize what I name? whence should I recognize it, did I not remember it? I speak not of the sound of the name, but of the thing which it signifies: which if I had forgotten, I could not recognize what that sound signifies. When then I remember memory, memory itself is, through itself, present with itself: but when I remember forgetfulness, there are present both memory and forgetfulness; memory whereby I remember, forgetfulness which I remember. But what is forgetfulness, but the privation of memory? How then is it present that I remember it, since when present I cannot remember? But if what we remember we hold it in memory, yet, unless we did remember forgetfulness, we could never, at the hearing of the name, recognize the thing thereby signified, then forgetfulness is retained by memory. Present then it is, that we forget not, and being so, we forget. It is to be understood from this, that forgetfulness, when we remember it, is not present to the memory by itself, but by its image: because if it were present by itself, it would not cause us to remember, but to forget. Who now shall search out this? who shall comprehend how it is?

25 Lord, I, truly, toil therein, yea and toil in myself; I am become a heavy soil requiring over-much *sweat of the brow*. For we are not now searching out the regions of heaven, or measuring the distances of the stars, or inquiring the balanceings of the earth.

It is I myself who remember; I, the mind. It is not so wonderful, if what I myself am not, be far from me. But what is nearer to me than myself? And lo! the force of mine own memory is not understood by me; though I cannot so much as name myself without it. For what shall I say, when it is clear to me that I remember forgetfulness? Shall I say that that is not in my memory, which I remember? or shall I say that forgetfulness is for this purpose in my memory, that I might not forget? Both were most absurd. What third way is there? How can I say that the image of forgetfulness is retained by my memory, not forgetfulness itself, when I remember it? How could I say this either, seeing that when the image of anything is impressed on the memory, the thing itself must needs be first present, whence that image may be impressed? For thns do I remember Carthage, thus all places where I have been, thus men's faces whom I have seen, and things reported by the other senses; thus the health.or sickness of the body. For when these things were present, my memory received from them images, which, being present with me, I might look on and bring back in my mind, when I remembered them in their absence. If, then, this forgetfulness is retained in the memory through its image, not through itself, then plainly itself was once present, that its image might be taken. But when it was present, how did it write its image in the memory, seeing that forgetfulness by its presence effaces even what it finds already noted? And yet, in whatever way, although that way be past

conceiving and explaining, yet certain am I that I remember forgetfulness itself also, whereby what we remember is effaced.

XVII. 26. Great is the power of memory, a fearful thing, O my God, a deep and boundless manifoldness ; and this thing is the mind, and this am I myself. What am I then, O my God ? What nature am I ? A life various and manifold, and exceeding immense. Behold in the plains, and caves, and caverns of my memory, innumerable and innumerably full of innumerable kinds of things, either through images, as all bodies ; or by actual presence, as the arts ; or by certain notions or impressions, as the affections of the mind, which, even when the mind doth not feel, the memory retaineth, while yet whatsoever is in the memory, is also in the mind,—over all these do I run, I fly ; I dive on this side and on that, as far as I can, and there is no end. So great is the force of memory, so great the force of life, even in the mortal life of man. What shall I do then, O Thou my true life, my God ? I will pass even beyond this power of mine which is called memory : yea, I will pass beyond it, that I may approach unto Thee, O sweet Light. What sayest Thou to me ? See, I am mounting up through my mind towards Thee who abidest above me. Yea, I now will pass beyond this power of mine which is called memory, desirous to arrive at Thee, by Whom Thou mayest be arrived at ; and to cleave unto Thee, by Whom one may cleave unto Thee. For even beasts and birds have memory, else could they not return to their dens and

nests, nor many other things they are used unto ; nor indeed could they be used to anything, but by memory. I will pass then beyond memory also, that I may arrive at Him who hath separated me from the four-footed beasts, and made me wiser than the fowls of the air ; I will pass beyond memory also, and where shall I find Thee, Thou truly good and certain sweet-ness ? And where shall I find Thee ? If I find Thee without my memory, then do I not retain Thee within my memory. And how shall I find Thee, if I remem-ber Thee not ?

XVIII. 27. For the woman that had lost her groat, and sought it with a light, unless she had re-membered it, she had never found it.¹ For when it was found, whence should she know whether it were the same, unless she remembered it ? I remember to have sought and found many a thing ; and this I thereby know, that when I was seeking any of them, and was asked, "Is this it ?" "Is that it ?" so long said I "No," until that were offered me which I sought. But had I not remembered it (whatever it were), though it were offered me, yet should I not find it, because I could not recognize it. And so it ever is, when we seek and find any lost thing. Not-withstanding, when anything is by chance lost from the sight, not from the memory (as any visible body), yet its image is still retained within, and it is sought until it be restored to sight ; and when it is found, it is recognized by the image which is within ; nor do we say that we have found what was lost, unless we

¹ Luke xv. 8.

recognize it ; nor can we recognize it, unless we remember it. It was lost to the eyes, but retained in the memory.

XIX. 28. But how is it when the memory itself loses anything, as happens when we forget, and seek that we may recollect ? Where in the end do we search, but in the very memory itself? and there, if one thing be perchance offered instead of another, we reject it, until what we seek meets us ; and when it doth, we say, "This is it;" which we should not, unless we recognized it, nor recognize it unless we remembered it. Certainly then we had forgotten it. Or, had not the whole escaped us, but by the part whereof we had hold, was the lost part sought for ; in that the memory felt that it did not carry on together all which it was wont, and limping, as it were, from the curtailment of its ancient habit, demanded the restoration of what it had missed ? For instance, if we see or think of some one known to us, and having forgotten his name, try to recover it, every thing that does not connect itself therewith, because it was not wont to be thought upon together with him, is rejected, until that presents itself, whereon the knowledge reposes equably as its wonted object. And whence does this present itself, but out of the memory itself? for even when we recognize it, on being reminded by another, it is thence it comes. For we do not believe it as something new, but, upon recollection, allow that what was mentioned is the right thing. But were it utterly blotted out of the mind, we should not remember it, even when reminded. For we have

not as yet utterly forgotten that which we remember ourselves to have forgotten. What, then, we have utterly forgotten and lost, we cannot even seek after.

XX. 29. How then do I seek Thee, O Lord ? For when I seek Thee, my God, I seek a happy life. *I will seek Thee, that my soul may live.* For my body liveth by my soul ; and my soul by Thee. How then do I seek a happy life, seeing I have it not, until I can actually say [in heaven], where I ought to say it, "It is enough?" How seek I it ? By remembrance, as though I had forgotten it, remembering that I had forgotten it ? Or, desiring to learn it as a thing unknown, either never having known, or so forgotten it as not even to remember that I had forgotten it ? Is not a happy life what all will, and no one altogether wills it not ? Where have they known it, that they so will it ? where seen it, that they so love it ? Truly we have it, how, I know not. Yea, there is another way, wherein when one hath it, then is he happy ; and there are, who are blessed in hope. These have it in a lower kind, than they who have it in very deed ; yet are they better off than such as are happy neither in deed, nor in hope. Yet even these last, had they it not in some sort, would not so will to be happy, which that they do will, is most certain. They have known it then, I know not how, and so have it by some sort of knowledge, what, I know not, and am perplexed whether it be in the memory, which if it be, then we have been happy once ; whether all severally, or in that man who first sinned, *in whom*

also we all died,¹ and from whom we are all born with misery, I now inquire not ; but only whether the happy life be in the memory. For neither should we love it did we not know it. We hear the name, and we all confess that we desire the thing ; for we are not delighted with the mere sound. For when a Greek hears it in Latin, he is not delighted, not knowing what is spoken ; but we Latins are delighted, as would he too, if he heard it in Greek ; because the thing itself is neither Greek nor Latin, which Greeks and Latins, and men of all other tongues, long for so earnestly. Known therefore it is to all, for could they with one voice be asked, “would they be happy ?” they would answer without doubt, “they would.” And this could not be, unless the thing itself, whereof it is the name, were retained in their memory.

XXI. 30. But is it so, as one remembers Carthage who hath seen it ? No. For a happy life is not seen with the eye, because it hath not a body. As we remember numbers, then ? No. For these he that hath in his knowledge, seeks not further to attain unto ; but a happy life we have in our knowledge, and therefore love it, and still desire to attain it, that we may be happy. As we remember eloquence, then ? No. For although upon hearing this name also, some call to mind the thing, who yet are not eloquent, and many who desire to be so, whence it appears that it is in their knowledge ; yet these have by their bodily senses observed others to be eloquent, and been delighted, and desired to be the like (though indeed

they would not be delighted but for some inward knowledge thereof, nor wish to be the like, unless they were thus delighted); whereas a happy life, we do by no bodily sense experience in others. As then we remember joy? Perchance; for, my joy I remember, even when sad, as a happy life, when unhappy; nor did I ever with bodily sense see, hear, smell, taste, or touch my joy; but I experienced it in my mind, when I rejoiced; and the knowledge of it clavé to my memory, so that I can recall it with disgust sometimes, at others with longing, according to the nature of the things, wherein I remember myself to have joyed. For even from foul things have I been immersed in a sort of joy; which now recalling, I detest and execrate; otherwhiles from good and honest things, which I now recall with longing, although perchance no longer present; and therefore with sadness I recall former joy.

31. Where then and when did I experience my happy life, that I should remember, and love and long for it? Nor is it I alone, or some few besides, but we all would fain be happy; which, unless by some certain knowledge we knew, we should not with so certain a will desire. But how is this, that if two men be asked whether they would go to the wars, one, perchance would answer that he would, the other, that he would not; but if they were asked whether they would be happy, both would instantly without any doubting say they would; and for no other reason would the one go to the wars, and the other not, but to be happy. Is it perchance, that as one looks for his

joy in this thing, another in that, all agree in their desire of being happy, as they would agree, if they were asked, that they wished to have joy, and this joy they call a happy life? Although, then, one obtains the joy by one means, another by another, all have one end, which they strive to attain, namely, joy. Which being a thing which all must say they have experienced, it is therefore found in the memory, and recognized whenever the name of a happy life is mentioned.

XXII. 32. Far be it, Lord, far be it from the heart of Thy servant who here confesseth unto Thee, far be it, that, be the joy what it may, I should therefore think myself happy. For there is a *joy* which is *not* given to the *ungodly*,¹ but to those who love Thee for Thine own sake, whose joy Thou Thyself art. And this is the happy life, to rejoice to Thee, of Thee, for Thee; this is it, and there is no other. For they who think there is another, pursue some other, and not the true joy. Yet is not their will turned away from some semblance of joy.

XXII. 33. It is not certain, then, that all wish to be happy, inasmuch as they who wish not to joy in Thee, which is the only happy life, do not truly desire the happy life. Or do all men desire this, but because the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh, that they cannot do what they would,² they fall upon that which they can, and are content therewith; because, what they are not able to do, they do not will so strongly, as would suffice to make them able? For if I ask any one had he rather joy

¹ Isaiah xlvi. 22.

² Gal. v. 17.

in truth or in falsehood ? he will as little hesitate to say "in the truth," as to say that, "he desires to be happy," for a happy life is joy in the truth : for this is a joying in Thee, Who art *the Truth*,¹ O God *my light, health of my countenance, my God*.² This is the genuinely happy life which all desire ; this life which alone is happy, all desire ; to joy in the truth all desire. I have met with many that would deceive ; none who would be deceived. Where, then, did they know this happy life, save where they knew the truth also ? For they love it since they would not be deceived. And when they love a happy life, which is no other than joying in the truth, then also do they love the truth ; which yet they would not love, were there not some notice of it in their memory. Why, then, joy ~~they~~ not in it ? why are they not happy ? because they are more strongly taken up with other things which have more power to make them miserable, than that which they so faintly remember to make them happy. For there is yet a little light in men ; let them walk, let them *walk*, that *the darkness overtake them not*.³

34. But why doth "truth generate hatred," and the *man of thine*,⁴ preaching the truth, become an enemy to them, while yet a happy life is loved, which is nothing else but joying in the truth ? Why is it, unless it be that truth is loved in such a way, that they who love anything else, would gladly have that which they love to be the truth ; and because they do not wish to be

¹ John xiv. 6.

² Ps. xxvii. 1; xlvi. 11.

³ John xii. 35.

⁴ John viii. 40.

deceived, would not be convineed that they are so ? Therefore do they hate the truth for that thing's sake, which they love instead of the truth. They love truth when she enlightens, they hate her when she reproves. For since they would not be deceived, and would deceive, they love her when she discovers herself unto them, and hate her when she discovers them. Whence she shall so repay them, that they who would not be *made manifest*¹ by her, she both against their will makes manifest, and herself becomes not manifest unto them. Thus, thus, yea, thus, doth the mind of man, blind and sick, foul and ill-favored, wish to be hidden, but wished not that aught should be hidden from it. But the contrary is requited it, that itself should not be hidden from the Truth ; but the Truth is hid from it. Yet even thus miserable, it had rather joy in truths than in falsehoods. Happy then will it be, when, no distraction interposing, it shall joy in that only Truth, by Whom all things are true.

XXIV. 35. See what a space I have gone over in my memory seeking Thee, O Lord, and I have not found Thee beyond or outside of it. Nor have I found anything concerning Thee, but what I have kept in memory ever since I learnt Thee. For since I learnt Thee, I have not forgotten Thee. For where I found Truth, there found I my God, the Truth Itself ; which since I learnt, I have not forgotten. Since then I learned Thee, Thou residest in my memory ; and there do I find Thee, when I call Thee to remembrance, and delight in Thee. These be my holy delights,

¹ Eph. v. 13.

which Thou hast given me in Thy mercy, having regard to my poverty.

XXV. 36. But where in my memory residest Thou, O Lord, where residest Thou there? what manner of lodging hast Thou framed for Thee? what manner of sanctuary hast Thou builded for Thee? Thou hast given this honor to my memory, to reside in it; but in what quarter of it Thou residest, that I am considering. For in thinking on Thee, I passed beyond such parts of it as the beasts also have, for I found Thee not there among the images of corporeal things: and I came to those parts to which I committed the affections of my mind, nor found Thee there. And I entered into the very seat of my mind (which it hath in my memory, inasmuch as the mind remembers itself also), neither wert thou there: for as Thou art not a corporeal image, nor the affection of a living being (as when we rejoice, condole, desire, fear, remember, forget, or the like), so neither art Thou the mind itself; because Thou art the Lord God of the mind; and all these are changed, but Thou remainest unchangeable over all, and yet hast vouchsafed to dwell in my memory, since I learnt Thee. And why seek I now, in what place thereof Thou dwellest, as if there were places therein? Sure I am that in it Thou dwellest, since I have remembered Thee, ever since I learnt Thee, and there I find Thee, when I call Thee to remembrance.

XXVI. 37. Where then did I find Thee, that I might learn Thee? For in my memory Thou wert not, before I learned Thee. Where did I find Thee,

that I might learn Thee, but in Thyself above me? Place there is none; *we go backward and forward,*¹ and there is no place. Everywhere, O Truth, dost Thou give audience to all who ask counsel of Thee, and at once answerest all, though on manifold matters they ask Thy counsel. Clearly dost Thou answer, though all do not clearly hear. All consult Thee on what they wish, though they hear not always what they wish. He is Thy best servant who looks not so much to hear that from Thee which himself wills, as rather to will that which from Thee he hears.

XXVII. 38. Too late I loved Thee, O Thou Beauty of ancient days, yet ever new! too late I loved Thee! And behold, Thou wert within, and I abroad, and there I searched for Thee; deformed I, plunging amid those fair forms, which Thou hadst made. Thou wert with me, but I was not with Thee. Things held me far from Thee, which, unless they were in Thee, were not at all. Thou didst call, and shout, and burst my deafness. Thou didst flash, shine, and scatter my blindness. Thou didst breathe odors, and *I drew in breath and panted for Thee.* I tasted, and *hunger and thirst.* Thou touchedst me, and I burned for Thy peace.

XXVIII. 39. When I shall with my whole self cleave to Thee, I shall nowhere have sorrow, or labor; and my life shall wholly live, as wholly full of Thee. But now, since whom Thou fillest Thou liftest up, because I am not full of Thee I am a burden to

¹ Job xxiii. 8, 9.

myself. Lamentable joys strive with joyous sorrows ; and on which side is the victory, I know not. Woe is me ! Lord, have pity on me. My evil sorrows strive with my good joys ; and on which side is the victory, I know not. Woe is me ! Lord, have pity on me. Woe is me ! lo ! I hide not my wounds ; Thou art the Physician, I the sick ; Thou merciful, I miserable. *Is not the life of man upon earth all trial?*¹ Who wishes for troubles and difficulties ? Thou commandest them to be endured, not to be loved. No man loves what he endures, though he love to endure. For though he rejoices that he endures, he had rather there were nothing for him to endure. In adversity, I long for prosperity ; in prosperity, I fear adversity. What middle place is there betwixt these two, where *the life of man is not all trial?* Woe to the prosperities of the world, once and again, through fear of adversity, and corruption of joy. Woe to the adversities of the world, once and again, and the third time, from the longing for prosperity, and because adversity itself is a hard thing, and lest it shatter endurance. *Is not the life of man upon earth all trial,* without any interval ?

XXIX. 40. And all my hope is nowhere but in Thy exceeding great mercy. Give what Thou enjoinest, and enjoin what Thou wilt. Thou enjoinest us continency ; and *when I knew,* saith one, *that no man can be continent, unless God give it, this also was a part of wisdom to know whose gift she is.*² By continency, verily, are we bound up and brought

¹ Job vii. 1. Old Vulg.

² Wisd. viii. 21.

back into One, whence we were dissipated into many. For too little doth he love Thee, who loves anything with Thee, which he loveth not for Thee. O love, who ever burnest and never consumest ! O charity, my God ! kindle me. Thou enjoinest continency : give me what Thou enjoinest, and enjoin what Thou wilt.

XXX. 41. Verily Thou enjoinest me continency from the *lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the ambition of the world.*¹ Thou enjoinest continency from concubinage ; and, for wedlock itself, Thou hast counselled something better than what Thou hast permitted. And since Thou grantedst it, it was done, even before I became a dispenser of Thy Sacrament. But there yet live in my memory (whereof I have much spoken) the images of such things as my ill-custom there fixed ; which haunt me, strengthless when I am awake ; but in sleep, not only so as to give pleasure, but even to obtain assent, and what is very like reality. Yea, so far prevails the illusion of the image, in my soul and in my flesh, that, when asleep, false visions persuade to that which, when waking, the true cannot. Am I not then myself, O Lord my God ? And yet there is so much difference betwixt myself and myself, within that moment wherein I pass from waking to sleeping, or return from sleeping to waking ! Where is reason then, which, awake, resisteth such suggestions ? And should the things themselves be urged on it, it remaineth unshaken. Is it clasped up with the eyes ?

¹ 1 John ii. 16.

is it lulled asleep with the senses of the body? And whence is it that often even in sleep we resist, and mindful of our purpose, and abiding most chastely in it, yield no assent to such enticements? And yet so much difference there is, that when it happeneth otherwise, upon waking we return to peace of conscience: and by this very difference discover that we did not, what yet we be sorry that in some way was done in us.

42. Art Thou not mighty, God Almighty, to *heal all the diseases of my soul*,¹ and by Thy more abundant grace to quench even the impure motions of my sleep! Thou wilt increase, Lord, Thy gifts more and more in me, that my soul may follow me to Thee, disengaged from the birdlime of concupisence; that it rebel not against itself, nor even in dreams commit those debasing corruptions, even to pollution of the flesh, nor even consent unto them. For that nothing of this sort should have, over the pure affections even of a sleeper, the very least influence, not even such as a thought would restrain,—to work this, not only during life, but even at my present age, is not hard for the Almighty, Who is *able to do above all that we ask or think*.² But what I yet am in this kind of evil, have I confessed unto my good Lord; *rejoicing with trembling*,³ in that which Thou hast given me, and bemoaning that wherein I am still imperfect; hoping that Thou wilt perfect Thy mercies in me, even to perfect peace, which my outward and inward

¹ Ps. ciii. 3.

² Eph. iii. 20.

³ Ps. ii. 11.

man shall have with Thee, when *death shall be swallowed up in victory.*¹

XXXI. 43. There is another *evil of the day,*² which I would were *sufficient for it.* For by eating and drinking we repair the daily decays of our body, until Thou *destroy both belly and meat,*³ when Thou shalt slay my emptiness with a wonderful fulness, and *clothe this incorruptible with an eternal incorruption.*⁴ But now the necessity is sweet unto me, against which sweetness I fight, that I be not taken captive; and carry on a daily war by fastings; often *bringing my body into subjection,*⁵ and my pains are removed by pleasure. For hunger and thirst are in a manner pains; they burn and kill like a fever, unless the medicine of nourishment comes to our aid. Which, since it is at hand through the consolations of Thy gifts, with which land and water and air serve our weakness, our calamity is termed gratification.

44. This hast Thou taught me that I should set myself to take food as physic. But while I am passing from the discomfort of emptiness to the content of replenishing, in the very passage the snare of concupiscence besets me. For that passing is pleasure, nor is there any other way to pass thither, whither we needs must pass. And health being the cause of eating and drinking, there joineth itself as an attendant a dangerous pleasure, which often endeavors to go before, so that I may for her sake do what I say I do, or wish to do for health's sake. Nor have each the same meas-

¹ 1 Cor. xv. 54.

³ 1 Cor. vi. 13.

⁵ 1 Cor. ix. 27.

² Matt. vi. 34.

⁴ 1 Cor. xv. 54.

ure; for what is enough for health, is too little for pleasure. And oft it is uncertain, whether it be the necessary care of the body which is yet asking for sustenance, or whether a voluptuous deceivableness of greediness is proffering its services. In this uncertainty the unhappy soul rejoices, and therein prepares an excuse to shield itself, glad that it is difficult to determine what suffices for the moderation of health, so that under the cloak of health it may disguise the matter of gratification. These temptations I daily endeavor to resist, and I call on Thy right hand, and to Thee do I refer my perplexities; because I have as yet no settled counsel herein.

45. I hear the voice of my God commanding, *Let not your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness.*¹ Drunkenness is far from me: Thou wilt have mercy, that it come not near me. But full-feeding sometimes creepeth upon Thy servant: Thou wilt have mercy, that it may be far from me. For *no one can be continent unless Thou give it.*² Many things Thou givest us, praying for them; and what good soever we have received before we prayed, from Thee we received it; yea to the end we might afterwards know this, did we before receive it. Drunkard was I never, but drunkards have I known made sober by Thee. From Thee then it was, that they who never were such, should not so be, as from Thee it was, that they who have been such, should not ever so be; and from Thee it was, that both might know from whom it was. I heard another voice of Thine, *Go not*

¹ Luke xxi. 34.

² Wisd. viii. 21.

after thy lusts, and from thy pleasures turn away.¹ Yea by Thy favor have I heard that text which I have much loved : *neither if we eat, shall we abound; neither if we eat not, shall we lack;*² which is to say, neither shall the one make me plenteous, nor the other miserable. I heard also another text: *for I have learned in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content; I know how to abound, and how to suffer need. I can do all things through Christ that strengtheneth me.*³ Behold a soldier of the heavenly camp, not the dust which we are. But remember,⁴ Lord, that we are dust, and that of dust *Thou hast made man;*⁵ and he was lost and is found.⁶ Nor could Paul of himself do this ; because he whom I so loved, saying this through the in-breathing of Thy inspiration, was of the same dust. *I can do all things (saith he) through him that strengtheneth me.* Strengthen me, that *I can.* Give what Thou enjoinest, and enjoin what Thou wilt. He confesses to have received, and when he *glorieth, in the Lord he glorieth.*⁷ Another have I heard begging that he might receive : *Take from me (saith he) the desires of the belly;*⁸ whence it appeareth, O my holy God, that Thou givest, when that is done which Thou commandest to be done.

46. Thou hast taught me, good Father, that *to the pure all things are pure; but that it is evil unto the man that eateth with offence;*⁹ and that *every creature of Thine is good, and nothing to be refused, which*

¹ Eccl. xviii. 30.

⁴ Ps. ciii. 14.

⁷ 1 Cor. i. 30, 31.

² 1 Cor. viii. 8.

⁵ Gen. iii. 19.

⁸ Eccl. xxiii. 6.

³ Phil. iv. 11—13.

⁶ Luke xv. 32.

⁹ Rom. xiv. 20.

is received with thanksgiving;¹ and that meat commendeth us not to God;² and that no man should judge us in meat or drink;³ and, that he which eateth, let him not despise him that eateth not; and let not him that eateth not, judge him that eateth.⁴ These things have I learned, thanks be to Theg, praise to Thee, my God, my Master, knocking at my ears, enlightening my heart, delivering me out of all temptation. I fear not uncleanness of meat, but the uncleanness of lustng. I know that Noah was permitted to eat all kind of flesh that was good for food;⁵ that Elijah was fed with flesh;⁶ that John, endued with an admirable abstinence, was not polluted by feeding on living creatures, locusts. I know also that Esau was deceived by lustng for lentiles;⁷ and that David blamed himself for desiring a draught of water;⁸ and that our King was tempted, not concerning flesh, but bread.⁹ And also the people in the wilderness deserved to be reproved, not for desiring flesh, but because, in the desire of food, they murinured against the Lord.¹⁰

47. Placed, then, amid these temptations, I strive daily against concupiscence in eating and drinking. For it is not of such nature, that I can settle on cutting it off once for all, and never touching it afterwards, as I could concubinage. The bridle of the throat then is to be held attempered between slackness and stiffness. And who is he, O Lord, who is

¹ 1 Tim. iv. 4.

⁵ Gen. ix. 3.

⁸ 2 Sam. xxlii. 15—17.

² 1 Cor. vii. 8.

⁶ 1 Kings xvii. 6.

⁹ Matt. iv. 3.

³ Col. ii. 16.

⁷ Gen. xxiii. 34.

¹⁰ Numb. xi.

⁴ Rom. xiv. 3.

not more or less transported beyond the limits of necessity? whoever he is, he is a great one; let him make Thy Name great. But I am not such, for *I am a sinful man*.¹ Yet do I too magnify Thy name; and *He maketh intercession to Thee*² for my sins, who *hath overcome the world*;³ numbering me among the *weak members of His body*;⁴ because *Thine eyes have seen my imperfections, and in Thy book shall all be written*.⁵

XXXII. 48. With the allurement of perfumes I am not much concerned. When absent, I do not miss them; when present, I do not refuse them; yet ever ready to be without them. So I seem to myself; perchance I am deceived. For that also is a mournful darkness, whereby my abilities within me are hidden from me; so that my mind making inquiry into herself of her own powers, ventures not readily to believe herself; because even what is in it is mostly hidden, unless experience reveal it. And no one ought to be secure in that life, the whole whereof is called a *trial*,⁶ that he who hath been capable of worse to be made better, may not likewise of better be made worse. Our only hope, only confidence, only assured promise, is Thy mercy.

XXXIII. 49. The delights of the ear had more firmly entangled and subdued me; but Thou didst loosen, and free me. Now, in those melodies which Thy words breathe soul into, when sung with a sweet and attuned voice, I do a little repose; yet not so

¹ Luke v. 8.

³ John xvi. 33.

⁵ Ps. cxxxix. 16.

² Rom. viii. 34.

⁴ 1 Cor. xii. 22.

⁶ Job vii. 1. Vulg.

to be held thereby, but that I can disengage myself when I will. But with the words which are their life, and whereby they find admission into me, the melodies themselves seek in my affections a place of some estimation, and I can scarcely assign them one suitable. For at one time I seem to myself to give them more honor than is seemly, feeling our minds to be more holily and fervently raised into a flame of devotion by the holy words themselves when thus sung, than when not ; and that the several affections of our spirit, by a sweet variety, have their own proper measures in the voice and singing, by some hidden correspondence wherewith they are stirred up. But this contentment of the flesh, to which the soul must not be given over to be enervated, doth oft beguile me, the sense not so waiting upon reason as patiently to follow her ; but having been admitted merely for her sake, it strives even to run before her, and lead her. Thus in these things I unawares sin, but afterwards am aware of it.

50. At other times, shunning over-anxiously this very deception, I err in too great strictness ; and sometimes to that degree as to wish the whole melody of sweet music which is used with David's Psalter banished from my ears, and the church's too ; and that mode seems to me safer, which I remember to have been told me of Athanasius bishop of Alexandria, who made the reader of the psalm utter it with so slight inflection of voice, that it was nearer speaking than singing. Yet, again, when I remember the tears I shed at the Psalmody of Thy Church, in the beginning of my recovered faith ; and how at this time I

am moved, not with the singing, but with the things sung, when they are sung with a clear voice and modulation most suitable, I acknowledge the great use of this institution. Thus I fluctuate between peril of pleasure and approved wholesomeness; inclined the rather (though not as pronouncing an irrevocable opinion) to approve of the usage of singing in the church; that so by the delight of the ears, the weaker minds may rise to the feeling of devotion. Yet when it befalls me to be more moved with the voice than the words sung, I confess to have sinned penally, and then had rather not hear music. See now my state; weep with me, and weep for me, ye who so regulate your feelings within as that good acts ensue. For you who do not, these things touch not you. But Thou, O Lord my God, hearken; behold, and see, and *have mercy, and heal me*,¹ Thou, in whose presence I have become a problem to myself; and that *is my infirmity*.²

XXXIV. 51. There remains the pleasure of these eyes of my flesh, on which to make my confessions in the hearing of the ears of Thy temple, those brotherly and devout ears; and so to conclude the temptations of the *lust of the flesh*, which yet assail me, *groaning earnestly, and desiring to be clothed upon with my house from heaven*.³ The eyes love fair and varied forms, and bright and soft colors. Let not these occupy my soul; let God rather occupy it, *who made these things, very good*⁴ indeed, yet is He my good, not they. And these affect me, waking, the whole day,

¹ Ps. vi. 3.

² Ps. lxxvii. 10.

³ 2 Cor. v. 2.

⁴ Gen. i. 31.

nor is any rest given me from them, as there is from musical voices, and sometimes, in silence, from all voices. For this queen of colors, the light, bathing all which we behold, wherever I am through the day, gliding by me in varied forms, sooths me when engaged on other things and not observing it. And so strongly does it entwine itself, that if it be suddenly withdrawn, it is with longing sought for, and if absent long, saddens the mind.

52. O Thou Light, which Tobias saw, when, with eyes closed, he taught his son the way of life;¹ and himself went before with the feet of charity, never swerving. Or which Isaac saw, when, his fleshly *eyes being heavy*² and closed by old age, it was vouchsafed him, not knowingly to bless his sons, but by blessing to know them. Or which Jacob saw, when he also, blind through great age, with illumined heart, in the persons of his sons shed light on the different races of the future people, in them foresignified; and laid his hands, mystically crossed, upon his grandchildren by Joseph, not as their father by his outward eye corrected them, but as himself inwardly discerned.³ This is the light, it is one, and all are one who see and love it. But that corporeal light wherof I spake, it seasoneth the life of this world for her blind lovers, with an enticing and dangerous sweetness. But they who know how to praise Thee for it, "O all-creating Lord," take it up in Thy hymns and are not taken up with it in their sleep. Such would I be. These seductions of the eyes I resist, lest my feet wherewith I walk upon

¹ Tob. iv.

² Gen. xxvii.

³ Gen. xlviij.

Thy way be ensnared ; and I lift up mine invisible eyes to Thee, that Thou wouldest *pluck my feet out of the snare*.¹ Thou dost ever and anon pluck them out, for they are ensnared. Thou ceasest not to pluck them out, while I often entangle myself in the snares on all sides laid ; because *Thou that keepest Israel shalt neither slumber nor sleep*.²

53. What innumerable toys, made by divers arts and manufactures, in our apparel, shoes, utensils, and all sorts of works, in pictures, also, and divers images, and these far exceeding all necessary and moderate use and all pious meaning, have men added to tempt their own eyes withal ; outwardly following what themselves make, inwardly forsaking Him by whom themselves were made, and destroying that which themselves have been made ! But I, my God and my Glory, do hence also sing a hymn to Thee, and do consecrate praise to Him who consecrateth me, because those beautiful patterns which through men's souls are conveyed into their cunning hands, come from that Beauty, Which is above our souls, Which my soul day and night sigheth after. But the framers and followers of the outward beauties, derive thence the rule of judging of them, but not of using them. And He is there, though they perceive Him not, that so they might not wander, but *keep their strength for Thee*,³ and not scatter it abroad upon pleasurable weaknesses. And I, though I speak and see this, entangle my steps with these outward beauties ; but Thou pluckest me out, O Lord, Thou pluckest me out ; be-

1 Ps. xxv. 15.

2 Ps. cxxi. 4.

3 Ps. lviii. 10. Vulg.

*cause Thy loving-kindness is before my eyes.*¹ For I am taken miserably, and Thou pluckest me out mercifully; sometimes not perceiving it, when I had but lightly lighted upon them; otherwhiles with pain, because I had stuck fast in them.

XXXV. 54. To this is added another form of temptation more manifoldly dangerous. For besides that concupiscence of the flesh which consisteth in the delight of all senses and pleasures, wherein its slaves, who *go far from Thee*,² waste and *perish*, the soul hath, through the same senses of the body, a certain vain and curious desire, veiled under the title of knowledge and learning, not of delighting in the flesh, but of making experiments through the flesh. The seat whereof being in the appetite of knowledge, and sight being the sense chiefly used for attaining knowledge, it is in Divine language called *The lust of the eyes*.³ For to see, belongeth properly to the eyes; yet we use this word of the other senses also, when we employ them in seeking knowledge. For we do not say, hark how it flashes, or smell how it glows, or taste how it shines, or feel how it gleams; for all these are said to be seen. And yet we say not only, see how it shineth, which the eyes alone can perceive; but also, see how it soundeth, see how it smelleth, see how it tasteth, see how hard it is. And so the general experience of the senses, as was said, is called *The lust of the eyes*, because the office of seeing, wherein the eyes hold the prerogative, the other senses by way

¹ Ps. xxv. 3.

² Ps. lxxiii. 27.

³ 1 John ii. 16.

of similitude take to themselves, when they make search after any knowledge.

55. But by this may more evidently be discerned, wherein pleasure, and wherein curiosity, is the object of the senses; for pleasure seeketh objects beautiful, melodious, fragrant, savory, soft; but curiosity, for trial's sake, the contrary, as well, not for the sake of suffering annoyanee, but out of the lust of making trial and knowing them. For what pleasure hath it, to see in a mangled carcass what will make you shudder? and yet if it be lying near, men flock thither, to be made sad, and to turn pale. Even in sleep they are afraid to see it. As if when awake, any one forced them to see it, or any report of its beauty drew them thither! Thus also in the other senses, which it were long to go through. From this disease of curiosity, are all those strange sights exhibited in the theatre. Hence, men go on to search out the hidden powers of nature, which to know profits not, and wherin men desire nothing but to know. Hence, also, with that same end of perverted knowledge in view, magical arts are employed. Hence, also, in religion itself, is God tempted, when signs and wonders are demanded of Him; not desired for any good end, but merely to make trial of.

56. In this so vast wilderness, full of snares and dangers, behold many of them I have cut off, and thrust out of my heart, as Thou hast given me power, O God of my salvation. And yet when dare I say,—since so many things of this kind buzz on all

sides about our daily life,—when dare I say, that nothing of this sort engages my attention, or causes in me an idle interest? True, the theatres do not now carry me away, nor care I to know the courses of the stars, nor did my soul ever consult ghosts departed; all sacrilegious mysteries I detest. From Thee, O Lord my God, to whom I owe humble and single-hearted service, by what artifices and suggestions doth the enemy deal with me to desire some sign! But I beseech Thee by our King, and by our pure and holy country, Jerusalem, that as any consenting thereto is far from me, so may it ever be further and further. But when I pray Thee for the salvation of any, my end and intention is far different. Thou givest and wilt give me to *follow Thee* willingly, doing what Thou *wilt*.¹

57. Notwithstanding, who can recount in how many most petty and contemptible things is our curiosity daily tempted, and how often we give way? How often do we begin, as if we were tolerating people telling vain stories, lest we offend the weak; then by degrees we take interest therein! I go not now to the circus to see a dog coursing a hare; but in the field, if passing, that coursing peradventure will distract me even from some weighty thought, and draw me after it: not that I turn aside the body of my beast, yet still incline my mind thither. And unless Thou, having made me see my infirmity, didst speedily admonish me, either through the sight itself by some contemplation to rise to-

¹ John xxi. 22.

wards Thee, or altogether to despise and pass it by, I stupidly stand fixed therein. When sitting at home, a lizard catching flies, or a spider entangling them as they rush into her nets, oftentimes takes my attention. Is the thing different, because they are but small creatures? I indeed go on from them to praise Thee, the wonderful Creator and Orderer of all, but this does not first draw my attention. It is one thing to rise quickly, another not to fall. And of such things is my life full; and my one hope is Thy wonderful great mercy. For when our heart becomes the receptacle of such things, and is overcharged with throngs of this abundant vanity, then are our prayers also thereby often interrupted and distracted, and whilst in Thy presence we direct the voice of our heart to Thine ears, this so great concern is broken off, by the rushing in of I know not what idle thoughts. Shall we then account this also among things of slight concernment, or shall aught bring us back to hope, save Thy complete mercy, since Thou hast begun to change us?

XXXVI. 58. And Thou knowest how far Thou hast already changed me, who first didst heal me of the lust of vindicating myself, that so Thou mightest forgive all the rest of my *iniquities*, and heal all my infirmities, and redeem my life from corruption, and crown me with mercy and pity, and satisfy my desire with good things:¹ who didst curb my pride with Thy fear, and tame my neck to Thy yoke. And now I bear it, and it is *light*² unto me, because so

¹ Ps. ciii. 3—5.

² Matt. xi. 30.

hast Thou promised, and hast made it ; and verily so it was, and I knew it not, when I feared to take it.

59. But, O Lord, Thou alone Lord without pride, because Thou art the only true Lord, who hast no lord, hath this third kind of temptation also ceased from me, or can it cease through this whole life ? To wish, namely, to be feared and loved of men, for no other end but that we may have a joy therein, which is no joy ? A miserable life this, and a foul boastfulness ! Hence especially it comes, that men do neither purely love, nor fear Thee. And therefore *dost Thou resist the proud, and givest grace to the humble*:¹ yea, Thou thunderest down upon the ambitions of the world, and *the foundations of the mountains tremble*.² Because now certain offices of human society make it necessary to be loved and feared of men, the adversary of our true blessedness layeth hard at us, everywhere spreading his snares of “well done, well done ;” that, greedily catching at them, we may be taken unawares, and sever our joy from Thy truth, and set it in the deceivingness of men ; and be pleased at being loved and feared, not for Thy sake, but in Thy stead : and thus having been made like him, he may have them for his own, not in the bands of charity, but in the bonds of punishment : who purposed to *set his throne in the north*,³ that, dark and chilled, they might serve him, pervertedly and crookedly imitating Thee. But we, O Lord, behold we are Thy *little flock* ;⁴ possess us as Thine, stretch Thy wings over us, and let us fly

¹ James iv. 6.

² Ps. xviii. 7.

³ Is. xiv. 13, 14.

⁴ Luke xii. 32.

under them. Be Thou our glory; let us be loved for Thee, and Thy word feared in us. He who would be praised of men when Thou blamest, will not be defended of men when Thou judgest; nor delivered when Thou condemnest. But when,—*not the sinner is praised in the desires of his soul*,¹ nor he *blessed who doth ungodly*,² but,—a man is praised for some gift which Thou hast given him, and he rejoices more at the praise for himself than that he hath the gift for which he is praised, he also is praised, while Thou dispraisest; and better is he who praised than he who is praised. For the one took pleasure in the gift of God in man; the other was better pleased with the gift of man, than of God.

XXXVII. 60. By these temptations we are assailed daily, O, Lord; without ceasing we are assailed. Our daily *furnace*,³ is the tongue of men. And in this way, also, Thou commandest us self-denial. Give what Thou enjoinest, and enjoin what Thou wilt. Thou knowest on this matter the groans of my heart, and the floods of mine eyes. For I cannot learn how far I am cleansed from this plague, and I much fear my *secret sins*,⁴ which Thine eyes know, mine do not. For in other kinds of temptations I have some sort of means of examining myself; in this, scarce any. For, in restraining my mind from the pleasures of the flesh, and idle curiosity, I see how much I have attained to, when I do without them; foregoing, or not having them. For then I ask myself how much more or less

¹ Ps. ix. 29. Vulg.

² Ps. x. 3.

³ Prov. xxvii. 21.

⁴ Ps. xix. 12.

troublesome it is to me, not to have them? Thus, riches, which are desired that they may serve to some one or two or all of the three concupiscences,¹ if the soul cannot discern whether, when it hath them it despiseth them, they may be cast aside, that so it may prove itself. But how can we divest ourselves of praise, and try ourselves in this respect? Must we live ill, yea so abandonedly and atrociously, that no one should know us without detesting us? What greater madness can be uttered, or thought of? But if praise is wont, and ought, to accompany a good life and good works, we ought as little to forego its company, as good life itself. Yet I know not whether I can contentedly or discontentedly be without anything, unless it be absent.

61. What then do I confess unto Thee in this kind of temptation, O Lord? What, but that I am delighted with praise, but with truth itself, more than with praise? For were it proposed to me, whether I would, being frenzied in error on all things, be praised by all men, or being consistent and most settled in the truth, be blamed by all, I see which I should choose. Yet fain would I, that the approbation of another should not even increase my joy for any good in me. Yet I own, it doth increase it, and not so only, but dispraise doth diminish it. And when I am troubled at this my misery, an excuse occurs to me, which of what value it is, Thou God knowest, for it leaves me uncertain. For since Thou hast commanded us not continency alone, that is, from what things to refrain

our love, but righteousness also, that is, whereon to bestow it, and hast willed us to love not Thee only, but our neighbor also, often, when pleased with intelligent praise, I seem to myself to be pleased with the proficiency or towardliness of my neighbor, or to be grieved for evil in him, when I hear him dispraise either what he understands not, or is good. For sometimes I am grieved at my own praise, either when those things be praised in me, in which I mislike myself, or even lesser and slight excellences are more esteemed than they ought to be. But, again, how do I know whether I am not thus affected, because I would not have him who praises me, differ from me about myself; not as being influenced by concern for him, but because those same good things which please me in myself, please me more when they please another also? For somehow I am not praised when my judgment of myself is not praised; forasmuch as either those things are praised, which displease me; or those more, which please me less. Am I then doubtful of myself in this matter?

62. Behold, in Thee, O Truth, I see, that I ought not to be moved at my own praises, for my own sake, but for the good of my neighbor. And whether it be so with me, I know not. For herein I know less of myself than of Thee. I beseech now, O my God, discover to me myself also, that I may confess unto my brethren, who are to pray for me, wherein I find myself maimed. Let me examine myself again more diligently. If in my praise I am moved with the good of my neighbor, why am I less moved if another

be unjustly dispraised than if it be myself? Why am I more stung by reproach cast upon myself, than at that cast upon another, with the same injustice before me? Know I not this also? or is it at last that I *deceive myself*,¹ and do not the truth before Thee in my heart and tongue? This madness put far from me, O Lord, lest mine own mouth be to me the *sinner's oil to make fat my head*.² *I am poor and needy*,³ yet best, while in hidden groanings I mortify myself, and seek Thy mercy, until what is lacking in my defective state be renewed and perfected, even to that peace which the eye of the proud knoweth not.

XXXVIII. 63. Yet the word, which cometh out of the mouth, and deeds known to men, bring with them a most dangerous temptation through the love of praise; which, to establish a certain excellency of our own, solicit and collect men's suffrages. It tempts, even when it is reproved by myself in myself, on the very ground that it is reproved; and often glories more vainly of the very contempt of vain-glory; and so it is no longer contempt of vain-glory, whereof it glories; for it doth not contemn when it glorieth.

XXIX. 64. Within also, within is another evil, arising out of a like temptation; whereby men become vain, pleasing themselves in themselves, though they please not, or displease, or care not to please, others. But pleasing themselves, they much displease Thee, not only taking pleasure in things not good, as if good, but in Thy good things, as if they were their own; or even if as Thine, yet as though for their own mer-

¹ Gal. vi. 3; 1 John i. 8.

² Ps. cxli. 5.

³ Ps. cix. 22.

its; or even if as though from Thy grace, yet not with brotherly rejoicing, but grudging that grace to others. In all these and the like perils and travails, Thou seest the trembling of my heart; and I rather feel my wounds to be cured by Thee, than not inflicted by me.

XL. 65. Where hast Thou not walked with me, O Truth, teaching me what to beware, and what to desire, when I referred to Thee what I could discover here below, and consulted Thee? With my outward senses, as I might, I surveyed the world, and observed the life which my body hath from me, and these my senses. Thence entered I the recesses of my memory, those manifold and spacious chambers, wonderfully furnished with innumerable stores; and I considered, and stood aghast; being able to discern nothing of these things without Thee, and finding none of them to be Thee. Nor was it I myself who found out these things, who went over them all, and labored to distinguish and to value every thing according to its dignity, taking some things upon the report of my senses, questioning about others which I felt to be mixed up with myself, numbering and distinguishing the reporters themselves, and in the large treasure-house of my memory, revolving some things, storing up others, drawing out others,—nor was it I myself who did this: that is, it was not my power whereby I did it. Neither was it Thou, for Thou art the abiding light, which I consulted concerning all these, whether they were, what they were, and how to be valued; and I heard Thee directing and com-

manding me; and this I often do, this delights me, and as far as I may be freed from necessary duties, unto this pleasure have I recourse. Nor in all these, which I run over consulting Thee, can I find any safe place for my soul, but in Thee; whither my scattered members may be gathered, and nothing of me depart from Thee. And sometimes Thou admittest me to an affection, very unusual, in my inmost soul; rising to a strange sweetness, which if it were perfected in me, I know not what in it would not belong to the life to come. But through my miserable encumbrances I sink down again into these lower things, and am swept back by former custom, and am held, and greatly weep, but am greatly held. So much doth the burden of a bad custom weigh us down. Here I can stay, but would not; there I would, but cannot; both ways, miserable.

XLI. 66. Thus then have I considered the sicknesses of my sins in that threefold concupiscence, and have called Thy right hand to my help. For with a wounded heart have I beheld Thy brightness, and stricken back I said, "Who can attain thither? *I am cast away from the sight of thine eyes.*"¹ Thou art the Truth who presidest over all, but I, through my covetousness, would not indeed forego Thee, but would with Thee possess a falsehood, just as no man would speak falsely, in such a way, and to such a degree, as to wholly lose the knowledge of truth. So then I lost Thee, because Thou vouchsafest not to be possessed along with a falsehood."

¹ Ps. xxxi. 22.

XLII. 67. Whom could I find to reconcile me to Thee? was I to have recourse to angels? by what prayers? by what sacraments? Many endeavoring to return unto Thee, and of themselves unable, have, as I hear, tried this, and fallen into the desire of curious visions, and been accounted worthy to be deluded. For they, being high-minded, sought Thee by the pride of learning, swelling out their breasts, rather than smiting upon them, and so by the agreement of their heart, drew unto themselves the *princes of the air*,¹ the fellow-conspirators of their pride, by whom, through magical influences, they were deceived, seeking a mediator by whom they might be purged, and there was none. For the devil it was, *transforming himself into an Angel of Light*.² And it much enticed proud flesh, that he had no body of flesh. For they were mortal, and sinners; but Thou Lord, to whom they proudly sought to be reconciled, art immortal, and without sin. But a mediator between God and man must have something like to God, something like to men; lest being in both like to man, he should be far from God; or if in both like God, too unlike man; and so not be a mediator. That deceitful mediator, then, by whom in Thy secret judgments pride deserved to be deluded, hath one thing in common with man, that is sin; another he would seem to have in common with God; and not being clothed with the mortality of flesh, would vaunt himself to be immortal. But since the *wages of sin is death*,³ this

¹ Eph. ii. 2.

² 2 Cor. xi. 14.

³ Rom. vi. 20.

hath he in common with men, that with them he should be condemned to death.

XLIII. 68. But the true Mediator, Whom in Thy secret mercy Thou hast showed to the humble, and sentest, that by His example also they might learn that same humility, that *Mediator between God and man, the Man Christ Jesus*,¹ appeared betwixt mortal sinners and the Immortal Just One; mortal with men, just with God; that, because the wages of righteousness is life and peace, He might, by a righteousness conjoined with God, make void that death of sinners, now justified, which He willed to have in common with them. Hence He was showed forth to holy men of old, that so they, through faith in His Passion to come, as we through faith in it passed, might be saved. For as Man, He was a Mediator;² but as the Word, he was not in the middle (Mediator) between God and man, because he was equal to God, and God with God, and together one God.

69. How hast Thou loved us, good Father, who sparedst not Thine only Son, but deliveredst Him up for us ungodly!³ How hast Thou loved us, for whom *He that thought it no robbery to be equal with Thee, was made subject even to the death of the cross*,⁴ He alone free among the dead,⁵ having power to lay down His life, and power to take it again:⁶ for us, to Thee, both Victor and Victim, and therefore Victor, because the Victim; for us, to Thee, Priest and Sacrifice, and

¹ 1 Tim. ii. 20.

² Rather, as *God-Man*; mere humanity is not “in the middle between God and man.”—ED.

³ Rom. viii. 32. ⁴ Phil. ii. 6, 8. ⁵ Ps. lxxxviii. 5. ⁶ John x. 18.

therefore Priest because the Sacrifice ; making us, to Thee, of servants, sons, by being born of Thee, and serving us. Deservedly then is my hope strong in Him, that Thou *wilt heal all my infirmities*,¹ by Him Who *sitteth at Thy right hand and maketh intercession for us* ;² else should I despair. For many and great are my infirmities, many they are and great; but Thy medicine is mightier. We might imagine that Thy Word was far from any union with man, and despair of ourselves, unless He had been *made flesh and dwelt among us*.³

70. Affrighted with my sins, and the burden of my misery, I had thought in my heart, and had purposed, to *flee to the wilderness* :⁴ but Thou forbiddest me, and strengthenedst me, saying, *Therefore Christ died for all, that they which live may now no longer live unto themselves, but unto Him that died for them*.⁵ See, Lord, *I cast my care upon Thee*,⁶ that I may live, and consider wondrous things out of Thy law.⁷ Thou knowest my unskilfulness, and my infirmities; teach me, and heal me. He, Thine only son, in Whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge,⁸ hath redeemed me with His blood. *Let not the proud speak evil of me* ;⁹ because I meditate on my Ransom, and eat and drink, and appropriate it; and poor, desire to be satisfied from Him, amongst those that eat and are satisfied. *And they shall praise the Lord who seek Him*.¹⁰

¹ Ps. ciii. 3.

⁵ 2 Cor. v. 15.

⁸ Col. ii. 3.

² Rom. viii. 34.

⁶ Ps. lv. 22.

⁹ Ps. cxix. 122. Vulg.

³ John i. 12.

⁷ Ps. cxix. 18.

¹⁰ Ps. xxii. 26.

⁴ Ps. lv. 7.

THE ELEVENTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE BREAKS OFF THE HISTORY OF THE MODE WHEREBY GOD LED HIM TO HOLY ORDERS, IN ORDER TO "CONFESS" GOD'S MERCIES IN OPENING TO HIM THE SCRIPTURE—MOSES IS NOT TO BE UNDERSTOOD, BUT IN CHRIST,—NOT EVEN THE FIRST WORDS, "IN THE BEGINNING GOD CREATED THE HEAVEN AND THE EARTH"—ANSWER TO CAVILLERS, WHO ASKED, WHAT DID GOD BEFORE HE CREATED THE HEAVEN AND THE EARTH, AND WHENCE WILLED HE AT LENGTH TO MAKE THEM, WHEREAS HE DID NOT MAKE THEM BEFORE—INQUIRY INTO THE NATURE OF TIME.

I. 1. Lord, since eternity is Thine, art Thou ignorant of what I say to Thee? or dost Thou see in time, what passeth in time? Why then do I lay in order before Thee so many relations? Not, of a truth, that Thou mightest learn them through me, but to stir up mine own, and my readers' devotions towards Thee, that we may all say, *Great is the Lord, and greatly to be praised*.¹ I have said already, and again will say, for love of Thy love do I this. For we pray, also; and yet Truth hath said, *Your Father knoweth what you have need of, before you ask*.² It is then our affections which we lay open unto Thee, confessing our own miseries, and Thy mercies upon us, that Thou mayest free us

¹ Ps. xcvi. 4.

² Matt. vi. 8.

wholly, since Thou hast begun, that we may cease to be wretched in ourselves, and be blessed in Thee; seeing Thou hast called us, to become *poor in spirit, and meek, and mourners, and hungering and athirst after righteousness, and merciful, and pure in heart, and peace-makers.*¹ See, I have told Thee many things, as I could and as I would, because Thou first wouldest that I should confess unto Thee, my Lord God. *For Thou art good, for Thy mercy endureth forever.*²

II. 2. But how shall I suffice with the tongue of my pen to utter all Thy exhortations, and all Thy terrors, and comforts, and guidances, whereby Thou broughtest me to preach Thy Word, and dispense Thy Sacrament to Thy people? And if I suffice to utter them in order, the drops of time are precious with me; and long have I burned to *meditate in Thy law,*³ and therein to confess to Thee my skill and unskilfulness, the day-break of Thy enlightening and the remnants of my darkness, until infirmity be swallowed up by strength. And I would not have aught besides steal away those hours, which I find free from the necessities of refreshing my body and the powers of my mind, and the service which we owe to men, or which, though we owe not, we yet pay.

3. O Lord my God, give ear unto my prayer, and let Thy mercy hearken unto my desire: because it is anxious, not for myself alone, but would serve brotherly charity; and Thou seest my heart, that so it is. I would sacrifice to Thee the service of my

¹ Matt. v. 3—9.

² Ps. cxxxvi.

³ Ps. cxix. 97.

thought and tongue ; do Thou give me what I may offer Thee. For *I am poor and needy, Thou rich to all that call upon Thee*;¹ and, inaccessible to care, carest for us. *Circumcise* from all rashness and all lying both *my* inward and outward *lips* ; let Thy Scriptures be my pure delights ; let me not be deceived in them, nor deceive out of them. Lord, hearken and pity, O Lord my God, Light of the blind, and Strength of the weak ; yea, also, Light of those that see, and Strength of the strong : hearken unto my soul, and hear it *crying out of the depths*.² For if Thine ears be not with us in the depths also, whither shall we go ? whither cry ? *The day is Thine, and the night is Thine* ; at Thy beck the moments flee by. Grant thereof a space for our meditations in the *hidden things of Thy law*, and close it not against us who *knock*. For not in vain wouldest Thou have the darksome secrets of so many pages written ; nor are those forests without their harts, which retire therein and range and walk, feed, lie down, and ruminate. *Perfect* me, O Lord, and *reveal* them *unto me*. Behold, Thy voice is my joy ; Thy voice exceedeth the abundance of pleasures. Give what I love : for I do love ; and this hast Thou given. Forsake not Thy own gifts, nor despise Thy green herb that thirsteth. Let me confess unto Thee whatsoever I shall find in Thy books, and *hear the voice of praise*, and drink in Thee, and meditate on the *wonderful things out of Thy law* ; even from the *beginning*, wherein *Thou madest the*

¹ Ps. xl. 17, lxxxvi. 5.

² Ps. cxxx. 1.

heaven and the earth, unto the everlasting reigning of Thy holy city with Thee.

4. *Lord, have mercy on me, and hear my desire.* For it is not, I deem, desire of the earth, not of gold and silver and precious stones, or gorgeous apparel, or honors and offices, or the pleasures of the flesh, or necessaries for the body and for this life of our pilgrimage,—*all which shall be added unto those that seek Thy kingdom and Thy righteousness.* Behold, O Lord my God, wherein is my desire. *The wicked have told me of delights, but not such as Thy law, O Lord.* Behold wherein is my desire. Behold, Father, behold, and see and approve; and be it pleasing in the sight of Thy mercy, that I may find grace before Thee, that the inward parts of Thy words be *opened* to me *knocking*. I beseech by our Lord Jesus Christ, Thy Son, *the Man of Thy right hand, the Son of Man, whom Thou hast established for Thyself*, as Thy Mediator and ours, through Whom Thou soughtest us who did not seek Thee, but soughtest us that we might seek Thee; *Thy Word, through Whom Thou madest all things*, and among them, me also; Thy Only Begotten, through whom Thou calledst to adoption the believing people, and therein me also,—I beseech Thee by Him, who *sitteth at Thy right hand, and intercedeth with Thee for us, in Whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.* Him do I seek in Thy books. *Of Him did Moses write.* This saith He Himself; this saith the Truth.¹

¹ John v. 46.

III. 5. I would hear and understand how, “In the Beginning Thou madest the heaven and earth.” Moses wrote this, wrote and departed, passed hence from Thee to Thee. Nor is he now before me; for if he were, I would hold him, and ask him, and beseech him by Thee to open these things unto me, and would lay the ears of my body to the sounds bursting out of his mouth. And should he speak Hebrew, in vain will it strike on my senses, nor would aught of it touch my mind; but if Latin, I should know what he said. But whence should I know whether he spake the truth? Yea, and if I knew this also, should I know it from him? Truly within me, within, in the chamber of my thoughts, Truth, Who is neither Hebrew, nor Greek, nor Latin, nor barbarian, without organs of voice or tongue, or sound of syllables, would say, “It is truth;” and I forthwith should say confidently to that man of Thine, “Thou sayest truly.” Whereas, then, I cannot inquire of Moses, Thee, Thee I beseech, O Truth, being filled with Whom, he spake truth, Thee, my God, I beseech, forgive my sins; and Thou, who gavest him to speak these things, give to me also to understand them.

IV. 6. Behold, the heavens and the earth are; they proclaim that they were created; for they change and vary. Whereas whatsoever hath not been made, and yet is, hath nothing in it which it had not before; and this it is, to change and vary. They proclaim, also, that they made not themselves; “We are, because we have been made; we were not,

therefore, before we were, so as to make ourselves.¹⁰ Now the evidence of the thing is the voice of the speakers. Thou, therefore, Lord, madest them ; who art beautiful, for they are beautiful ; who art good, for they are good ; who art, for they are ; yet are they not beautiful, nor good, as Thou art, nor are they as Thou their Creator art ; compared with Whom, they are neither beautiful, nor good, nor are. This we know, thanks be to Thee. And our knowledge, compared with Thy knowledge, is ignorance.

V. 7. But how didst Thou *make the heaven and the earth?* and what was the engine of Thy so mighty fabric ? For it was not as a human artificer, forming one body from another, according to the discretion of his mind, which can in some way invest with such a form, as it seeth in itself by its inward eye. And whence should he be able to do this, unless Thou hadst made that mind ? for he invests with a form what already exists and has a being, as clay, or stone, or wood, or gold, or the like. And whence should they be, hadst not Thou appointed them ? Thou madest the artificer's body ; his mind commanding his limbs ; the matter whereof he makes anything ; the apprehension whereby to take in his art, and see within, what he doth without ; the sense of his body, whereby, as by an interpreter, he may from mind to matter convey that which he doth, and report to his mind what is done ; that his mind may consult the truth, which presideth over it, whether it be well done or no. All these praise Thee, the Creator of all. But how dost Thou make

them? how, O God, didst Thou *make heaven and earth?* Verily, neither in the heaven, nor in the earth, didst Thou *make heaven and earth:* nor in the air, or waters, seeing these also belong to *the heaven and the earth;* nor in the whole world didst Thou make the whole world; because there was no place where to make it, before it was made, that it might be. Nor didst Thou hold anything in Thy hand, whereof to make heaven and earth. For whence shouldest Thou have this, which Thou hadst not made, thereof to make anything? For what is, but because Thou art? Therefore *Thou spakest, and they were made, and in Thy Word Thou madest them.*

VI. 8. But how didst Thou speak? In the way that the *voice came out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son?*¹ For that voice passed by and passed away, began and ended; the syllables sounded and passed away, the second after the first, the third after the second, and so forth in order, until the last after the rest, and silence after the last. Whence it is abundantly clear and plain that the motion of a creature expressed it, itself temporal, serving Thy eternal will. And these Thy words, created for a time, the outward ear reported to the intelligent soul, whose inward ear lay listening to Thy Eternal Word. But she compared these words sounding in time, with Thy Eternal Word in silence, and said, "It is different, far different. These words are far beneath me, nor are they, because they flee

¹ Matt. iii. 17, xvii. 5.

and pass away ; but the *Word of my Lord abideth above me forever.*" If, then, in sounding and passing words Thou saidst that *heaven and earth should be made*, and so *madest heaven and earth*, there was a corporeal creature before heaven and earth, by whose motions in time that voice might take his course in time. But there was nought corporeal before *heaven and earth* ; or if there were, surely Thou hadst, without such a passing voice, created that whereof to make this passing voice, by which to say, *Let the heaven and the earth be made*. For whatsoever that were, whereof such a voice were made, unless by Thee it were made, it could not be at all. By what Word then didst Thou speak, that a substance might be made, whereby these words again might be made ?

VII. 9. Thou callest us then to understand the *Word, God with Thee God*, Which is spoken eternally, and by It are all things spoken eternally. For what was spoken was not spoken successively, one thing concluded that the next might be spoken, but all things together and eternally. Else have we time and change ; and not a true eternity nor true immortality. This I know, O my God, and give thanks. I know, I confess to Thee, O Lord, and with me doth know and bless Thee, whoso is not unthankful to assured Truth. We know, Lord, we know ; since, inasmuch as anything is not, which was, and is, which was not, so far forth it dieth and ariseth. Nothing then of Thy Word doth give place or succeed, because It is truly immortal and eternal.

And therefore unto the Word coëternal with Thee Thou dost at once and eternally say all that Thou dost say; and whatever Thou sayest shall be made, is made; nor dost Thou make, otherwise than by saying; and yet are not all things made together, or everlasting, which Thou makest by saying.

VIII. 10. Why, I beseech Thee, O Lord my God? I see it in a way; but how to express it, I know not, unless it be, that whatsoever begins to be, and leaves off to be, begins then, and leaves off then, when in Thy eternal Reason it is known, that it ought to begin or leave off; in which Reason Itself, nothing beginneth or leaveth off. This is Thy Word, which is also "*the Beginning, because also It speaketh unto us.*"¹ Thus, in the Gospel, He speaketh through the flesh; and this sounded outwardly in the ears of men, that it might be believed, and sought inwardly, and found in the eternal Verity; where the *good* and only *Master* teacheth all His disciples. There, Lord, hear I Thy voice speaking unto me; because He speaketh unto us, Who teacheth us. But he that teacheth us not, though He speaketh, to us He speaketh not. Who now teacheth us, but the unchangeable Truth? for even when we are admonished through a changeable creature, we are but led to the unchangeable Truth; where we learn truly, *while we stand and hear Him*, and *rejoice greatly because of the Bridegroom's voice*, restoring us to Him, from Whom we are. And He is therefore the Beginning, because unless He abide,

¹ John viii. 25.

there should not be whither to return, when we went astray. But when we return from error, it is through knowing that we return ; and that we may know, He teacheth us, because He is the *Beginning*, and speaketh unto us.

IX. 11. In this *Beginning*, O God, hast Thou made heaven and earth, in Thy Word, in Thy Son, in Thy Power, in Thy Wisdom, in Thy Truth ; wondrously speaking, and wondrously making. Who shall comprehend ? Who declare it ? What is that which gleams through me, and strikes my heart without hurting it, and I shudder and kindle ? I shudder, inasmuch as I am unlike it ; I kindle, inasmuch as I am like it. It is Wisdom, Wisdom's self which gleameth through me ; disparring my cloudiness which yet again mantles over me, shrinking from it, through the darkness which for my punishment gathers upon me. For my strength is brought down in need, so that I cannot support my blessings, till Thou, Lord, Who hast been gracious to all mine iniquities, shalt heal all my infirmities. For Thou shalt also redeem my life from corruption, and crown me with loving-kindness and tender mercies, and shalt satisfy my desire with good things, because my youth shall be renewed like an eagle's.¹ For in hope we are saved, wherefore we through patience wait for Thy promises. Let him that is able, hear Thee inwardly discoursing. I will boldly cry out of Thy oracle, How wonderful are Thy Works, O Lord, in Wisdom hast Thou made them all.²

¹ Ps. ciii. 3 sq

² Ps. civ. 24.

And this *Wisdom* is the *Beginning*, and in that *Beginning* didst Thou make heaven and earth.

X. 12. Lo, are they not full of their old leaven, who say to us, “What was God doing before *He made heaven and earth?*” “For if (say they) He were unemployed and wrought not, why does He not also henceforth, and forever, as He did heretofore? For did any new motion arise in God, and a new will to make a creature, which he had never before made, how then would that be a true eternity, where there ariseth a will, which was not? For the will of God is not a creature, but before the creature; seeing nothing could be created, unless the will of the Creator had preceded. The will of God, then, belongeth to His very Substance. And if aught have arisen in God’s Substance, which before was not, that Substance cannot be truly called eternal. But if the will of God has been from eternity that the creature should be, why was not the creature from eternity?”

XI. 13. They who speak thus, do not yet understand Thee, O Wisdom of God, Light of souls; understand not yet how the things be made, which by Thee, and in Thee are made: yet they strive to comprehend things eternal, whilst their heart fluttereth between the motions of things past and to come, and is still unstable. Who shall hold their heart, and fix it, that it be settled awhile, and awhile catch the glory of that ever-fixed Eternity, and compare it with the times which are never fixed, and see that it cannot be compared; and that a long time

cannot become long but out of many motions passing by, which motions cannot be prolonged altogether; but that in the Eternal nothing passeth, but the whole is present; whereas no time is all at once present: and that all time past is driven on by time to come, and all to come followeth upon the past; and all past and to come, is created, and flows out of that which is ever present? Who shall hold the heart of man, that it may stand still, and see how eternity ever still-standing, neither past nor to come, uttereth the times past and to come? Can my hand do this, or the hand of my mouth by speech bring about a thing so great?

XII. 14. See, I answer him that asketh, “What did God before He *made heaven and earth?*” I answer not as one is said to have done, merrily (eluding the pressure of the question), “He was preparing hell for pryers into mysteries.” It is one thing to answer inquiries, another to make sport of inquirers. I answer not thus; for rather had I answer, “I know not,” what I know not, than so answer as to raise a laugh at him who asketh deep things, and gain praise as one who answereth false things. But I say that Thou, our God, art the Creator of every creature; and if by the name “heaven and earth,” every creature be understood, I boldly say, that before God made heaven and earth, He did not make anything. For if He made, what did He make but a creature? And would that I knew whatsoever I desire to know to my profit, as surely as I know that

no creature was made, before there was made any creature.

XIII. 15. But if any excursive brain rove over the images of forepassed times, and wonder that Thou the God Almighty and All-creating and All-supporting, Maker of heaven and earth, didst for innumerable ages forbear from so great a work, before Thou wouldest make it; let him awake and consider, that he wonders at false conceits. For whence could innumerable ages pass by, which Thou madest not, Thou the Author and Creator of all ages? or what times should there be, which were not made by Thee? or how should they pass by, if they never were? Seeing, then, Thou art the Creator of all times, if any time was before Thou *madest heaven and earth*, why say they that Thou didst forego working? For that very time didst Thou make, nor could times pass by, before Thou madest those times. But if before *heaven and earth* there was no time, why is it demanded, what Thou *then* didst? For there was no "then," when there was no time.

16. Nor dost Thou by time precede time: else shouldest Thou not preeede all times. But Thou precedest all things past, by the sublimity of an ever-present eternity; and surpasest all future because they are future, and when they come, they shall be past; *but Thou art the Same, and Thy years fail not.* Thy years neither come nor go; whereas ours both come and go, that they all may come. Thy years stand together, because they do stand; nor are, departing, thrust out by coming years,

for they pass not away; but ours shall all be, when they shall be no more. Thy years are one day; and Thy day is not daily, but to-day, seeing Thy to-day gives not place unto to-morrow, for neither doth it replace yesterday. Thy to-day is Eternity, therefore didst Thou beget The Coëternal, to whom Thou saidst, *This day have I begotten Thee.*¹ Thou hast made all things; and before all times Thou art; neither in any time was time not.

XIV. 17. At no *time*, then, hadst Thou not made anything, because time itself Thou madest. And no times are coëternal with Thee because Thou abidest; but if they abode, they should not be times. For what is time? Who can readily and briefly explain this? Who can even in thought comprehend it, so as to utter a word about it? But what in discourse do we mention more familiarly and knowingly, than time? And we understand, when we speak of it; we understand, also, when we hear it spoken of by another. What then is time? If no one asks me, I know; if I wish to *explain* it to one that asketh, I know not; yet I say boldly, that I know that if nothing passed away, time past were not; and if nothing were coming, a time to come were not; and if nothing were, time present were not. Those two times then, past and to come, how are they, seeing the past now is not, and that to come is not yet? But the present, should it always be present, and never pass into time past, verily it should not be time, but eternity. If, therefore, time

¹ Ps. ii. 7; Heb. v. 5.

present, in order to be time at all, comes into existence only because it passes into time past, how can we say that that is in existence, whose cause of being is that it shall not be? How is it that we cannot truly say that time is, but because it is tending not to be?

XV. 18. And yet we say, "a long time" and a "short time;" still, only of time past or to come. A long time past (for example) we call an hundred years since; and a long time to come, an hundred years hence. But a short time past, we call (suppose) ten days since; and a short time to come, ten days hence. But in what sense is that long or short, which is not? For the past, is not now; and the future, is not yet. Let us not, then, say, "It is long;" but of the past, "It hath been long;" and of the future, "It will be long." O my Lord, my Light, shall not here also Thy Truth mock at man? For that past time which was long, was it long when it was now past, or when it was yet present? For then might it be long, when there was what could be long; but when past, it was no longer; wherefore, neither could that be long, which was not at all. Let us not, then, say, "Time past hath been long;" for we shall not find what hath been long, seeing that since it was past, it is no more; but let us say, "that present time was long;" because, when it was present, it was long. For it had not yet passed away, so as not to be; and therefore there was, what could be long; but after it was past, that ceased also to be long, which ceased to be.

19. Let us see; then, thou soul of man, whether present time can be long.; for to thee it is given to feel and to measure length of time. What wilt thou answer me? Are an hundred years, when present, a long time? See first whether an hundred years can be present. For if the first of these years be now current, it is present, but the other ninety and nine are to come, and therefore are not yet; but if the second year be current, one is now past, another present, the rest to come. And so if we assume any middle year of this hundred to be present, all before it are passed; all after it to come; wherefore an hundred years cannot be present. But see at least whether that one which is now current, itself is present; for if the current month be its first, the rest are to come; if the second, the first is already past, and the rest are not yet. Therefore neither is the year now current present; and if not present as a whole, then is not the year present. For twelve months are a year; of which, whatever be the current month is present; the rest past or to come. Although neither is that current month present, but one day, only; the rest being to come, if it be the first; past, if the last; if any of the middle, then amid past and to come.

20. See how the present time, which alone we found could be called long, is abridged to the length scarce of one day. But let us examine that also; because, neither is one day present as a whole. For it is made up of four and twenty hours of night and day; of which, the first hath the rest to come; the last hath them past; and any of the middle hath

those before it past, those behind it to come. Yea, that one hour passeth away in flying particles. Whatsoever of it hath flown away, is past; whatsoever remaineth, is to come. If an instant of time be conceived, which cannot be divided into the smallest particles of moments, that alone is it, which may be called present. Which yet flies with such speed from future to past, as not to be lengthened out with the least stay. For if it be, it is divided into past and future. The present hath no space. Where then is the time which we may call long? Is it to come? But, of this we do not say, "It is long," because it is not yet at all, so as to be long; but we say, "It will be long." When, therefore, will it be long? For if, while it is yet in the future, it cannot be long (because what does not exist cannot be long), and, therefore, can be long only when from the future, which as yet is not, it shall begin now to be, and have become present, that so there should exist what may be long,—if this be so, then does time present cry out, in the words above, that it cannot be long.

XVI. 21. And yet, Lord, we perceive intervals of times, and compare them, and say, some are shorter, and others longer. We measure, also, how much longer or shorter this time is than that; and we answer, "This is double, or treble, and that, but once, or only just so much as that." But we measure times as they are passing, by perceiving them; but past, which now are not, or the future, which are not yet, who can measure? unless a man shall presume to say, that can be measured which is not. When the time

is passing, it may be perceived and measured; but when it is past, it cannot, because it is not.

XVII. 22. I ask, Father, I affirm not; O my God, rule and guide me. Who will tell me that there are not three times (as we learned when boys, and taught boys), past, present, and future, but only one, the present, because those two are not? Or are they also; and when from future it becometh present, doth it come out of some secret place; and so, when retiring, from present it becometh past? For where did they, who foretold things to come, see them, if as yet they be not? For that which is not, cannot be seen. And they who relate things past, could not relate them, if in mind they did not discern them, and if they were not, they could no way be discerned. Things then past and to come are.

XVIII. 23. Permit me, Lord, to seek further. O my Hope, let not my purpose be confounded. For if times past and to come be, I would know where they be. Which yet if I cannot, yet I know, wherever they be, they are not there as future, or past, but present. For if there also they be future, they are not yet there; if there also they be past, they are no longer there. Wheresoever then is whatsoever is, it is only as present. Although when past facts are related, there are drawn out of the memory, not the things themselves which are past, but words, which, conceived by the images of the things, they, in passing, have through the senses left as traces in the mind. Thus my childhood, which now is not, is in time past, which now is not; but now when I re-

call its image, and tell of it, I behold it in the present, because it is still in my memory. Whether there be a like cause of foretelling things to come also, so that of things which as yet are not, the images may be perceived before already existing, I confess, O my God, I know not. This indeed I know, that we generally think before on our future actions, and that that fore-thinking is present, but the action whereof we fore-think is not yet, because it is to come. Which, when we have set upon, and have begun to do what we were forethinking, then shall that action be; because then it is no longer future, but present.

24. Which way soever, then, this secret fore-perceiving of things to come be, that only can be seen which is. But what now is, is not future, but present. When, then, things to come are said to be seen, it is not themselves, which as yet are not (that is, which are to be), but their causes, perchance, or signs, are seen, which already are. Therefore they are not future but present to those who now see that from which the future, being fore-conceived in the mind, is foretold. Which fore-conceptions again now are; and those who foretell those things, do behold the conceptions present before them. Let now the numerous variety of things furnish me some example. I behold the daybreak, I foretell that the sun is about to rise. What I behold, is present; what I fore-signify, to come; not the sun, which already is; but the sun-rising, which is not yet. And yet did I not in my mind imagine the sun-rising itself (as now while I speak of it), I could not foretell it. But neither is

that day-break, which I discern in the sky, the sunrising, although it goes before it; nor that imagination of my mind ; which two are seen now present, that the other which is to be may be foretold. Future things then are not yet; and if they be not yet, they are not; and if they are not, they cannot be seen; yet foretold they may be from things present, which are already, and are seen.

XIX. 25. Thou, then, Ruler of Thy creation, by what way dost Thou teach souls things to come? For Thou didst teach Thy Prophets. By what way dost Thou, to Whom nothing is to come, teach things to come; or, rather, concerning the future, dost teach things present? For, what is not, cannot be taught. Too far is this way out of my ken : *it is too mighty for me, I cannot attain unto it*; but from Thee I can, when Thou shalt vouchsafe it, O sweet Light of my hidden eyes.

XX. 26. What now is clear and plain is, that neither things to come nor past are. Nor is it properly said, "There be three times, past, present, and to come :" yet perchance it might be properly said, "There be three times ; a present of things past, a present of things present, and a present of things future." For these three do exist, in some sort, in the soul, but otherwise do I not see them : a present of things past, memory ; a present of things present, sight ; a present of things future, expectation. If thus we be permitted to speak, I see three times, and I confess there are three. Let it be said, too, "There be three times, past, present, and to come," in our in-

correct way. See, I object not, nor gainsay, nor find fault, if what is so said be but understood, that neither what is to be, now is, nor what is past. For there are but few things which we speak properly, most things improperly; still the things intended are understood.

XXI. 27. I said then even now, we measure times as they pass, in order to be able to say, this time is twice so much as that one; or, this is just so much as that; and so of any other part of time which is measurable. Wherefore, as I said, we measure times as they pass. And if any should ask me, "How knowest Thou?" I might answer, "I know that we do measure, nor can we measure things that are not; and things past and to come are not." But time present how do we measure, seeing it hath no space? It is measured while passing, but when it shall have passed, it is not measured; for there will be nothing to be measured. But whence, by what way, and whither passes it, while it is a measuring? whence, but from the future? which way but through the present? whither, but into the past? From that, therefore, which is not yet, through that, which hath no space, into that, which now is not. Yet what do we measure, if not time in some space? For we do not say single, and double, and triple, and equal, or any other like way that we speak of time, except of spaces of times. In what space, then, do we measure time passing? In the future, into which it passes? But what is not yet, we measure not. Or in the present, through which it passes? But no space,

we do not measure. Or in the past, to which it passes? But neither do we measure that which now is not.

XXII. 28. My soul is on fire to know this most intricate enigma. Shut it not up, O Lord my God, good Father; through Christ I beseech Thee, do not shut up these usual, yet hidden things from my desire, that it be hindered from piercing into them; but let them dawn through Thy enlightening mercy, O Lord. Whom shall I inquire of concerning these things? and to whom shall I more fruitfully confess my ignorance, than to Thee, to Whom these my studies, so vehemently kindled towards Thy Scriptures, are not so troublesome? Give what I love; for I do love, and this hast Thou given me. Give, Father, Who *truly knowest to give good gifts unto Thy children.* Give, because I have taken upon me to know, and trouble is before me until Thou openest it. By Christ, I beseech Thee, in His Name, Holy of Holies, let no man disturb me. For *I believed, and therefore do I speak.* This is my hope, for this do I live, that *I may contemplate the delights of the Lord.* Behold, *Thou hast made my days old,* and they pass away, and how, I know not. And we talk of time and time, and times and times. “How long time is it since he said this?” “how long time since he did this?” and, “how long time since I saw that?” and, “this syllable hath double time to that single short syllable.” These words we speak, and these we hear, and are understood, and understand. Most manifest and ordinary they are, and the self-same things again

are but too deeply hidden, and the discovery of them were new.

XXIII. 26. I heard once from a learned man, that the motions of the sun, moon and stars constituted time, and I assented not. For why should not, rather, the motions of all bodies be times? Or, if the lights of heaven should cease, and a potter's wheel run round, would there be no time by which we might measure those whirlings, and say, that either it moved with equal pauses, or if it turned sometimes slower, otherwise quicker, that some rounds were longer, others shorter? Or, while we were saying this, should we not also be speaking in time? And would there not be in our words, some syllables short, others long, because those sounded in a shorter time, these in a longer? God grant to men to see in a small thing, notices common to things great and small. The stars and lights of heaven are also *for signs, and for seasons, and for years and for days;* they are; yet neither should I say that the going round of that wooden wheel was a day, nor yet he, that it was therefore no time.

30. I desire to know the force and nature of time, by which we measure the motions of bodies, and say, for example, "This motion is twice as long as that." For I ask, seeing "day" denotes not the stay only of the sun upon the earth (according to which, day is one thing, night another), but also its whole circuit from east to east again (according to which, we say, "there passed so many days," the night being included when we say, "so many days," and the nights not

reckoned apart), — seeing then a day is completed by the motion of the sun, and by his circuit from east to east again, I ask, does the motion alone make the day, or the stay in which that motion is completed, or both? For, if the first be the day, then should we have a day, although the sun should finish that course in so small a space of time as one hour comes to. If the second, then should not that make a day, if between one sun-rise and another there were but so short a stay as one hour comes to; but the sun must go four and twenty times about to complete one day. If both, then neither could that be called a day, if the sun should run his whole round in the space of one hour; nor that, if, while the sun stood still, so much time should overpass, as the sun usually makes his whole course in, from morning to morning. I will not, therefore, now ask what that is which is called day; but, what time is, whereby we, measuring the circuit of the sun, should say that it was finished in half the time it was wont, if so be it was finished in so small a space as twelve hours; and comparing both times, should call this a single time, that a double time; even supposing the sun to run his round from east to east, sometimes in that single, sometimes in that double time. Let no man, then, tell me that the motions of the heavenly bodies constitute times because, when at the prayer of one the sun had stood still till he could achieve his victorious battle, the sun stood still, but time went on. For in its own allotted space of time was that

battle waged and ended.¹ I perceive time, then, to be a certain extension. But do I perceive it, or seem to perceive it? Thou, Light and Truth, wilt show me.

XXIV. 31. Dost Thou bid me assent, if any define time to be "motion of a body?" Thou dost not bid me. For that no body is moved, but in time, I hear; this Thou sayest; but that the motion of a body is time, I hear not; Thou sayest it not. For when a body is moved, I by time measure how long it moves, from the time it began to move, until it left off. And if I did not see whence it began, and it continue to move so that I see not when it ends, I cannot measure, save perchance from the time I began to see, until I cease to see. And if I look long, I can only pronounce it to be a long time, but not how long; because when we say "how long," we do it by comparison; as, "this is as long as that," or "this twice so long as that," or the like. But when we can mark the distances of the places, whence and whither goeth the body moved, or its parts, if it moved as in a lathe, then can we say precisely in how much time the motion of that body or its part, from this place unto that, was finished. Seeing, therefore, the motion of a body is one thing, that by which we measure how long it is, another; who sees not, which of the two is rather to be called time? And if a body sometimes moves, and sometimes stands still, then we measure not its motion only, but its standing still, too, by time; and we say, "it stood still as much as it moved;" or, "it stood still twice

¹ Joshua x. 12 sq.

or thrice as long as it moved;" or any other space which our measuring hath either ascertained, or guessed; more or less, as we used to say. Time, then, is not the motion of a body.

XXV. 32. And I confess to Thee O Lord, that I yet know not what time is; and again I confess unto Thee, O Lord, that I know that I speak this in time, and that having long spoken of time, that very "long" is not long, but by the pause of time. How then know I this, seeing I know not what time is? or is it perchance that I know not how to express what I know? Woe is me, that do not even know what I do not know. Behold, O my God, before Thee I lie not; but as I speak, so is my heart. *Thou shalt light my candle; Thou, O Lord my God, wilt enlighten my darkness.*

XXVI. 33. Does not my soul most truly confess unto Thee that I do measure times? Do I then measure, O my God, and know not what I measure? I measure the motion of a body in time; and the time itself do I not measure? Or could I indeed measure the motion of a body, how long it were, and in how long space it could come from this place to that, without measuring the time in which it is moved? This same time, then, how do I measure? do we by a shorter time measure a longer, as by the space of a cubit, the space of a rood? for so indeed we seem by the space of a short syllable, to measure the space of a long syllable, and to say that this is double the other. Thus measure we the spaces of stanzas by the spaces of the verses, and the spaces of the verse

by the spaces of the feet, and the spaces of the feet by the spaces of the syllables, and the spaces of long by the spaces of short syllables, not measuring by paces (for then we measure spaces, not times); but when we utter the words and they pass by, we say, “It is a long stanza, because composed of so many verses; long verses, because consisting of so many feet; long feet, because prolonged by so many syllables; a long syllable, because double to a short one.” But neither do we this way obtain any certain measure of time; because it may be that a shorter verse, pronounced more fully, may take up more time than a longer, pronounced hurriedly. And so for a verse, a foot, a syllable. Whence it seemed to me, that time is nothing else than protraction; but of what, I know not. And I wonder whether it be not of the mind itself? For what, I beseech Thee, O my God, do I measure, when I say, either indefinitely, “this is a longer time than that,” or definitely, “this is double that?” That I measure time, I know; and yet I measure not time to come, for it is not yet; nor present, because it is not protracted by any space; nor past, because it now is not. What then do I measure? Times passing, not past? for so I said.

XXVII. 34. Courage, my mind, and press on mightily. God is our helper, He *made us, and not we ourselves*. Press on where truth begins to dawn. Suppose, now, the voice of a body begins to sound, and does sound, and sounds on, and last, it ceases; it is silence now, and that voice is past, and is no more a voice. Before it sounded, it was to come, and

could not be measured, because as yet it was not, and now it cannot, because it is no longer. Then, therefore, while it sounded, it might; because there then was what might be measured. But yet even then it was not at a stay; for it was passing on, and passing away. Could it be measured the rather, for that? For, while passing, it was being extended into some space of time, so that it might be measured, since the present hath no space. If, therefore, then it might, then, lo, suppose another voice hath begun to sound, and still soundeth in one continued tenor, without any interruption; let us measure it while it sounds; seeing when it hath left sounding, it will then be past, and nothing left to be measured; let us measure it verily, and tell how much it is. But it sounds still, nor can it be measured but from the instant it began in, unto the end it left off in. For the very space between is the thing we measure; namely, from some beginning, unto some end. Wherefore, a voice that is not yet ended, cannot be measured, so that it may be said how long, or short it is; nor can it be called equal to another, or double to a single, or the like. But when ended, it no longer is. How may it then be measured? And yet we measure times; but yet neither those which are not yet, nor those which no longer are, nor those which are not lengthened out by some pause, nor those which have no bounds. We measure neither times to come, nor past, nor present, nor passing; and yet we do measure times.

35. "Deus Creator omnium," this verse of eight syllables alternates between short and long syllables.

The four short, then (the first, third, fifth, and seventh), are but single, in respect of the four long (the second, fourth, sixth, and eighth). Every one of the latter hath a double time to every one of the former; I pronounce them, report on them, and find it so, as one's plain sense perceives. By plain sense, then, I measure a long syllable by a short, and I sensibly find it to have twice so much; but when one sounds after the other, if the former be short, the latter long, how shall I detain the short one, and how, measuring, shall I apply it to the long, that I may find this to have twice so much; seeing the long does not begin to sound unless the short leaves sounding? And that long one itself, I do not measure while present, seeing I measure it not till it be ended? Now its ending is its passing away. What then is it I measure? where is the short syllable by which I measure? where the long which I measure? Both have sounded, have flown, passed away, are no more; and yet I measure, and confidently answer (so far as is presumed on a practised sense), that as to space of time this syllable is but single, that double. And yet I could not do this, unless they were already past and ended. It is not, then, themselves, which now are not, that I measure, but something in my memory, which there remains fixed.

36. It is in thee, my mind, that I measure times. Interrupt me not, that is, interrupt not thyself with the tumults of thy impressions. In thee I measure times; the impression, which things as they pass by cause in thee, remains even when they are gone;

this it is which still present, I measure, and not the things which pass by to make this impression. This I measure, when I measure times. Either, then, this is time, or I do not measure times. How is it then, when we measure silence, and say that this silence hath held as long time as did that voice? do we not stretch out our thought to the measure of a voice, as if it sounded; that so we may be able to report of the intervals of silence in a given space of time? For though both voice and tongue be still, yet in thought we go over poems, and verses, and any other discourse, or dimensions of motions, and report as to the spaces of times, how much this is in respect of that, no otherwise than if vocally we did pronounce them. If a man would utter a lengthened sound, and had settled in thought how long it should be, he hath in silence already gone through a space of time, and, committing it to memory, begins to utter that speech, which sounds on, until it be brought unto the end proposed. Yea it hath sounded, and will sound; for so much of it as is finished, hath sounded already, and the rest will sound. And thus passeth it on, until the present intent conveys over the future into the past; the past increasing by the diminution of the future, until by the consumption of the future, all is past.

XXVIII. 37. But how is that future diminished or consumed, which as yet is not? or how that past increased, which is now no longer, unless because that in the mind which enacts this, there be three things done? For it expects, it considers (attendit), it re-

members; in such way that that which it expects, through that which it considers, passes into that which it remembers. Who therefore denies that things to come are not as yet? and yet, there is in the mind an expectation of things to come. And who denies past things to be now no longer? and yet there is still in the mind a memory of things past. And who denies that the present time hath no space, because it passes away in a moment? and yet our consideration (*attentio*) continues, through which that which shall be present proceeds to become absent. It is not then future time, that is long, for as yet it is not; but a "long future," is "a long expectation of the future." Nor is it time past, which now is not, that is long; but a "long past," is "a long memory of the past."

38. I am about to repeat a Psalm that I know. Before I begin, my expectation is extended over the whole; but when I have begun, how much soever of it I shall separate off into the past, is extended along my memory; thus the life of this action of mine is divided between my memory as to what I have repeated, and expectation as to what I am about to repeat; but "consideration" (*attentio*) is present with me, that through it, what was future may be conveyed over, so as to become past. Which the more it is done again and again, so much the more the expectation being shortened, is the memory enlarged; till the whole expectation be at length exhausted, when that whole action being ended, shall have passed into memory. And this which takes place in

the whole Psalm, takes place in each several portion of it, and each several syllable; the same holds in that longer action, whereof this Psalm may be a part; the same holds in the whole life of man, whereof all the actions of man are parts; the same holds through the whole age of the sons of men, whereof all the lives of men are parts.

XXIX. 39. But because *Thy loving kindness is better than all lives*, behold, my life is but a distraction, and *Thy right hand upheld me*, in my Lord the *Son of Man*, the *Mediator betwixt Thee*, The One, and us many (many also through our manifold distractions amid many things), that by Him *I may apprehend in Whom I have been apprehended*, and may be re-collected from my old conversation, to follow The One, *forgetting what is behind, and not distended, but extended*, not to things which shall be and shall pass away, but *to those things which are before*, not distractedly but intently *follow on for the prize of my heavenly calling* where I may hear the voice of Thy praise, and contemplate Thy delights, ever coming, never passing away. But now *are my years spent in mourning*. And Thou, O Lord, art my comfort, my Father everlasting. But I have been severed amid times, whose order I know not; and my thoughts, even the inmost bowels of my soul, are rent and mangled with tumultuous varieties, until I flow together into Thee, purified and molten by the fire of Thy love.

XXX. 40. And now will I stand, and become solid in Thee, in my mould, Thy truth; nor will I endure

the questions of men, who by a penal disease thirst for more than they can contain, and say, “What did God before He made *heaven and earth?*” “Or, how came it into His mind to make anything, having never made anything?” Give them, O Lord, to bethink themselves what they say, and to find that “never” cannot be predicated, when “time” is not. This, then, that He is said “never to have made;” what else is it than to say, “in ‘no time’ to have made?” Let them see, therefore, that time cannot be without created being, and *cease to speak that vanity.* May they also be *extended towards those things which are before;* and understand Thee before all times the eternal Creator of all times, and that no times be coëternal with Thee, nor any creature, even if there be any creature before all times.

XXXI. 41. O Lord my God, what a depth is that recess of Thy mysteries, and how far from it have the consequences of my transgressions cast me! Heal mine eyes that I may share the joy of Thy light. Certainly, if there be a mind gifted with such vast knowledge and foreknowledge as to know all things past and to come, as I know one well-known Psalm, truly that mind is passing wonderful, and fearfully amazing; in that, nothing past, nothing to come in after ages, is any more hidden from him, than when I sung that Psalm, was hidden from me, what, and how much of it had passed away from the beginning, what, and how much there remained unto the end. But far be it, that Thou, the Creator of the universe, the Creator of souls and bodies, far be it, that Thou

shouldest in such wise know all past and to come. Far, far more wonderfully, and far more mysteriously, dost Thou know them. For not as the feelings of one who sings what he knows, or hears some well-known song, through expectation of the words to come, and the remembering of those that are past, are varied, and his senses divided,—not so doth any thing happen unto Thee, unchangeably eternal, that is, the Eternal Creator of minds. As, then, Thou *in the Beginning knewest the heaven and the earth*, without any variety of Thy knowledge, so *mадест Thou in the beginning, heaven and earth*, without any distraction of thy action. Whoso understandeth, let him confess unto Thee; and whoso understandeth not, let him confess unto Thee. Oh, how high art Thou! and yet the humble in heart are Thy dwelling-place; for Thou *raisest up those that are bowed down*, and they fall not, whose elevation Thou art.

THE TWELFTH BOOK.

AUGUSTINE PROCEEDS TO COMMENT ON GENESIS I. 1, AND EXPLAINS THE "HEAVEN" TO MEAN THAT SPIRITUAL AND INCORPOREAL CREATION, WHICH CLEAVES TO GOD UNINTERMITTINGLY, ALWAYS BEHOLDING HIS COUNTENANCE—"EARTH," THE FORMLESS MATTER WHEREOF THE CORPOREAL CREATION WAS AFTERWARDS FORMED—HE DOES NOT REJECT, HOWEVER, OTHER INTERPRETATIONS, WHICH HE ADDUCES, BUT RATHER CONFESSES THAT SUCH IS THE DEPTH OF HOLY SCRIPTURE, THAT MANIFOLD SENSES MAY AND OUGHT TO BE EXTRACTED FROM IT, AND THAT WHATEVER TRUTH CAN BE OBTAINED FROM ITS WORDS, DOES, IN FACT, LIE CONCEALED IN THEM.

I. 1. My heart, O Lord, touched with the words of Thy holy Scripture, is much busied, amid this poverty of my life. And therefore, oftentimes, is the poverty of human understanding copious in words, because inquiring hath more to say than discovering, and demanding is longer than obtaining, and our hand that knocketh hath more work to do than our hand that receives. But we have the promise (who shall make it null?) : *If God be for us, who can be against us? Ask, and ye shall have; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, shall it be opened.*¹ These are Thine own promises; and who

need fear to be deceived, when the Truth promiseth?

II. 2. The lowness of my tongue confesseth unto Thy Highness, that Thou *mадest heaven and earth*; this heaven which I see, and this earth that I tread upon, whence also is this earth that I bear about me, Thou madest it. But where is that *heaven of heavens*, O Lord, which we hear of in the words of the Psalm : *The heaven of heavens are the Lord's; but the earth hath He given to the children of men?*¹ Where is that heaven which we see not, and, compared with which, all this which we see is earth ? For this corporeal whole, not being wholly everywhere, hath in such wise received its portion of beauty in these lower parts, whereof the lowest is this our earth ; but in comparison to that *heaven of heavens*, even the heaven of our earth is but earth : yea, both these great bodies may not absurdly be called *earth*, when compared to that unknown *heaven, which is the Lord's, not the sons' of men.*

III. 3. And now this *earth* was *invisible* and *without form*, and there was I know not what depth of abyss, upon which there was no light, because it had no shape. Therefore didst Thou command it to be written, that *darkness was upon the face of the deep*, — what else than the absence of light ? For had there been light, where should it have been but by being over all, aloft, and enlightening ? Where then light was not, what was the presence of darkness, but the absence of light ? *Darkness, therefore, was*

¹ Ps. cxv. 16

upon it, because light was not upon it; as where sound is not, there is silence. And what is it to have silence there, but to have no sound there? Hast not Thou, O Lord, taught this soul, which confesseth unto Thee? Hast not Thou taught me, Lord, that before Thou didst form and diversify this formless matter, there was nothing; neither color, nor figure, nor body, nor spirit? And yet not altogether nothing; for there was a certain formlessness, without any beauty.

IV. 4. How then should it be called, that it might be in some measure conveyed to those of duller mind, but by some ordinary word? And what, among all parts of the world, can be found nearer to an absolute formlessness, than *earth* and *deep*? For, occupying the lowest stage, they are less beautiful than the other higher parts are, transparent all and shining. Wherefore, then, may I not conceive the formlessness of matter (which Thou hadst created without beauty, whereof to make this beautiful world) to be suitably intimated unto men, by the name of *earth invisible and without form*.

V. 5. So that when thought seeketh what the sense may conceive under this, and saith to itself, "It is no intellectual form, as life, or justice, because it is the matter of bodies; nor object of sense, because, being *invisible* and without form, there was in it no object of sight or sense,"—while man's thought thus saith to itself, it may endeavor either to know it, by being ignorant of it; or to be ignorant, by knowing it.

VI. 6. But I, Lord (if I would by my tongue and my pen confess unto Thee the whole that Thyself hath taught me of that matter, the name whereof hearing and not understanding, when they who understood it not told me of it), so conceived of it, as having innumerable forms, and diverse. And therefore I did not clearly conceive it at all. My mind tossed up and down foul and horrible "forms" out of all order, but yet "forms;" and I called it *without form*, not because it wanted all form, but because it had such as my mind would, if presented to it, turn from, as unwonted and jarring, and human frailness would be troubled at. And still, that which I conceived was *without form*, not as being deprived of all form, but in comparison of more beautiful forms; and true reason did persuade me, that I must utterly uncase it of all remnants of form whatsoever, if I would conceive matter absolutely *without form*; and I could not; for sooner could I imagine that which should be deprived of all form not to be, than conceive a thing betwixt form and nothing, neither formed, nor nothing, a formless almost nothing. So my mind gave over to question thereupon with my spirit, it being filled with the images of formed bodies, and changing and varying them, as it willed; and I bent myself to the bodies themselves, and looked more deeply into their changeableness, by which they cease to be what they have been, and begin to be what they were not; and this same shifting from form to form, I suspected to be through a certain formless state, not through a mere nothing;

yet this I longed to know, not to suspect only. But if my voice and pen confessed unto Thee the whole, whatsoever knots Thou didst open for me in this question, what reader would hold out to take in the whole? But my heart shall not cease to give Thee honor, and a song of praise, for those things which it is not able to express. The changeableness of changeable things is itself capable of all those forms, into which these changeable things are changed. But this changeableness, what is it? Is it soul? Is it body? Is it that which constituteth soul or body? If one might use the phrase "a nothing something," an "is, is not," I would say this were it: and yet in some way it even then was, as being capable of receiving these visible and compound figures.

VII. 7. But whence had it this degree of being, but from Thee, from Whom are all things, so far forth as they are? but so much the further from Thee, as the unliker Thee; for it is not distance in space which makes the difference. Thou, therefore, Lord, Who art not one in one place, and otherwise in another, but the Self-same, and the Self-same, and the Self-same, *Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty*, didst *in the Beginning*, which is of Thee, in Thy Wisdom, which was born of Thine own Substance, create something, and that out of nothing. For Thou *createdst heaven and earth*; not out of Thyself; for so should they have been equal to Thine Only Begotten Son, and thereby to Thee also; whereas no way were it right that aught should be equal to Thee, which was not of Thee.

And aught else beside Thee was there not, whereof Thou mightest create them, O God, One Trinity, and Trine Unity; and therefore out of nothing didst Thou *create heaven and earth*,—a great thing, and a small thing; for Thou art Almighty and Good, to make all things good, even the great heaven, and the petty earth. Thou wert, and nothing was there besides, out of which Thou *createdst heaven and earth*,—things of two sorts; one near Thee, the other near to nothing; one, to which Thou alone shouldst be superior, the other, to which nothing should be inferior.

VIII. 8. But that *heaven of heavens was for Thyself, O Lord*; and the *earth which Thou gavest to the sons of men*, to be seen and felt, was not such as we now see and feel. For it was *invisible, without form*, and there was a *deep*, upon which there was no light; or *darkness was above the deep*, that is, more than in the deep. Because this *deep* of waters, visible now, hath even in its depths a light proper for its nature; perceptible in some degree unto the fishes, and creeping things in the bottom of it. But that whole deep was almost nothing, because hitherto it was altogether *without form*; yet there was already that which could be formed. For Thou, Lord, madest the world of a matter *without form*, which, out of nothing, Thou madest next to nothing, thereof to make those great things which we sons of men wonder at. For very wonderful is this corporal heaven; the *firmament between water and water*, of which upon the second day, after the creation of

light, Thou saidst, *Let it be made, and it was made.* Which *firmament Thou calledst heaven*; the heaven, that is, to this earth and sea, which Thou madest the third day, by giving a visible figure to the formless matter which Thou madest before all days. For already hadst Thou made an heaven before all days,¹ but that was the heaven of this heaven; because *In the beginning Thou hadst made heaven and earth.* But this same earth which Thou madest, was formless matter, because *it was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep*,—of which *invisible earth and without form*, of which formlessness, of which almost nothing, Thou mightest make all these things of which this changeable world consists, but does not subsist; whose very changeableness appears therein, that times can be observed and numbered in it. For times are made by the alterations of things, which result from the variation of the figures (species) which constitute the matter of the invisible earth aforesaid.

IX. 9. And therefore the Spirit, the Teacher of Thy servant, when it recounts Thee to have *In the Beginning created heaven and earth*, speaks nothing of times, nothing of days. For verily that *heaven of heavens* which Thou *createdst in the Beginning*, is some intellectual creature, which, although no

¹ Augustine here anticipates the modern geological exegesis, which places an indefinite space of time between the action designated in the first verse of Genesis, and that designated in the second and succeeding verses. The first, or most absolute act of creative power, is the creation of chaos, “before all [six] days;” then succeeds the cosmical formation of this chaotic matter, in the six days’ work.—ED.

ways coëternal unto Thee, the Trinity, yet partaketh of Thy eternity, and doth through the sweetness of that most happy contemplation of Thyself, strongly restrain its own changeableness; and, without any fall since its first creation, cleaving close unto Thee, is placed beyond all the rolling vicissitudes of times. Yea, neither is this very formlessness of the *earth invisible and without form*, numbered among the days. For where no figure nor order is, there does nothing come or go; and where this is not, there plainly are no days, nor any vicissitude of spaces of times.

X. 10. Oh, let the Light, the Truth, the Light of my heart, not mine own darkness, speak unto me. I fell off into that, and became darkened; but even thence, even thence I loved Thee. I went astray, and remembered Thee. *I heard Thy voice behind me*, calling to me to return, and scarcely heard it, through the tumultuousness of the enemies of peace. And now, behold, I return in distress, and panting after Thy fountain. Let no man forbid me! of this will I drink, and so live. Let me not be my own life; from myself I lived ill; death was I to myself, and I revive in Thee. Do Thou speak unto me, do Thou discourse unto me. I have believed Thy Books, and their words be most full of mystery.

XI. 11. Already Thou hast told me with a strong voice, O Lord, in mine inner ear, that Thou art eternal, *Who only hast immortality*: since Thou canst not be changed as to figure or motion, nor is Thy will altered by times, because no will which varies is immortal. This is in Thy sight clear to me, and let

it be more and more clear to me, I beseech Thee; and in the manifestation thereof, let me with sobriety abide under Thy wings. Thou hast told me also with a strong voice, O Lord, in my inner ear, that Thou hast made all natures and substances, which are not what Thyself is, and yet are; that that only is not from Thee, which is not, and, also, the motion of the will from Thee who art, unto that which in a less degree is, because such motion is transgression and sin; and that no man's sin doth either hurt Thee, or disturb the order of Thy government, first or last. This is, in Thy sight, clear unto me, and let it be more and more cleared to me, I beseech Thee; and in the manifestation thereof, let me with sobriety abide under Thy wings.

12. Thou hast told me also with a strong voice, in my inner ear, that neither is that creature coëternal unto Thyself, whose happiness Thou only art, even though with a most persevering purity, drawing its nourishment from Thee, it should never put forth its natural mutability; and, although, Thyself being ever present with it, it should with its whole affection keep itself to Thee, having neither future to expect, nor conveying into the past what it remembereth, neither altered by any change, nor distracted into any times. O blessed creature! if such there be, cleaving unto Thy Blessedness; blessed in Thee, its eternal Inhabitant and its Enlightener! I find no better name to call *the heaven of heavens*, which is *the Lord's*, than Thine house, one pure mind contemplating Thy beatitude, most harmoniously one,

in a settled peace of holy spirits, citizens of Thy city in *heavenly places*; far above those heavenly places that we see.¹

13. The soul, whose pilgrimage is long and far away by this may understand, if she now *thirsts for Thee*, if her tears be now become her bread, while they daily say unto her, *Where is thy God?* if she now seeks of Thee one thing, and desires it, that she may dwell in Thy house all the days of her life (and what is her life, but Thou? and what Thy days, but Thy eternity, for *Thy years fail not, because Thou art ever the same?*), — by this, then, may the soul that is able, understand how far Thou art, above all time, eternal; seeing, Thy house, which at no time went into a far country, although it be not coëternal with Thee, yet by continually and unfailingly cleaving unto Thee, suffers no changeableness of times. This is in Thy sight clear unto me, and let it be more and more cleared unto me, I beseech Thee, and in the manifestation thereof, let me with sobriety abide under Thy wings.

14. There is, behold, I know not what formlessness in the changes of the last and lowest creatures. And who would tell me (unless one who, through the emptiness of his own heart, wanders and tosses himself up and down amid his own fancies), — who but such a one would tell me, that if all figure be so wasted and consumed away, that there should only remain formlessness, through which the thing was changed and turned from one figure to another, it

¹ Compare XV. 18 infra.

could exhibit the vicissitudes of times? Plainly it could not, because, without variety of motions, there are no times; and no variety, where there is no figure.

XII. 15. These things considered, as Thou givest, O my God, as Thou stirrest me up to *knock*, and as Thou *openest* to me, *knocking*, I find that Thou hast made two things, not within the compass of time, neither of which is coëternal with Thee. One is so formed, that, without any ceasing of contemplation, without any interval of change, changeable, yet not changed, it may thoroughly enjoy Thy eternity and unchangeableness; the other, so formless, that it had not that which could be changed from one form into another, whether of motion, or of repose, so as to become subject unto time. But this Thou didst not leave thus formless, because, before all days, Thou *in the Beginning didst create Heaven and Earth*; the two things that I spake of. *But the Earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep.* In which words is the formlessness conveyed unto us, who are not able to conceive an utter privation of all form, without yet coming to nothing; and, out of this formlessness, another Heaven was created, together with a visible and well-formed earth, and the waters diversely ordered, and all that which in the formation of the world is recorded to have been created in days; it being of such nature, that the successive changes of times may take place in it, as being subject to appointed alterations of motions and of forms.

XIII. 16. This, then, is what I conceive, O my God, when I hear Thy Scripture saying, *In the beginning God made Heaven and Earth, and the earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep;* and not mentioning what day Thou createdst them. It is, therefore, because of the *Heaven of heavens*, that intellectual Heaven, whose intelligent inhabitants know all at once, not *in part*, not *darkly*, not *through a glass*, but as a whole, *in manifestation, face to face*, not this thing now, and that thing anon, but all at once, without any succession of times; and because of the *earth invisible and without form*, without any succession of times, which succession presents “this thing now, that thing anon” (because where is no form, there is no distinction of things), — it is, then, on account of these *two*, a primitive formed, and a primitive formless, the one, *heaven*, but the *Heaven of heaven*, the other *earth*, but the *earth invisible and without form*, — it is because there were these *two*, that Thy Scripture said, without mention of days, *In the Beginning God created Heaven and Earth.* For forthwith it subjoined what earth it speaks of; and, moreover, as the *Firmament* is recorded to be created the second day, and called *Heaven*, it shows to us of which Heaven it before spake without mention of days.

XIV. 17 Wondrous depth of Thy words! whose surface, behold! is before us, inviting to the docile and childlike; yet are they a wondrous depth, O my God, a wondrous depth! It is awful to look therein; an awfulness of honor, and a trembling of love. *The*

enemies thereof I hate vehemently. O that Thou wouldest *slay* them with Thy *two-edged sword*, that they might no longer be enemies unto it! for so do I love to have them slain unto themselves, that they may live unto Thee. But behold others, not fault-finders, but extollers of the book of Genesis, say: “The Spirit of God, Who by His servant Moses wrote these things, would not have those words thus understood; He would not have them understood as *Thou sayest*, but otherwise, as we say.” Unto whom, Thyself, O Thou God of us all, being Judge, do I thus answer.

XV. 18. “Will you affirm that to be false, which with a strong voice Truth tells me in my inner ear, concerning the eternity of the Creator, that His substance is noways changed by time, nor His will separate from His substance? Wherefore, He willeth not one thing now, another anon; but once, and at once, and always, He willeth all things that He willeth; not again and again, nor now this, now that; nor willleth afterwards, what before He willed not, nor willeth not, what before He willed; because such a will is mutable; and no mutable thing is eternal: but our God is eternal. Again, the expectation of things to come becomes sight, when they are come, and this same sight becomes memory, when they be past. Now, all thought which thus varies is mutable; and nothing mutable is eternal: but our God is eternal.” These things I infer, and put together, and find that my God, the eternal God, hath not upon any new will made any creature, nor doth His knowledge admit

of anything transitory. "What will ye say then, O ye gainsayers? Are these things false?" — "No," they say. "What then? Is it false, that every nature already formed, or matter capable of form, is only from Him Who is supremely good, because he exists supremely?" — "Neither do we deny this," say they. "What then? do you deny that there is a certain sublime creature, with so chaste a love cleaving unto the true and truly eternal God, that, although not coëternal with Him, yet it is not detached from Him, nor dissolved into the variety and vicissitude of times, but reposeth in the most true contemplation of Him only?" Because Thou, O God, unto him that loveth Thee as Thou commandest, dost show Thyself, and sufficest him; therefore doth this sublime creature not decline from Thee, nor toward itself. This is the house of God,¹ not of earthly mould, nor of any celestial bulk corporeal, but spiritual, and partaker of Thy eternity, because without defection forever. *For Thou hast made it fast for ever and ever, Thou hast given it a law which it shall not pass.*² Nor yet is it coëternal with Thee, O God, because not without beginning: for it was made.

20. *Wisdom was created before all things;*³ not that Wisdom which is altogether equal and coëternal unto Thee, our God, His Father, and by Whom all things were created, and *in Whom, as the Beginning, Thou createdst heaven and earth;* but that wisdom which is created, that is, the intellectual nature, which, by contemplating the light, is light. For this,

¹ Compare XI. 12, supra.

² Ps. cxlviii. 6.

³ Sirach i. 4.

though created, is also called wisdom. But such difference as is betwixt the Light which enlighteneth, and which is enlightened, so much is there betwixt the Wisdom that createth, and that created; betwixt the Righteousness which justifieth, and the righteousness which is made by justification. For we also are called *Thy righteousness*: as saith a certain servant of Thine, *That we might be made the righteousness of God in Him*. Therefore, since a certain created wisdom was created before all things, *viz.*, the rational and intellectual mind of that chaste city of Thine, *our mother which is above, and is free and eternal in the heavens* (in what heavens, if not in those that *praise Thee, the Heaven of heavens?* because this is also the *Heaven of heavens for the Lord*); though we find no time before it (because that which hath been created before all things, precedeth also the creature of time), yet is the eternity of the Creator Himself before it, from Whom, being created, it took the beginning, not indeed of time, for time itself was not yet, but of its creation.¹

21. Hence created wisdom is altogether other than

¹ By this "created wisdom," this "sublime creature," this "chaste city of God," Augustine seems to mean the intelligible world, as distinguished from the sensible. It is finite Spirit as a universal, in distinction from finite Nature or Matter. The influence of his Platonic studies is very apparent, in these speculations; and though it may be difficult to explain some of his phraseology, in such a manner as to keep quite clear of the doctrine of an eternal creation de nihilo, such as Origen held, yet Augustine is positive and plain in asserting, that this finite universal Intelligence is a *creature*, and not of the same substance with God. He carefully distinguishes it from the second person in the Trinity, the eternal and absolute Wisdom, the Word which was with God and was God the Son.—ED.

Thou, and not the Self-same; because, though we find time neither before it, nor even in it (it being meet ever to behold Thy face, nor ever drawn away from it, wherefore it is not varied by any change), yet is there in it a liability to change, whence it would wax dark and chill, were it not that, by a strong affection cleaving unto Thee, like perpetual noon, it shineth and gloweth from Thee. *O house most lightsome and delightsome!* *I have loved thy beauty,* and *the place of the habitation of the glory of my Lord,* thy builder and possessor. Let my wayfaring sigh after Thee; and I say to Him that made thee, let Him take possession of me also in thee, seeing He hath made me likewise. *I have gone astray like a lost sheep;* yet upon the shoulders of my Shepherd, thy builder, I hope to be brought back to thee.

22. "What say ye to me, O ye gainsayers that I was speaking unto, who yet believe Moses to have been the holy servant of God, and his books the oracles of the Holy Ghost? Is not this *house* of God, not coëternal indeed with God, yet after its measure, *eternal in the heavens*, where you seek for changes of times in vain, because you will not find them? For that thing, which feels that it is ever *good to cleave fast to God*, surpasses all extension, and all revolving periods of time."—"It is," say they. "What, then, of all that which my heart loudly uttered unto my God, when inwardly it *heard the voice of His praise*, what part thereof do you affirm to be false? Is it that the matter was *without form*, in which, because there was no *form*, there was no order? But

where no order was, there could be no vicissitude of times: and yet this ‘almost nothing,’ inasmuch as it was not altogether nothing, was from Him certainly, from Whom is whatsoever is, in what degree soever it is.”—“This also,” say they, “do we not deny.”

XVI. 23. With these would I now parley a little in Thy presence, O my God, who grant all these things to be true, which Thy Truth whispers unto my soul. For those who deny these things, let them bark, and deafen themselves as much as they please; I will essay to persuade them to quiet, and to open in them a way for Thy word. But if they refuse, and repel me, I beseech Thee, O my God, *be not Thou silent to me.* Speak Thou truly in my heart, for only Thou so speakest, and I will let them alone, blowing upon the dust without, and raising it up into their own eyes; and myself will *enter my chamber*, and sing there a song of loves unto Thee; groaning *with groanings unutterable*, in my wayfaring, and remembering Jerusalem, with heart lifted up towards it, Jerusalem my country, Jerusalem my mother, and Thyself that rulest over it, the Enlightener, Father, Guardian, Husband, the pure and strong delight, and solid joy, and all good things unspeakable, yea, all at once, because the One Sovereign and true Good. Nor will I be turned away, until Thou gather all that I am, from this dispersed and this disordered estate, into the peace of that our most dear mother, where are the *first-fruits of my spirit* already (whence I am ascertained of these things), and Thou conform and confirm it forever, O my God,

my Mercy. But those who do not deny all these truths, who honor Thy holy Scripture, set forth by holy Moses, placing it on the summit of authority to be followed, and do yet contradict me in some things, I answer thus: Be Thyself Judge, O our God, between my Confessions and these men's contradictions.

XVII. 24. For they say, "Though these things be true, yet did not Moses intend those two, when, by revelation of the Spirit, he saith, *In the beginning God created heaven and earth.* He did not, under the name of *heaven*, signify that spiritual or intellectual creature which always beholds the face of God; nor under the name of *earth*, that formless matter." "What then?" "That man of God," say they, "meant as we say; this declared he by those words." "What?" "By the name of *heaven* and *earth* would he first signify," say they, "universally and compendiously, all this visible world; and afterwards, by the enumeration of the several days, arrange in detail, and, as it were, piece by piece, all those things, which it pleased the Holy Ghost thus to enounce. For such were that rude and carnal people to which he spake, that he thought them fit to be entrusted with the knowledge of such works of God only as were visible." They agree, however, that under the words, *earth invisible and without form*, and that darksome *deep*, out of which it is subsequently shown that all these visible things, which we all know, were made and arranged during those "days," may, not incongruously, be understood, this formless (first) matter.

25. What, now, if another should say, "that this same formlessness and confusedness of matter was first conveyed under the name of *heaven and earth*, because out of it was this visible world with all those natures which most manifestly appear in it, which is oftentimes called by the name of *heaven and earth*, created and perfected?" What, again, if another should say, "that that invisible and visible nature is not indeed inappropriately called *heaven and earth*; and so, the universal creation which God made in His Wisdom, that is, *in the Beginning*, was comprehended under those two words? yet, since all things be made not of the substance of God, but out of nothing (because they are not the same that God is, and there is a mutable nature in them all, whether they abide, as doth the eternal house of God, or be changed, as the soul and body of man are): therefore the common matter of all things visible and invisible (as yet unformed, though capable of form), out of which was to be created both *heaven and earth* (*i. e.*, the invisible and visible creature when formed), was designated by the same names that are given to the *earth invisible and without form* and the *darkness upon the deep*, but with this distinction, that by the *earth invisible and without form* is understood corporeal matter, antecedent to its being qualified by any form; and by the *darkness upon the deep*, spiritual matter, before it underwent any restraint of its unlimited fluidness, or received any light from Wisdom?"

26. It yet remains for a man to say, if he will,

"that the already perfected and formed natures, visible and invisible, are not signified under the name of *heaven and earth*, when we read, *In the beginning God made heaven and earth*, but that the yet unformed commencement of things, the stuff apt to receive form and making, was called by these names, because therein were confusedly contained, not as yet distinguished by their qualities and forms, all those which being now digested into order, are called *Heaven and Earth*, the one being the spiritual, the other the corporeal, creation.

XVIII. 27. All which things being heard and well considered, I will not strive about words: for that is profitable to nothing, but the subversion of the hearers. But the law is good to edify, if a man use it lawfully: because the end of it is charity, out of a pure heart and good conscience and faith unfeigned. And well did our Master know upon which two commandments He hung all the law and the Prophets. And what doth it prejudice me, O my God, Thou light of my eyes in secret, zealously confessing these things, since divers things may be understood under these words which yet are all true,—what, I say, doth it prejudice me, if I think otherwise than another thinketh the writer thought? All we readers verily strive to trace out and to understand his meaning; and seeing we believe him to speak truly, we dare not imagine him to have said anything which we either know or think to be false. While every man endeavors then to understand in the Holy Scriptures, the same as the writer understood, what

hurt is it, if a man understand what Thou, the light of all true speaking minds, dost show him to be true, although he whom he reads, understood not this, seeing he also understood a Truth, though not this truth?

XIX. 28. For true it is, O Lord, that Thou *madest heaven and earth*; and it is true, too, that the *Beginning* is Thy *Wisdom*, in Which *Thou createdst all*; and true, again, that this visible world hath for its greater parts the *heaven and the earth*, which briefly comprise all made and created natures. And true, too, that whatsoever is mutable, gives us to understand a certain want of form, whereby it receiveth a form, or is changed, or turned. It is true, that that is subject to no times, which so cleaveth to the unchangeable Form, as, although capable of change, yet never to be changed. It is true, that that formlessness which is almost nothing, cannot be subject to the alteration of times. It is true, that that whereof a thing is made, may by a certain mode of speech, be called by the name of the thing made of it; whence that formlessness, whereof heaven and earth were made, might be called *heaven and earth*. It is true, that of things having form, there is not any nearer to having no form, than the “*earth*” and the “*deep*.” It is true, that not only every created and formed thing, but whatsoever is capable of being created and formed, Thou madest, *of whom are all things*. It is true, that whatsoever is formed out of that which had no form, was unformed before it was formed.

XX. 29. Out of all these truths, of which they doubt not whose inward eye Thou hast enabled to see such things, and who unshakenly believe Thy servant Moses to have spoken in the spirit of Truth, one truth is taken by him, who saith, *In the Beginning God made the heaven and the earth*: that is “In His word, coëternal with himself, God made the intelligible and the sensible, or the spiritual and the corporeal creature;” another truth by him that saith, *In the Beginning God made heaven and earth*: that is, “In His Word coëternal with Himself, did God make the universal bulk of this corporeal world, together with all those apparent and known creatures, which it containeth;” another truth by him that saith, *In the Beginning God made heaven and earth*: that is, “In His Word coëternal with Himself, did God make the formless matter of creatures spiritual and corporeal;” another truth by him that saith, *In the Beginning God created Heaven and Earth*: that is, “In His Word coëternal with Himself, did God create the formless matter of the creature corporeal, wherein *heaven and earth* lay as yet confused, which being now distinguished and formed, we at this day see in the bulk of this world;” another truth by him who saith, *In the Beginning God made Heaven and Earth*: that is, “In the very beginning of creating and working, did God make that formless matter, confusedly containing in itself both *heaven and earth*, out of which, being formed, do they now stand out, and are apparent, with all that is in them.”

XXI. And with regard to the understanding of

the words following, He who saith, *But the earth was invisible, and without form, and darkness was upon the deep*: that is, “that corporeal thing that God made, was as yet a formless matter of corporeal things, without order, without light,” chooses one of those truths. Another truth he chooses, who says, *The earth was invisible, and without form, and darkness was upon the deep*: that is, “this all, which is called *heaven and earth*, was still a formless and darksome matter, of which the corporeal heaven and the corporeal earth were to be made, with all things in them, which are known to our corporeal senses.” Another truth he chooses, who says, *The earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep*: that is, “this all, which is called *heaven and earth*, was still a formless and darksome matter, out of which was to be made, both that intelligible *heaven*, otherwhere called the *Heaven of heavens*, and the *earth*, that is, the whole corporeal nature, under which name is comprised this corporeal heaven also; in a word, out of which every visible and invisible creature was to be created.” Another truth he chooses, who says, *The earth was invisible and without form, and darkness was upon the deep*: that is, “the Scripture did not call that formlessness itself by the name of *heaven and earth*, but that formlessness already was, which it called *the earth invisible, without form, and darkness upon the deep*, and of which it had before said, that God had *made heaven and earth*, namely, the spiritual and corporeal creature.” Another truth he chooses, who says *The earth was invisible and*

without form, and darkness was upon the deep: that is, “there already was a certain formless matter, of which the Scripture said before, that *God made heaven and earth*; namely, the whole corporeal bulk of the world, divided into two great parts, upper and lower, with all the common and known creatures in them.”

XXII. 31. For, should any attempt to dispute against these two last opinions in this manner: “If you will not allow that this formlessness of matter seems to be called by the name of *heaven and earth*, then there was something which God had not made, out of which to *make heaven and earth*; for Scripture hath not told us that God made this formless matter, unless we understand it to be included in the name of *heaven and earth*, or of *earth* alone, when it is said, *In the Beginning God made the heaven and earth*, so that in what follows, *and the earth was invisible and without form*, we are to understand no other matter but that which God made, whereof is written above, *God made heaven and earth*,”—if this be the manner of arguing, the maintainers of either of those two latter opinions will, upon hearing this, return for answer: “We do not deny this formless matter to be indeed created very good, by God, that God of Whom are all things; for as we affirm that to be a greater good, which is created and formed, so we confess that to be a lesser good which is made capable of creation and form, yet still good. We say, however, that *Scripture* hath not set down, that God made this formlessness, as also it hath not many

other things; as the *Cherubim*, and *Seraphim*, and those which the Apostle distinctly speaks of, *Thrones*, *Dominions*, *Principalities*, *Powers*.¹ All which, that God made, is most apparent. Or if in that which is said, *He made heaven and earth*, all things be comprehended, what shall we say of the *waters upon* which the *Spirit of God moved*? For if they be comprised in this word *earth*, how then can formless matter be meant in that name of *earth*, when we see the *waters* so beautiful? Or if it be so taken, why then is it written, that out of the same formlessness the *firmament* was made, and called *heaven*, and that the *waters* were made, is not written? For the *waters* remain not formless and invisible, seeing we behold them flowing in such a comely manner. But if they then received that beauty, when God said, *Let the water which is under the firmament be gathered together*, so that the gathering together be itself the forming of them, what will be answered as to those *waters which be above the firmament*? Seeing that if formless, they would not have been worthy of so honorable a seat, nor is it written, by what word they were formed. If, then, Genesis is silent as to God's making a certain thing which yet neither sound faith nor well-grounded understanding doubteth that He made, and no sober teaching will dare to affirm these *waters* to be coëternal with God, on the ground that we find them to be mentioned in the book of Genesis, but do not find when they were created; why should we not understand that formless matter

¹ Col. i. 16.

(which this Scripture calls the *earth invisible and without form, and darksome deep*) to have been created of God out of nothing, and therefore not to be coëternal to Him, notwithstanding that this history hath omitted to show *when* it was created ?

XXIII. 32. These things, then, being heard and perceived, according to the weakness of my capacity (which I confess unto Thee, O Lord, that knowest it), two sorts of disagreements I see may arise, when a thing is in words related by true reporters; one concerning the truth of the things, the other concerning the meaning of the relater. For we inquire one thing, when we ask about the making of the creature, what is the fact; another thing, when we ask what Moses, that excellent minister of Thy Faith, would have his reader and hearer understand by those words. As for the first thing,—away with all those who imagine themselves to know as a fact, what is false; and for the second,—away with all who imagine Moses to have written things false. But let me be united in Thee, O Lord, with those, and delight myself in Thee, with them, that feed on Thy Truth, in the largeness of charity, and let us approach together unto the words of Thy book, and seek in them for Thy meaning, through the meaning of Thy servant, by whose pen Thou hast dispensed them.

XXIV. 33. But which of us shall, among those so many truths, which occur to inquirers in those words, as they are differently understood, so discover that one meaning, as to affirm, "This, Moses thought," and, "This, would he have understood in that his-

tory," with the same confidence as he would affirm, respecting a self-evident truth, "This is true," whether Moses thought this or that? For behold, O my God, I, Thy servant, who have in this book vowed a sacrifice of confession unto Thee, and pray that by Thy mercy I may *pay my vows unto Thee*, can I, with the same confidence wherewith I affirm that in Thy immutable Word Thou createdst all things visible and invisible, affirm also that Moses meant no other than this, when he wrote, *In the beginning God made Heaven and Earth?* No. Because I see not in his mind that he thought of this latter when he wrote these things, as I do see the former, in Thy truth, to be certain. For he might have had his thoughts upon God's commencement of creating, when he said, *In the Beginning; and by heaven and earth*, in this place, he might intend no formed and perfected nature, whether spiritual or corporeal, but both of them inchoate and as yet formless. For I perceive that whichsoever of the two had been said, it might have been truly said; but which of the two he thought of in these words, I do not so perceive. Although, whether it were either of these, or any sense beside (that I have not here mentioned), which this so great man saw in his mind, when he uttered these words, I doubt not but that he saw it truly, and expressed it aptly.

XXV. 34. Let no man harass me, then, by saying, Moses thought not as you say, but as I say. For if he should ask me, "How know you that Moses thought that which you infer out of his words?" I

ought to take it in good part, and would answer, perchance, as I have above, or something more at large, if he were unyielding. But when he saith, "Moses meant not what you say, but what I say," and yet denieth not that what both of us say may be true,— O my God, life of the poor, in Whose bosom is no contradiction, pour down a softening dew into my heart, that I may patiently bear with such as say this to me; who say it, not because they have a divine Spirit, and have seen in the heart of Thy servant what they speak, but because they be proud; not knowing Moses' opinion, but loving their own, not because it is truth, but because it is theirs. Otherwise they would equally love another true opinion, as I love what they say, when they say true; not because it is theirs, but because it is true,—and on that very ground not theirs, because it is true. But if they therefore love it because it is true, then it is both theirs and mine, as being in common to all lovers of truth. But whereas they contend that Moses did not mean what I say, but what they say, this I like not, love not; for, though it were so, yet their rashness belongs not to knowledge, but to over-boldness, and not insight but vanity was its parent. O Lord, Thy judgments are terrible; seeing Thy truth is neither mine, nor his, nor another's; but belonging to us all, whom Thou callest publicly to partake of it, warning us terribly, not to account it private to ourselves, lest we be deprived of it. For whosoever challenges that as proper in himself, which Thou propoundest to all to enjoy, and would have that his own which belongs to

all, is driven from what is in common, to his own; that is, from truth to a lie. For he *that speaketh a lie, speaketh it of his own.*

35. Hearken, O God, Thou best Judge, Truth itself; hearken to what I shall say to this gainsayer; hearken, for before Thee do I speak, and before my brethren, who employ Thy *law lawfully, to the end of charity*; hearken, and behold, if it please Thee, what I shall say to him. This brotherly and peaceful word do I return unto him: “If we both see that to be true which thou sayest, and both see that to be true which I say, where, I pray thee, do we see it? Neither I in thee, nor thou in me; but both in the unchangeable Truth itself, which is above our souls. Seeing, then, we strive not about the very light of the Lord our God, why strive we about the thoughts of our neighbor, which we cannot so see, as the unchangeable Truth is seen? because, if Moses himself had appeared to us and said, ‘This I meant,’ even then we should not see it, but should believe it. Let us *not then be puffed up, for one against another, above that which is written; let us love the Lord our God with all our heart, with all our soul, and with all our mind; and our neighbor as ourself.* With a view to which two precepts of charity, unless we believe that Moses meant whatsoever in those books he did mean, we shall *make God a liar*, imagining otherwise of our fellow-servant’s mind than He hath taught us. Behold, now, how foolish it is, in such abundance of most true meaning as may be extracted out of those words, rashly to affirm which of them Moses princip-

pally meant ; and with pernicious contentions to offend charity itself, for whose sake he whose words we go about to expound spake every thing."

XXVI. 36. And yet, O my God, Thou lifter up of my humility, and rest of my labor, Who hearest my confessions, and *forgivest my sins*, seeing Thou commandest me *to love my neighbor as myself*, I cannot believe that Thou gavest a less gift unto Moses, Thy faithful servant, than I would wish or desire Thee to have given me, had I been born in the time he was, and hadst Thou set me in that office, that by the service of my heart and tongue, those books might be dispensed, which for so long after were to profit all nations, and, through the whole world, from such an eminence of authority, were to surmount all sayings of false and proud teachings. I should have desired, verily, had I then been Moses (for we all come from the same lump, and *what is man, save as Thou art mindful of him?*), and been enjoined by Thee to write the book of Genesis, such a power of expression, and such a style, to be given me, that neither they who cannot yet understand how God created, might reject the sayings, as beyond their capacity, and they who had attained thereto, might find what true opinion soever they had by thought arrived at not passed over in those few words of Thy servant ; and should another man by the light of truth have discovered another, neither should that fail of being discoverable in those same words.

XXVII. 37. For as a fountain within a narrow compass is more plentiful, and supplies a tide for more

streams over larger spaces than any one of those streams which, after a wide interval, is derived from the same fountain, so the relation of that dispenser of Thine, which was to benefit many who were to discourse thereon, does, out of a narrow scantling, overflow into streams of clearest truth, whence every man may draw out for himself such truth as he can, upon these subjects; one, one truth, another, another, by larger circumlocutions of discourse. For some, when they read, or hear these words, conceive that God, like a man or some mass endued with unbounded power, by some new and sudden resolution, did, exterior to Himself, as it were at a certain distance, *create heaven and earth*, two great bodies above and below, wherein all things were to be contained. And when they hear, *God said, Let it be made, and it was made*, they conceive of words begun and ended, sounding in time, and passing away, after whose departure, that came into being which was commanded so to do,—and whatever, of the like sort, men's acquaintance with the material world would suggest. In whom, being yet little ones and carnal, while their weakness is by this humble kind of speech carried as in a mother's bosom, their faith is wholesomely built up, whereby they hold assured that God made all those natural objects which in admirable variety their eye beholdeth around. Which words, if any one despising as too simple, with a proud weakness shall stretch himself beyond the guardian nest, he will, alas! fall miserably. Have pity, O Lord, lest they who go by the way trample on the unfledged

bird; send Thine angel to replace it into the nest, that it may live till it can fly.

XXVIII. 38. But others, unto whom these words are no longer a nest, but deep, shady fruit-bowers, see the fruits concealed therein, and fly joyously around, and with cheerful notes seek out, and pluck them. Reading or hearing these words, they see that all times past and to come are surpassed by Thy eternal and stable abiding; and yet that there is no creature formed in time, not of Thy making. And, because Thy will is the same that Thou art, Thou madest all things, not by any change of will, nor by a will which before was not; and these things were not at first in Thine own likeness, which is the Form of all things, but were made, out of nothing, a formless unlikeness, which was to be formed by Thy likeness (recurring to Thy unity, according to their appointed capacity, so far as is given to each thing in his kind), and might all be made very good, whether they abide around Thee, or, being in gradation removed in time and place, make or undergo the beautiful variations of the Universe. These things they see, and rejoice, in the little degree they here may, in the light of Thy truth.

39. Another bends his mind on that which is said, *In the Beginning God made heaven and earth*, and beholds therein Wisdom, the Beginning, because It also speaketh unto us. Another likewise bends his mind on the same words, and by Beginning understands the commencement of things created; so that the words, *In the Beginning He made*, mean *He at first made*. And among them that understand, *In the Be-*

ginning, to mean, “In Thy Wisdom *Thou createdst Heaven and Earth,*” one believes the matter out of which the heaven and earth were to be created, to be there called *heaven and earth*; another, natures already formed and distinguished; another, one formed nature, and that a spiritual, under the name *Heaven*, the other formless, of corporeal matter, under the name *Earth*. They, again, who by the names *heaven and earth* understand matter as yet formless, out of which *heaven and earth* were to be formed, do not all understand it in one way; but some think matter is that out of which both the intelligible and the sensible creature was to be perfected; others think that that only is matter, out of which this sensible corporeal mass was to be made, containing in its vast bosom these visible and ordinary natures. Neither do they, who believe creation already ordered and arranged to be in this place called *heaven and earth*, understand it in the same way; but some understand by it, both the *invisible* and *visible*; others, the *visible* only, in which we behold this lightsome heaven, and darksome earth, with the things in them contained.

XXIX. 40. But he that no otherwise understands *In the Beginning He made*, than if it were said, *At first He made*, can only properly understand *heaven and earth* of the matter of *heaven and earth*, that is, of the universal intelligible and corporeal creation. For if he would understand thereby the universe as already formed, it may be rightly demanded of him: “If God made this first, what made He afterwards?”

and after the universe, he will find nothing. Whereupon, must he against his will hear another question : “ How did God make this *first*, if nothing after ? ” But when he says, God made matter first formless, then formed, there is no absurdity, if he be but able to discern what precedes by eternity, what by time, what by choice, and what by origin,—by eternity, as God is before all things; by time, as the flower before the fruit; by choice, as the fruit before the flower; by origin, as the sound before the tune. Of these four, the first and last mentioned are with extreme difficulty understood ; the two middle, easily. For a rare and too lofty vision is it to behold Thy Eternity, O Lord, unchangeably making things changeable, and thereby before them. And who, again, is of so sharpsighted understanding, as to be able, without great pains, to discern how the sound is before the tune ? Because a tune is a formed sound ; and a thing not formed, may exist ; whereas, that which existeth not cannot be formed. Thus is the matter before the thing made ; not because it maketh it, seeing itself is rather made ; nor is it before by interval of time ; for we do not first in time utter formless sounds without singing, and subsequently adapt or fashion them into the form of a chant, as wood or silver, whereof a chest or vessel is fashioned. For such materials do by time also precede the forms of the things made of them ; but in singing, it is not so : for when it is sung, its sound is heard ; for there is not first a formless sound, which is afterwards formed into a chant. For each sound, as soon

as made, passeth away, nor canst thou find aught to recall and by art to compose. So then the chant is concentrated in its sound, which sound is its matter. And this indeed is formed, that it may be a tune; and therefore, as I said, the matter of the sound is before the form of the tune; not before, through any power it hath to make it a tune; for a sound is no way the work-master of the tune, but it is something corporeal, subjected to the soul which singeth, whereof to make a tune. Nor is it first in time, for it is given forth together with the tune; nor first in choice, for a sound is not better than a tune, a tune being not only a sound, but a beautiful sound. But it is first in origin or order of nature, because a tune receives not form to become a sound, but a sound receives a form to become a tune. By this example, let him that is able understand how the matter of things was first made, and called *heaven and earth*, because *heaven and earth* were made out of it. Yet was it not made first in time, because the forms of things give rise to time. It was *without form*; but now is in time, an object of sense, together with its form. And yet nothing can be related of that chaotic matter, without considering it prior in time, whereas in value it is last (because things formed are superior to things without form), and is preceded by the Eternity of the Creator; that so there might be something out of nothing, whereof something might be formed.

XXX. 41. In this diversity of true opinions, let Truth herself produce concord, and our God have

mercy upon us, that we may use the law lawfully, the end of the commandment, pure charity. By this, if a man demands of me: "Which of these was the meaning of Thy servant Moses?" it were not the language of my Confessions, should I not confess unto Thee, "I know not;" and yet I know that those senses are true, those carnal ones excepted, of which I have spoken what seemed necessary. And the words of Thy Book, delivering high things lowly, and with few words a copious meaning, affright not thy hopeful little ones, nor those who see and express the truth, delivered in the words *Let us love one another*, and equally love Thee our God, the fountain of truth, if we are athirst for it and not for vanities. Yea, let us so honor Thy servant Moses, the dispenser of this Scripture, full of Thy Spirit, as to believe that, when by Thy revelation he wrote these things, he intended that sense which among them all chiefly excels, both for light of truth, and fruitfulness of profit.

XXXI. 42. So when one says, "Moses meant as I do," and another, "Nay, but as I do," I suppose that I speak more reverently: "Why not rather as both, if both be true?" And if there be a third, or a fourth, yea, if any other seeth any other truth in those words, why may not he be believed to have seen all these, through whom the One God hath tempered the holy Scriptures to the senses of many, who should see therein things true but divers? For certainly (and fearlessly I speak it from my heart), were I to indite anything to have supreme author-

ity, I should prefer so to write, that whatever truth any could apprehend on those matters, might be included in my words, rather than set down my own meaning so clearly as to exclude the rest, which not being false could not offend me. I will not, therefore, O my God, be so rash as not to believe that Thou vouchsafedst as much to that great man. He, without doubt, when he wrote those words, perceived and thought on what truth soever we have been able to find, yea, and whatsoever we have not been able, nor yet are, but which may be found in them.

XXX. 43. Lastly, O Lord, who art God and not flesh and blood, if man did see less, could anything be concealed from *Thy good Spirit* (Who shall *lead me into the land of uprightness*), which Thou Thyself, by those words, wert about to reveal to readers in time to come, even though he through whom they were spoken, perhaps, among many true meanings, thought on only one? Which, if so it be, let that which he thought on be of all the highest. But to us, O Lord, do Thou either reveal that same, or any other true thing which Thou pleasest; that so, whether Thou discoverest the same truth to us, as to that servant of Thine, or some other by occasion of those words, yet Thou mayest feed us, not error deceive us. Behold, O Lord my God, how much I have written upon a few words, how much I beseech Thee! What strength of ours, yea, what ages would suffice for all Thy books in this manner? Permit me, then, more briefly to confess unto Thee, and to choose some one true, certain, and good sense which Thou shalt

inspire, although many should occur, where many may occur; this being the law of my confession, that if I should say that which Thy servant Moses intended, that is right and best. For this should I endeavor, and if I should not attain it, yet I should say what Thy Truth willed by words to tell *me*, which revealed also unto him what It willed.

THE THIRTEENTH BOOK.

CONTINUATION OF THE EXPOSITION OF GENESIS I.—IT CONTAINS THE MYSTERY OF THE TRINITY, AND A TYPE OF THE FORMATION, EXTENSION, AND SUPPORT OF THE CHURCH.

I. 1. I call upon Thee, O my God, my Mercy, Who didst create me, and forgat not me who forgat Thee. I call Thee into my soul, which, by the longing Thyself inspirest into it, Thou preparest for Thee. Forsake me not now, as I call unto Thee, whom Thou didst prevent before I called, and urged me with much variety of repeated calls, that I would hear Thee from afar, and be converted, and call upon Thee, who didst call after me. For Thou, Lord, didst blot out all my evil deservings, so as not to recompense into my hands wherewith I fell from Thee; and Thou hast prevented all my well deservings, so as to recompense the work of Thy hands wherewith Thou madest me. Because, before I was, Thou wert; nor was I anything, to which Thou mightest grant to be. And yet behold, I am, out of Thy goodness preventing all this which Thou hast made me, and whereof Thou hast made me. For neither hadst Thou need of me, nor am I any such good as to be helpful unto Thee, my Lord and God: not in serving

Thee, as though Thou wouldest tire in working, or lest Thy power might be less, if lacking my service, nor cultivating as a land, Thy service, which must remain uncultivated, unless I cultivate Thee;¹ but serving and worshipping Thee, that I might receive well-being from Thee from whom it comes that I have a being capable of well-being.

II. 2. For of the fulness of Thy goodness doth Thy creature subsist, that so a good, which could no ways profit Thee, nor was of Thy substance (lest so it should be equal to Thee), might yet exist, since it could be made by Thy power. For what did *heaven and earth, which Thou madest in the Beginning,* deserve of Thee? Let those spiritual and corporeal natures, which Thou madest in Thy Wisdom, say wherein they deserved of Thee to depend upon Thy Word, in their inchoate and formless state, whether spiritual or corporeal, and liable to fall away into an immoderate liberty and far-distant unlikeness to Thee (the spiritual, though *without form*, superior to the corporeal though formed, and the corporeal without form, better than were it altogether nothing), unless by the same Word they were brought back to Thy Unity, indued with form, and from Thee the One Sovereign Good were made all very good. How did they deserve of Thee, to be even *without form*, since they had not been even this but from Thee?

3. How did corporeal matter deserve of Thee to be even *invisible and without form?* It had not been

¹ “Neque ut sic te colam, quasi terram, ut sis incultus, si non te colam.”

even this, but that Thou madest it ; and, therefore, not being, it could not deserve of Thee to be made. Or how could the inchoate spiritual creature deserve of Thee even to ebb and flow darksomely like the deep, unlike Thee, unless it had been by the same Word turned to Him by Whom it was created, and by Him so enlightened, become light ; though not equally, yet conformably to that Form which is equal unto Thee ? For as in a body, to be, is not one with being beautiful, else could a body not be deformed ; so likewise to a created spirit to live, is not one with living wisely, else should it be wise unchangeably. But *it is good* for it always *to hold fast to Thee* ; lest what light it hath obtained by turning to Thee, it lose by turning from Thee, and relapse into a life resembling the darksome deep. For I, myself, who as to the soul am a spiritual creature, but turned away from Thee, the Light, was in that life *sometimes darkness* ; and still I labor amidst the relics of darkness, until, in Thy Only One, I become *Thy righteousness, like the mountains of God* ; even as I have been *Thy judgments, which are like the great deep.*¹

III. 4. That which Thou saidst in the beginning of the creation, *Let there be light, and there was light*, I understand of the spiritual creature ; because there was already a sort of life, which Thou mightest illuminate. But as it had no claim on Thee for a life which could be enlightened, so neither now, that it was alone, had it any claim to be enlightened. For its formless estate could not be pleasing unto Thee,

¹ Ps. xxxv. 7, Septuagint ver.

unless it became light; and that not by existing simply, but by beholding the illuminating light, and cleaving to it, so that its living and living happily it owes to nothing but Thy grace; being by a better change turned unto That which cannot be changed into worse or better; which Thou alone art, because Thou alone simply art: unto Thee it being not one thing to live, another to live blessedly, seeing Thyself art Thine own Blessedness.

IV. 5. What would be wanting unto Thy good, which Thou Thyself art, even had these things never been at all, or had they remained *without form*? Thou madest them, not out of any want, but out of the fulness of Thy goodness, restraining and converting them to form, as though Thy joy were fulfilled by them. For to Thee, being perfect, their imperfections were displeasing, and hence were they perfected by Thee, and pleased Thee. Not that Thou wert imperfect, and by their perfecting wert to be perfected. For Thy good Spirit, indeed, *was borne over the waters*, not borne up by them, as if He rested upon them. For those *on whom Thy good Spirit is said to rest*, He causes to rest in Himself. But Thy incorruptible and unchangeable will, in itself all-sufficient for itself, *was borne upon* that life which Thou hadst created; to which, living is not one with happy living, seeing it liveth, ebbing and flowing in its own darkness; wherefore it remaineth to be converted unto Him by Whom it was made, and to live more and more at *the fountain of life, and in His light to see light*, and to be perfected, and enlightened, and beautified.

V. 6. Lo, now the Trinity appears unto me in a *glass darkly*, which is Thou, my God ; because Thou, *O Father*, didst create heaven and earth in Him Who *is the Beginning* of our wisdom, Which is Thy Wisdom, of Thyselv^e, equal unto Thee and coëternal, that is, Thy Son. Much now have we said of the *heaven of heavens*, and of the earth *invisible and without form*, and of the darksome *deep*, in reference to the wandering instability of its spiritual deformity; which, converted unto Him from Whom it had its first degree of life, and enlightened by Him, became a beauteous life, and *the heaven set between water and water*. And under the name of God, I now held the Father, Who made these things, and under the name of Beginning,¹ the Son, in whom He made these things; and believing, as I did, my God as the Trinity, I searched further in His holy words, and lo, Thy *Spirit moved upon the waters*. Behold the Trinity, my God, Father and Son and Holy Ghost, Creator of all creation.

VI. 7. But what was the cause, O true-speaking Light (unto Thee I lift up my heart, let it not teach me vanities, dispel its darkness, and tell me), I beseech Thee by our mother charity, tell me the reason, I beseech Thee, why after the mention of heaven, and of the *earth invisible and without form, and darkness upon the deep*, Thy Scripture should then at length

¹ "Under the name The Beginning, we understand the Son, who is a Beginning not to the Father, but to the creature, created by Himself." Augustine, *De Genesi ad literam* I. vi. *Opera*, Tom. III. p. 503. Ed. Bas. 1569.

mention Thy Spirit? Was it because it was meet that the knowledge of Him should be conveyed, as being "borne above;" and this could not be said, unless that were first mentioned, *over* which Thy Spirit may be understood to have been *borne*? For neither was He *borne above* the Father, nor the Son, nor could He rightly be said to be *borne above*, if He were *borne over* nothing. First, then, was that to be spoken of, *over* which He might be *borne*; and then He, whom it was meet not otherwise to be spoken of than as being *borne*. But wherefore was it not meet that the knowledge of Him should be conveyed otherwise, than as being *borne above*?

VII. 8. Hence let him that is able, follow with his understanding Thy Apostle, where he thus speaks, *Because Thy love is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us;*¹ and where, • *concerning spiritual gifts,* he teacheth, and *sheweth unto us a more excellent way of charity;*² and where *he bows his knee unto Thee for us,* that we may *know the supereminent knowledge of the love of Christ.*³ And therefore from the beginning, was He *borne supereminent above the waters.* To whom shall I speak this? how speak of the weight of evil desires, downwards to the steep abyss, and how charity rises up again by Thy Spirit which was *borne above the waters?* To whom shall I speak it? How shall I speak it? Are we submerged, and do we emerge? Certainly, it is not in space that we are submerged and emerge. What can be more like, and yet what less like? They

¹ Rom. v. 5.

² 1 Cor. xii. 31.

³ Eph. iii. 14, 19

are affections, they are loves ; the uncleanness of our spirit flowing downwards with the love of cares, and the holiness of Thy Spirit raising us upward by love of unanxious repose, that we may lift our hearts unto Thee, where Thy Spirit is *borne above the waters*, and come to that supereminent repose, when our soul shall have passed through the *waters which yield no support*.

VII. 9. Angels fell away, man's soul fell away, and thereby pointed out the abyss in that dark depth, ready for the whole spiritual creation, hadst not Thou said from the beginning, *Let there be light*, and there had been *light*, and every obedient intelligence of Thy heavenly city had cleaved to Thee, and rested in Thy Spirit, Which is *borne unchangeably over every thing changeable*. Otherwise, even the *heaven of heavens* had been in itself a darksome deep ; but now *it is light in the Lord*. For even in that miserable restlessness of the spirits who fell away, and discovered their own darkness when bared of the clothing of Thy light, dost thou sufficiently reveal how noble Thou madest the reasonable creature ; to which nothing will suffice to yield a happy rest, less than Thee, and so not even herself. For Thou O *our God, shalt lighten our darkness* ; from Thee cometh our *garment of light*, and *our darkness shall be as the noon-day*. Give Thyself unto me, O my God, restore Thyself unto me ; behold I love, and if it be too little, I would love more strongly. I cannot measure so as to know, how much love there yet lacketh to me, ere my life may run into Thy embracements, nor turn away until it be *hidden in the hidden place of*

Thy presence. This only I know, that woe is me, except in Thee, not only without but within myself also; and all abundance which is not my God, is emptiness to me.

IX. 10. But was not either the Father or the Son *borne above the waters?* If this means, in space, like a body, then neither was the Holy Spirit; but if it means the unchangeable supereminence of Divinity above all things changeable, then were both Father, and Son, and Holy Ghost, *borne upon the waters.* Why then is this said of Thy Spirit only? Why is it said only of Him, as if He had been in space, who is not in space; of whom only it is written, that He is Thy Gift? In Thy Gift we rest; there we enjoy Thee. Our rest is our space. Love lifts us up thither, and Thy Good Spirit *lifts up* our lowness *from the gates of death.* In Thy *good pleasure* is our *peace.* The body by its own weight strives towards its own place. Weight tends not downward only, but to its own proper place. Fire tends upward, a stone downward. They are urged by their own weight, they seek their own places. Oil poured below water, is raised above the water; water poured upon oil, sinks below the oil. They are urged by their own weights to seek their own places. When out of their order, they are restless; restored to order, they are at rest. My weight is my love; thereby am I borne whithersoever I am borne. We are inflamed by Thy Gift, Thy Spirit, and are carried upwards; we glow inwardly, and go forwards. *We ascend Thy ascents that be in our heart,*

and sing a song of degrees. We glow inwardly with Thy fire, with Thy good fire, and we go, because we go upwards to the peace of Jerusalem; for gladdened was I in those who said unto me, We will go up to the house of the Lord.¹ There hath Thy good pleasure placed us, that we may desire nothing else, but to abide there forever.

X. 11. Blessed creature, which, being itself other than Thou, has known no other condition, than that, so soon as it was made, it was, without any interval, by Thy Gift, Which is borne above every thing changeable, borne aloft by that calling whereby Thou saidst, *Let there be light, and there was light!* Whereas, in us men, this took place at different times, in that we were darkness, and are made light. But of that unfallen creature, is only said what it would have been, had it not been enlightened; and it is so said, as if it had been unsettled and darksome before; that so the cause whereby it was made otherwise, might appear, namely, that, being turned to the Light unfailing, it became light. Whoso can, let him understand this; and whoso cannot, let him ask of Thee. Why should he trouble me, as if I could enlighten any man that cometh into this world?

XI. 12. Who of us comprehends the Almighty Trinity? And yet who of us speaks not of it, if indeed it be an it? Rare is the soul, which, while it speaks of it, knows what it speaks of. Men contend and strive, yet, without peace; no man sees that vision. I would that men would consider these three

¹ Psalm cxxii. 1.

things, that are in themselves. These three are indeed far other than the Trinity; I do but tell, where men may search themselves, and prove, and feel how far they are from it. Now the three things I spake of, are, To Be, to Know, and to Will. For I Am, and Know, and Will; I Am Knowing and Willing; and I Know myself to Be, and to Will; and I Will to Be, and to Know. In these three, then, let him discern how inseparable a life there is, yea, one life, one mind, and one essence; yea, lastly, how inseparable a distinction there is, and yet a distinction. Surely a man hath it before him; let him look into himself, and see, and tell me. But when he discovers and can say anything of these, let him not therefore think that he has found that which is above these Unchangeable; which Is unchangeably, and Knows unchangeably, and Wills unchangeably. And whether, because of these three, there is in God also a Trinity, or whether all three be in Each, so that the three belong to Each; or whether (both ways at once) wondrously, simply, and yet manifoldly, the Essence itself is a bound unto itself within itself, yet unbounded, whereby it Is, and is Known unto itself, and sufficeth to itself, unchangeably the Self-same by the abundant greatness of its Unity,— who can readily conceive this? Who could, any ways express it? Who would, any way, pronounce thereon rashly?

XII. 13. Proceed in thy confession; say, O my faith, to the Lord thy God, *Holy, Holy, Holy, O Lord my God, in Thy Name* have we been baptized,

Father, Son, and Holy Ghost; in Thy Name do we baptize, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost; because among us, also, in His Christ did God make heaven and earth, namely, the spiritual and carnal people of His Church. Yea, and our *earth*, before it received the *form of doctrine*, was *invisible and without form*; and we were covered with the darkness of ignorance. For Thou *chastenedst man for iniquity*, and *Thy judgments were like the great deep unto him*. But because *Thy Spirit was borne above the waters*, Thy mercy forsook not our misery, and Thou saidst, *Let there be light. Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. Repent ye, let there be light*. And because our soul was troubled within us, we remembered Thee, O Lord, from the land of Jordan, and that mountain equal unto Thyself, but little for our sakes; and our darkness displeased us, we turned unto Thee, and there was light. And, behold, we were sometimes darkness, but now light in the Lord.

XIII. 14. But, as yet we are such by faith and not by sight; for by hope we are saved, but hope that is seen, is not hope. As yet doth deep call unto deep, but now in the voice of Thy water-spouts. As yet doth he that saith, I could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even he as yet doth not think himself to have apprehended, and forgetteth those things which are behind, and reacheth forth to those which are before, and groaneth, being burdened, and his soul thirsteth after the Living God, as the hart after the water-brooks, and saith, When shall I come? desiring to be clothed upon

with his house which is from heaven, and calleth upon this lower deep, saying, Be not conformed to this world, but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, and, be not children in understanding, but in malice be ye children, that in understanding ye may be perfect, and, O foolish Galatians, who hath bewitched you? But now no longer does he speak in his own voice, but in Thine, Who sentest Thy Spirit from above, through Him who ascended up on high, and set open the flood-gates of his gifts, that the force of His streams might make glad the city of God. Him doth this friend of the bridegroom sigh after, having now the first-fruits of the Spirit laid up with Him, yet still groaning within himself, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of his body; to Him he sighs, a member of the Bride; for Him he is jealous, as being a friend of the Bridegroom; for Him he is jealous, not for himself; because in the voice of Thy water-spouts, not in his own voice, doth he call to that other depth, over whom being jealous, he feareth, lest as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtlety, so their minds should be corrupted from the purity that is in our Bridegroom, Thy Only Son. O what a light of beauty will that be, when we shall see Him as He is, and those tears be passed away, which have been my meat day and night, whilst they daily say unto me, Where is now thy God?

XIV. 15. And I, too, say: O my God, where art Thou? Behold where Thou art. In Thee I breathe a little, when I pour out my soul by myself in the

voice of joy and praise, the voice of him that keeps holy-day. And yet again, the soul *is sad*, because it relapses, and becomes *a deep*, or rather perceives itself still to be *a deep*. Unto it speaks my faith, which Thou hast kindled to enlighten my feet in the night, *Why art thou sad, O my soul, and why dost thou trouble me? Hope in the Lord. His word is a lantern unto thy feet.* Hope and endure, until the night, the mother of the wicked, until the *wrath* of the Lord, be overpast, whereof we also were once *children*, who *were sometimes darkness*, relics whereof we bear about us in our *body, dead because of sin, until the day break, and the shadows fly away.* *Hope thou in the Lord. In the morning I shall stand in Thy presence, and contemplate Thee; I shall for ever confess unto Thee. In the morning I shall stand in Thy presence, and shall see the health of my countenance, my God; Who also shall quicken our mortal bodies, by the Spirit that dwelleth in us,* because He hath in mercy been *borne over our inner darksome and floating deep*; from Whom we have in this pilgrimage received *an earnest*, that we should now be *light*, whilst we are *saved by hope*, and are the *children of light, and the children of the day, not the children of the night, nor of the darkness*, which yet *sometimes we were.* *Betwixt whom and us, in this uncertainty of human knowledge, Thou only dividest; Thou, who provest our hearts, and callest the light day, and the darkness night.* For who discerneth us, but Thou? *And what have we, that we have not received of Thee? out of the same lump vessels*

unto honor, whereof others also are made unto dis-honor.

XV. 16. Or who, except Thou, our God, made for us that firmament of authority over us in Thy divine Scripture? For it is said, the *heaven shall be folded up like a scroll (liber)*; and now is it stretched over us like a skin. For Thy Divine Scripture is of more eminent authority, since those mortals by whom Thou dispensest it unto us, underwent mortality. And Thou knowest, Lord, Thou knowest, how Thou *with skins didst clothe men*, when they by sin became mortal. Hence Thou hast *like a skin stretched out the firmament of Thy book (liber)*, that is, Thy harmonizing words, which by the ministry of mortal men Thou spreadest over us. For, by their very death, was that solid *firmament of authority*, which was in Thy discourses set forth by them, more eminently extended over all that be under it; which, whilst they lived here, was not so eminently extended. Thou hadst not as yet *spread abroad the heaven like a skin*; Thou hadst not as yet enlarged in all directions the glory of their deaths.

17. Let us look, O Lord, upon the *heavens, the work of Thy fingers*; clear from our eyes that cloud which Thou hast spread under them. There is *Thy testimony, which giveth wisdom unto the little ones*. Perfect, O my God, Thy *praise out of the mouth of babes and sucklings*. For we know no other books, which so destroy pride, which so *destroy the enemy and the defender*, who resists Thy reconciliation by defending his own sins. I know not, Lord, I know

not any other such *pure* words, which so persuade me to confess, and make my neck pliant to Thy yoke, and invite me to serve Thee for nought. Let me understand them, good Father; grant this to me, who am placed under them, because for those placeed under them, hast Thou established them.

18. Other *waters* there be *above* this *firmament*, I believe immortal and separated from earthly corruption. Let them praise Thy name, let them praise Thee, the super-celestial people, Thine angels, who have no need to gaze up at this firmament, or by reading to know of Thy Word. For they *always behold* Thy *face*, and there read without any syllables in time, what willeth Thy eternal Will. They read, they choose, they love; they are ever reading, and that never passes away which they read. For by choosing, and by loving, they read the very unchangeableness of Thy counsel. Their book is never closed, nor *their scroll folded up*; seeing Thou Thyself art this to them, and art eternally, because Thou hast ordained them above this *firmament*, which Thou hast firmly settled over the infirmity of the lower people, where they might gaze up and learn Thy mercy, announcing in time Thee who madest times. For *Thy mercy, Lord, is in the heavens, and Thy truth reached unto the clouds*. The clouds pass away, but the heaven abideth. The preachers of Thy word pass out of this life into another; but Thy Scripture is spread abroad over the people, even unto the end of the world. Yet *heaven and earth also shall pass away, but Thy words shall not pass away*. Because the

scroll shall be rolled together, and the grass over which it was spread, shall with the goodliness of it pass away; but Thy word remaineth forever, which now appeareth unto us under the dark image of the clouds, and through the glass of the heavens, not as it is; because though we also are the well-beloved of Thy Son, yet it hath not yet appeared what we shall be. He looked through the lattice of our flesh, and He spake us tenderly, and kindled us, and we ran after His odors. But when He shall appear, then shall we be like Him, for we shall see Him as He is. As He is, Lord, so will our sight be.

XVI. 19. For, altogether and wholly what Thou art, Thou only knowest, Who art unchangeably, and knowest unchangeably, and wildest unchangeably. And Thy Essence Knows, and Wills unchangeably; and Thy Knowledge Is, and Wills unchangeably; and Thy Will Is, and Knows unchangeably. Nor seems it fitting in Thine eyes, that as the Unchangeable Light knows Itself, so should it be known by the thing enlightened and changeable. Therefore is my soul like a land where no water is, because, as it cannot of itself enlighten itself, so can it not of itself satisfy itself. For the fountain of life is with Thee, in such a way that in Thy light we shall see light.

XVII. 20. Who gathered the embittered children of men together into one society? (For they have all one end, a temporal and earthly felicity, for attaining whereof they do all things, though they waver up and down with an innumerable variety of cares.)

Who, Lord, but Thou, Who saidst, *Let the waters be gathered together into one place, and let the dry land appear, which thirsteth after Thee?* Because *the sea also is Thine, and Thou hast made it, and Thy hands prepared the dry land.* Nor is the bitterness of men's wills, but *the gathering together of the waters, called sea.* For Thou restrainest the wicked desires of men's souls, and *settest them their bounds, how far they may be allowed to pass,* that their waves may break one against another; and thus makest Thou it a sea, by the order of Thy dominion over all things.

21. But the souls that *thirst after Thee*, and that *appear before Thee* (being by other bounds divided from the society of the sea), Thou waterest by a sweet spring, that *the earth may bring forth her fruit*, and, Thou Lord God so commanding, our soul may bud forth works of mercy *according to their kind, loving our neighbor* in the relief of his bodily necessities, *having seed in itself according to its likeness;* since, from feeling of our infirmity, we compassionate so as to relieve the needy, helping them, *as we would* be helped, if we were in like need; and this, too, not only in things easy, as in herb *yielding seed*, but also in the protection of our assistance with our best strength, like *the tree yielding fruit:* that is, well-doing in rescuing him that suffers wrong, from the hand of the powerful, and giving him the shelter of protection, by the mighty strength of just judgment.

XVIII. 22. So Lord, so, I beseech Thee, let there spring up, as Thou workest, as Thou givest cheerful-

ness and ability, let truth spring out of the earth, and righteousness look down from heaven, and let there be lights in the firmament. Let us break our bread to the hungry, and bring the houseless poor to our house. Let us clothe the naked, and despise not those of our own flesh. Which fruits having sprung out of the earth, behold it is good. And let our temporary light break forth; and ourselves, from this lower fruitfulness of action, arriving at the delightfulness of contemplation, obtaining the Word of Life above, appear like lights in the world, cleaving to the firmament of Thy Scripture. For there Thou instructest us, to divide between the things intellectual, and things of sense, as betwixt the day and the night; or between souls, given either to things intellectual, or to things of sense; so that now, not Thou only, in the secret of Thy judgment, as before the firmament was made, dividest between the light and the darkness, but Thy spiritual children also, set and ranked in the same firmament (now that Thy grace is manifested throughout the world), may give light upon the earth, and divide betwixt the day and the night, and be for signs of times; because old things are passed away, and, behold, all things are become new, and because our salvation is nearer than when we believed, and because the night is far spent, and the day is at hand, and because Thou wilt crown Thy year with blessing, sending laborers into Thy harvest, in sowing whereof others have labored, sending also into another field, whose harvest shall be in the end.¹ Thus grantest

¹ Matt. ix. 38; John iv. 37 seq.

Thou the prayers of him that asketh, and blessest the years of *the just*; but Thou art the same, and in Thy years which fail not, Thou preparest a garner for our passing years. For Thou, by an eternal counsel, dost in their proper seasons bestow heavenly blessings upon the earth. *For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom*, as it were *the greater light*, for their sakes who are delighted with the light of perspicuous truth, as it were *for the rule of the day*. To another *the word of knowledge by the same Spirit*, as it were *the lesser light*; to another *faith*; to another *the gift of healing*; to another *the working of miracles*; to another *prophecy*; to another *discerning of spirits*; to another *divers kinds of tongues*. And all these are as it were *stars*. For all these worketh *the one and self-same Spirit*, dividing to every man *his own as He will*; and causing stars to appear manifestly, to profit withal. But *the word of knowledge*, wherein are contained *all Sacraments*, which are varied in their *seasons*, as it were *the moon*, and those other denominations of *gifts*, which are reckoned up in order, as it were *stars*, inasmuch as they come short of that brightness of *wisdom* which gladdens the forementioned *day*, are only *for the rule of the night*. For they are necessary to such as those to whom Thy most prudent servant could not speak *as unto spiritual*, but *as unto carnal*; even he who speaketh *wisdom among those that are perfect*. But *the natural man*, as it were *a babe in Christ* and fed on *milk*, until he be strengthened for *solid meat*, and his eye be enabled to behold the Sun, let him not

dwell in a night forsaken of all light, but be content with the light of *the moon* and *the stars*. So dost Thou speak to us, our All-wise God, in Thy Book, Thy firmament; that we may discern all things, in an admirable contemplation; though as yet *in signs, and in times, and in days, and in years.*

XIX. 24. But first, *wash you, be ye clean; put away evil from your souls, and from before mine eyes,* that the *dry land may appear.* *Learn to do good, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow,* that the *earth may bring forth the green herb for meat, and the tree bearing fruit;* and *come, let us reason together,* saith the Lord, that there may be *lights in the firmament of the heaven, and they may shine upon the earth.* That rich man asked of the good Master, what he should do to attain everlasting life. Let the good Master tell him (whom he thought no more than man; but he is *good* because he is *God*), let Him tell him, if he would enter into life, he must *keep the commandments;* let him put away from him the bitterness of malice and wickedness, not kill, not commit adultery, not steal, not bear false witness, that the *dry land may appear,* and *bring forth the honoring of father and mother, and the love of our neighbor.* All these (saith he) have I kept. Whence then so many thorns, if the earth be fruitful? Go, root up the spreading thickets of covetousness; sell that thou hast, and be filled with fruit, by giving to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven; and follow the Lord, if thou wilt be perfect, associated with them among whom He speaketh wisdom, Who

knoweth what to distribute to the day and to the night, that thou mayest also know it, and that for thee there may be lights in the firmament of heaven; which will not be, unless thy heart be there; nor will that either be there, unless there thy treasure be; as thou hast heard of the good Master. But that barren earth was grieved;¹ and the thorns choked the word.

25. But you, chosen generation, you weak things of the world, who have forsaken all, that ye may follow the Lord, go after Him, and confound the mighty; go after Him, ye beautiful feet, and shine ye in the firmament, that the heavens may declare His glory, dividing between the light of the perfect, though not as the angels, and the darkness of the little ones, though not despised. Shine over the earth; and let the day, lightened by the sun, utter unto day, speech of wisdom; and night, shining with the moon, show unto night, the word of knowledge. The moon and stars shine for the night; yet doth the night obscure them, seeing they give it light in its degree. For behold God saying as it were, Let there be lights in the firmament of heaven; there came suddenly a sound from heaven, as it had been the rushing of a mighty wind, and there appeared cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them, and there were made lights in the firmament of heaven, having the word of life. Run ye to and fro everywhere, ye holy fires, ye beauteous fires: for ye are the light of the world, nor are ye put under a bushel. He whom

¹ Matt. xix. 22.

you cleave unto, is exalted, and hath exalted you.
Run ye to and fro, and be known unto all nations.

XX. 26. Let the sea also conceive and *bring forth* your works; and *let the waters bring forth the moving creature that hath life*. For ye, separating the precious from the vile, are made the mouth of God, by whom He saith, *Let the waters bring forth*, not the living creature which the earth brings forth, but the moving creature having life, and the fowls that fly above the earth. For Thy Sacraments, O God, by the ministry of Thy Holy Ones, have moved amid the waves of the temptations of the world, to consecrate the nations in Thy name, by Thy Baptism. And amid these things, many great wonders were wrought, as it were, *great whales*; and the voices were heard of Thy messengers *flying above the earth, in the open firmament* of Thy Book, which was set over them, as their authority, under which they were to fly, whithersoever they went. For *there is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard; seeing their sound is gone through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world*, because Thou, Lord, multipliedst them by blessing.

27. Speak I untruly, or do I mingle and confound, and not distinguish between the lucid knowledge of these things *in the firmament of heaven*, and the material works in the wavy sea, and *under the firmament of heaven?* For of those things whereof the knowledge is substantial and defined, without any increase by generation, as it were lights of wisdom and knowledge, yet even of them, the material opera-

tions are many and divers, and one thing growing out of another, they are multiplied by Thy blessing, O God, who hast refreshed the fastidiousness of mortal senses, so that one thing in the understanding of our mind may, by the motions of the body, be many ways set out and expressed. These Sacraments have the *waters brought forth*; but in Thy Word. The necessities of the people estranged from the eternity of Thy truth have brought them forth; but in Thy Gospel. Because the *waters themselves cast them forth*, the diseased bitterness whereof was the cause why they were sent forth in Thy Word.

28. Now are all things fair that Thou hast made, but Thou Thyself art unutterably fairer, that madest all; from Whom had not Adam fallen, the brackishness of the sea had never flowed out of him, that is, the human race so profoundly curious, and tempestuously swelling, and restlessly tumbling up and down; and then had there been no need of Thy dispensers to work, in *many waters*, after a corporeal and sensible manner, mysterious doings and sayings. For such dispensers those *moving and flying creatures* now seem to me to mean, whereby men, being initiated and consecrated by corporeal Sacraments, should not further profit, unless their soul had a spiritual life, and unless after the word of admission it looked forwards to perfection.

XXI. 29. And hereby, in Thy Word, not the deepness of the sea, but the earth separated from the bitterness of the waters, brings forth, not the *moving creature that hath life*, but *the living soul*. For now

hath it no more need of baptism, as the heathen have, and as itself had when it was covered with the waters. For no other entrance is there *into the kingdom of heaven*, since Thou hast appointed that this should be the entrance ; nor does it seek after wonderfulness of miracles to work belief. For it is not such, that *unless it sees signs and wonders, it will not believe*, now that the faithful *earth* is separated from the waters that were bitter with infidelity, and *tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not*. Neither, therefore, does the earth which *Thou hast founded upon the waters*, need that *flying kind* which at Thy Word *the waters brought forth*. Send Thou Thy Word into it by Thy messengers. For we speak of their working, yet it is Thou that workest in them that they may work out a *living soul*. The earth brings the *living soul* forth, because the earth is the cause that they work this in it, as the sea was the cause that they wrought upon the *moving creatures that have life*, and *the fowls that fly under the firmament of heaven*, of whom the earth hath no need ; although it feeds upon that fish which was taken out of the deep, upon that *table* which *Thou hast prepared in the presence of them that believe*. For therefore was the fish taken out of the deep, that it might feed the dry land ; and the *fowl*, though bred in the sea, is yet *multiplied upon the earth*. For of the first preachings of the Evangelists, man's infidelity was the cause ; yet are the faithful also exhorted and blessed by them manifoldly, from day to day. But the *living soul* takes its beginning from the *earth* ; for it profits only

those already among the Faithful to contain themselves from the love of this world, that so their soul may live unto Thee, which was *dead while it lived in pleasures*,—in death-bringing pleasures, Lord, for Thou, Lord, art the life-giving delight of the pure heart.

30. Now then let Thy ministers work upon *the earth*, not as upon the waters of infidelity, by preaching and speaking, by miracles and sacraments and mystic words, wherein ignorance, the mother of admiration, might be intent upon them, out of a reverence towards those secret signs. For such is the entrance unto the Faith, for the sons of Adam forgetful of Thee, while *they hide themselves from Thy face*, and become a darksome deep. But let Thy ministers work now as on the *dry land*, separated from the whirlpools of the great deep; and let them be a pattern unto the Faithful, by living before them, and stirring them up to imitation. For thus do men hear, so as not to hear only, but to do also. *Seek the Lord, and your soul shall live, that the earth may bring forth the living soul. Be not conformed to the world.* Contain yourselves from it. The soul lives by avoiding what it dies by loving. Contain yourselves from the ungoverned wildness of pride, the sluggish voluptuousness of luxury, and the *false name of knowledge*; that so the wild beasts may be tamed, the cattle broken to the yoke, the serpents harmless. For these are the motions of our mind under an allegory; that is to say, the haughtiness of pride, the delight of lust, and the poison of curiosity, are the motions of a dead

soul; for the soul dies not so as to lose all motion; because it dies by *forsaking the fountain of life*, and so is taken up by this transitory world, and is *conformed unto it*.

31. But Thy word, O God, is the *fountain of life* eternal, and passeth not away; wherefore this departure of the soul is restrained by Thy word, when it is said unto us, *Be not conformed unto this world*; that so the earth may in the *fountain of life bring forth a living soul*; that is, a soul made continent in Thy Word, by Thy Evangelists, by *following the followers of Thy Christ*. For this is *after his kind*; because a man is wont to imitate his friend. *Be ye (saith he) as I am, for I also am as you are*. Thus in this *living soul* shall there be *good beasts*, in meekness of action (for Thou hast commanded, *Go on with Thy business in meekness, so shalt thou be beloved by all men*);¹ and *good cattle*, which *neither if they eat shall they over-abound, nor, if they eat not, have any lack*; and *good serpents*, not dangerous to do hurt, but *wise to take heed*, and only making so much search into this temporal nature, as may suffice that *eternity be clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made*. For these creatures are obedient unto reason, when, being restrained from deadly attack upon us, they live, and are good.

XXII. 32. For behold, O Lord our God, our Creator, when our affections have been restrained from the *love of the world*, by which we died through evil-

¹ Sirach iii. 19.

living, and have begun to be a *living soul*, through good living, and Thy word which Thou spakest by Thy apostle; is made good in us, *Be not conformed to this world*, there follows that also which Thou presently subjoinedst, saying, *But be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind*, not now *after your kind*, as though following your neighbor who went before you, nor as living after the example of some better man. For Thou saidst not, "Let man be made after his kind," but, *Let us make man after our own image and similitude, that we might prove what Thy will is*. For to this purpose, said that dispenser of Thine, who *begat children by the Gospel*, that he might not forever have them *babes*, whom he must be fain to *feed with milk*, and *cherish as a nurse*: *Be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God*. Wherefore Thou sayest not, "Let man be made," but "*Let us make man*." Nor saidst Thou, "according to his kind," but, "*after our image and likeness*." For man being *renewed in his mind*, and beholding and understanding Thy truth, needs not man as his director, so as to follow *after his kind*; but by Thy direction *proveth what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of Thine*; and Thou teachest him, now made capable, to discern the Trinity of the Unity, and the Unity of the Trinity. Wherefore to that said in the plural, *Let us make man*, is yet subjoined in the singular, *And God made man*; and to that said in the plural, *After our likeness*, is subjoined in the singular, *After the image of God*. Thus

is man renewed in the knowledge of God, after the image of Him that created him; and being made spiritual, he judgeth all things (all things which are to be judged), yet himself is judged of no man.

XVIII. 33. But that he judgeth all things, this answers to his having dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowls of the air, and over all cattle and wild beasts, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. For this he doth by the understanding of his mind, whereby he perceiveth the things of the Spirit of God; whereas otherwise, man, being placed in honor, had no understanding, and is compared unto the brute beasts, and is become like unto them. In Thy Church, therefore, O our God, according to Thy grace which Thou hast bestowed upon it (for we are Thy workmanship created unto good works), not those only who are spiritually set over, but they also who spiritually are subject to those that are set over them (for in this way didst Thou make man male and female, in Thy spiritual grace, where according to the sex of body there is neither male nor female, because neither Jew nor Grecian, neither bond nor free),—all spiritual persons, in Thy Church, whether such as are set over, or such as obey, do judge spiritually. Not, indeed, of that spiritual knowledge which shines in the firmament, for they ought not to judge as to so supreme authority; nor may they judge of Thy Book itself, even though something there shineth not clearly, for we submit our understanding unto it, and hold for certain, that even what is closed to our sight, is yet rightly and

truly spoken. For man, though now *spiritual, and renewed in the knowledge of God after His image that created him*, ought to be a *doer of the law, not a judge.* Neither doth he judge of that distinction of spiritual and carnal men, who are known unto Thine eyes, O our God, and have not as yet discovered themselves unto us by works, that by *their fruits we might know them;* but Thou, Lord, dost even now know them, and hast *divided and called them in secret, before ever the firmament was made.* Nor doth he, though *spiritual, judge the unquiet people of this world; for what hath he to do, to judge them that are without,* knowing not which of them shall hereafter come into the sweetness-of Thy grace, and which continue in the perpetual bitterness of ungodliness.

34. *Man, therefore, whom Thou hast made after Thine own image, received not dominion over the lights of heaven, nor over that hidden heaven itself, nor over the day and the night, which Thou calledst before the foundation of the heaven, nor over the gathering together of the waters, which is the sea; but he received dominion over the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the air, and over all cattle, and over all the earth, and over all creeping things which creep upon the earth.* For he judgeth and approveth what he findeth right, and he disalloweth what he findeth amiss; whether in the celebration of that sacrament by which such are initiated as Thy mercy searches out in many waters; or in that, in which that fish¹ is set

¹ There is, probably, an allusion here to the early Christian monogram Ιχθύς, i. e., Ι-ησοῦς Χ'-ριστὸς Θ-εοῦ Υ-ἱος Σωτὴρ. — ED.

forth, which, taken out of the deep, the devout earth feed upon; or in the expressions and signs of words, subject to the authority of Thy Book,—such signs, as proceed out of the mouth, and sound forth, *flying* as it were *under the firmament*, by interpreting, expounding, discoursing, disputing, consecrating, or praying unto Thee, so that the people may answer, *Amen*. The vocal pronouncing of all which words, is occasioned by the *deep* of this world, and the blindness of the flesh, which cannot see thoughts, so that there is need to speak aloud in the ears. Thus, although *flying fowls* be *multiplied upon the earth*, yet they derive their beginning from the waters. *The spiritual man judgeth* also by allowing of what is right, and disallowing what he finds amiss, in the works and lives of the faithful,—in their alms, as it were *the earth bringing forth fruit*; in the *living soul*, living by the taming of the affections; in chastity; in fasting; in holy meditations concerning those things which are perceived by the senses of the body. Upon all these is he now said to *judge*, wherein he hath also power of correction.

XXIV. 35. But what is this, and what kind of mystery? Behold, Thou *blessest mankind*, O Lord, that they *may increase* and *multiply*, and *replenish the earth*. Dost Thou not thereby give us a hint to understand something? Why didst Thou not as well bless *the light*, which Thou *calledst day*; and *the firmament of heaven*, and *the lights*, and *the stars*, and *the sea*? I might say that Thou, O God, who *created us after Thine Image*, I might say that it had been

Thy good pleasure to bestow this blessing peculiarly upon man, hadst Thou not in like manner blessed the fishes and the whales, that they *should increase and multiply, and replenish the waters of the sea*, and that the *fowls should be multiplied upon the earth*. I might say, likewise, that this blessing pertained properly unto such creatures as are bred of their own kind, had I found it given to the fruit-trees, and plants, and beasts of the earth. But now neither unto the herbs, nor the trees, nor the beasts, nor serpents is it said, *Increase and multiply*; notwithstanding all these as well as the fishes, fowls, or men, do by generation increase and continue their kind.

36. What then shall I say, O Truth my Light? “that it was idly said, and without meaning?” Not so, O Father of piety, far be it from a minister of Thy word to say so. And if I understand not what Thou meanest by that phrase, let my betters, that is, those of more understanding than myself, make better use of it, according as Thou, my God, hast given to each man to understand. But let my confession also be pleasing in Thine eyes, wherein I confess unto Thee, that I believe, O Lord, that Thou spakest not so in vain; nor will I suppress what this lesson suggests to *me*. For it is truth; nor do I see what should hinder me from thus understanding the figurative sayings of Thy Bible. For I know a thing to be manifoldly signified by corporeal expressions, which is understood one way by the mind; and that understood many ways in the mind, which is signified one way by corporeal expression. Behold, the single love of God and our

neighbor, by what manifold sacraments, and innumerable languages, and in each several language in how innumerable modes of speaking, it is corporeally expressed. Thus do the offsprings of the *waters increase and multiply*. Observe again, whosoever thou art that readest this. Behold what Scripture delivers, and the voice pronounces in only one way : *In the Beginning God created heaven and earth*; is it not understood manifoldly, not through any deceit of error, but by various kinds of true senses ? Thus do man's offspring *increase and multiply*.

36. If, therefore, we conceive of the natures of the things themselves, not allegorically, but properly, then does the phrase *increase and multiply* agree unto all things, that come of seed. But if we treat of the words as figuratively spoken (which I rather suppose to be the purpose of the Scripture, which doth not, surely, superfluously ascribe this benediction to the offspring of aquatic animals and man only), then do we find "multitude" to belong to creatures spiritual as well as corporeal, as in *heaven and earth*; and to souls both righteous and unrighteous, as in *light and darkness*; and to holy authors who have been the ministers of the Law unto us, as in the *firmament* which is settled betwixt the *waters* and the *waters*; and to the society of people yet in the bitterness of infidelity, as in *the sea*; and to the zeal of holy souls, as in *the dry land*; and to works of mercy belonging to this present life, as in the *herbs bearing seed*, and in *trees bearing fruit*; and to *spiritual gifts set forth for edification*, as in *the lights of heaven*; and to affec-

tions formed unto temperance, as in the *living soul*. In all these instances we meet with multitudes, abundance, and increase; but what shall in such wise *increase and multiply*, that one thing may be expressed many ways, and one expression be understood many ways, we find not, except in signs corporeally expressed, and in things mentally conceived. By signs corporeally pronounced, we understand the generations of the waters, necessarily occasioned by the fertility of the flesh; by things mentally conceived, human generations, on account of the fruitfulness of reason. And for this end do we believe Thee, Lord, to have said to these kinds, *Increase and multiply*. For in this blessing, I conceive Thee to have granted us a power and a faculty, both to express several ways what we understand but one; and to understand several ways, what we read to be obscurely delivered but in one. Thus are the *waters of the sea replenished*, which are not moved but by several significations; thus with human increase is the *earth also replenished*, whose *dryness* appeareth in its longing, and reason ruleth over it.

XXV. 38. I would also say, O Lord my God, what the following Scripture minds me of; yea, I will say, and not fear. For I will say the truth, Thyself inspiring me with what Thou willest me to deliver out of those words. But by no other inspiration than Thine, do I believe myself to speak truth, seeing Thou art *the Truth, and every man a liar*. *He*, therefore, *that speaketh a lie, speaketh of his own*; that therefore I may speak truth, I will speak of Thine. Behold,

Thou hast given unto us *for food, every herb bearing seed which is upon all the earth, and every tree in which is the fruit of a tree yielding seed*; and not to us alone, but also to *all the fowls of the air, and to the beasts of the earth, and to all creeping things*; but unto the *fishes, and to the great whales*, hast Thou not given them. Now, we said that by these *fruits of the earth* were signified, and figured in an allegory, the works of mercy which are provided for the necessities of this life out of the *fruitful earth*. Such an *earth* was the devout *Onesiphorus, unto whose house Thou gavest mercy*, because he *often refreshed Thy Paul, and was not ashamed of his chain*. Thus did also *the brethren*, and such fruit did they bear, who *out of Macedonia supplied what was lacking to him*. But how grieved he for some *trees*, which did not afford him the *fruit* due unto him, where he saith, *At my first answer no man stood by me, but all men forsook me*. I pray God that it may not be laid to their charge. For these fruits are due to such as minister the spiritual doctrine unto us out of their understanding of the divine mysteries; and they are due to them, as *men*; yea and due to them, also, as the *living soul*, which giveth itself as an example, in all continency; and due unto them, also, as *flying creatures*, for their blessings which are multiplied upon the earth, because *their sound went out into all lands*.

XXVI. 39. But they are fed by these fruits, that are delighted with them; nor are they delighted with them, whose *God is their belly*. For neither in them

that yield them, are the mere things yielded the fruit, but with what *mind* they yield them. He therefore *that served God, and not his own belly*, I plainly see why he rejoiced; I see it, and I rejoice with him. For he had received from the *Philippians*, what they had sent by *Epaphroditus* unto him. And I also perceive why he rejoiced so specially at that whereon he fed. For, speaking in truth, he saith, *I rejoiced greatly in the Lord, that now at the last your care of me hath flourished again, wherein ye were also careful*, but it had become wearisome unto you. These *Philippians*, then, had dried up, with a long weariness, and withered, as it were, as to bearing this fruit of a good work; and he rejoiceth for them, that *they flourished again*, and not merely for himself, that they supplied his wants. Therefore subjoins he, *Not that I speak in respect of want, for I have learned in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content. I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound; everywhere and in all things I am instructed both to be full, and to be hungry; both to abound, and to suffer need. I can do all things through Him which strengtheneth me.*

40. Whereat then rejoicest thou, O great Paul? whereat rejoicest thou? whereon feedest thou, O man, renewed in the knowledge of God, after the image of *Him that created thee*, thou living soul, of so much continency, thou tongue like flying fowls, speaking mysteries (for to such creatures is this food due); what is it that feeds thee? Joy. Hear what follows: notwithstanding, ye have well done, that ye did com-

minate with my affliction. Hereat he rejoiceth, hereon feedeth ; because they had *well done*, not because his strait was eased who saith unto Thee, *Thou hast enlarged me when I was in distress* ; for he knew how to abound, and to suffer want, in Thee, Who strengthenest him. *For ye Philippians also know*, (saith he) *that in the beginning of the Gospel, when I departed from Macedonia, no church communicated with me, as concerning giving and receiving, but ye only*. *For even in Thessalonica ye sent once and again unto my necessity*. Unto these good works, he now rejoiceth that they are returned ; and is gladdened that they flourished again, as when a fruitful field resumes its green.

41. Was it because of his own necessities, that he said, *Ye sent unto my necessity?* Rejoiceth he for that? Verily not for that. But how know this ? Because himself says immediately, *not because I desire a gift, but I desire fruit*. I have learned of Thee, my God, to distinguish betwixt a *gift*, and *fruit*. A *gift*, is the thing itself which he gives that imparts these necessaries unto us, as money, meat, drink, clothing, shelter, help ; but the *fruit*, is the good and right will of the giver. For the Good Master said not only, *He that receiveth a prophet*, but added, *in the name of a prophet* ; nor did He only say, *He that receiveth a righteous man*, but added, *in the name of a righteous man*. So, verily, shall the one receive the reward of a prophet, the other, the reward of a righteous man. Nor saith He only, *He that shall give to drink a cup of cold water to one of my little ones*,

but added, *in the name of a disciple*; and so concludeth, *Verily I say unto you he shall not lose his reward*. The *gift* is, to receive a prophet, to receive a righteous man, to give a cup of cold water to a disciple; but the *fruit* is, to do this *in the name of a prophet, in the name of a righteous man, in the name of a disciple*.

With *fruit* was Elijah fed by the widow that knew she fed a man of God, and *therefore* fed him; but by the raven was he fed with a *gift*. Nor was the inner man of Elijah so fed, but the outer only; which might also for want of that food have perished.

XXVII. 42. I will then speak what is true in Thy sight, O Lord: namely, that when carnal men and infidels, whom we suppose to be signified by the name of *fishes* and *whales* (for the gaining and initiating whom, the initiatory Sacraments and the mighty workings of miracles are necessary), undertake the bodily refreshment, or otherwise succor Thy servants with something useful for this present life, inasmuch as they are ignorant, why this is to be done, and to what end, they do not really feed these, nor are these really fed by them; because neither do the former do it out of an holy and right intent, nor do the latter rejoice at their *gifts*, whose *fruit* they as yet behold not. For upon that is the mind fed, of which it is glad. And therefore do not the *fishes* and *whales* feed upon such *meats* as the earth brings not forth until after it was separated, and divided from the bitterness of the waves of *the sea*.

XXVIII. 43. And Thou, O God, sawest every-

thing that Thou hadst made, and behold, it was very good. Yea we also see the same, and behold, all things are *very good*. Of the several kinds of Thy works, when Thou hadst said “let them be,” and they were, Thou sawest each *that it was good*. Seven times have I counted it to be written, that Thou *sawest that that which Thou madest was good*; and this is the eighth, that Thou *sawest every thing that Thou hadst made*, and behold it was not only *good*, but also *very good*, as being now one, and altogether. For severally they were only *good*; but altogether, both *good*, and *very good*. All beautiful bodies express the same; because a body consisting of members all beautiful, is far more beautiful than the same members by themselves are, by whose well-ordered blending the whole is perfected, although the members, severally, be also beautiful.

XXIX. 44. And I looked narrowly to find, whether seven, or eight times, Thou sawest that Thy works were good; when they pleased Thee; but in Thy seeing I found no times, whereby I might understand that Thou sawest so often, what Thou madest. And I said, “Lord, is not this Thy Scripture true, since Thou art true, and being Truth, hast set it forth? Why dost Thou say unto me, ‘that in Thy seeing there be no times;’ whereas this Thy Scripture tells me, that what Thou madest each day, Thou *sawest that it was good*; and when I counted them, I found how often.” Unto this Thou answerest me, for Thou art my God, and with a strong voice tellest Thy servant in his inner ear, breaking through my

deafness and crying, “O man, that which my Scripture saith, I say. And yet doth that speak in time; but time has no relation to My Word, because My Word exists in equal eternity with Myself. So, the things which ye see through My Spirit, I see; and what things ye speak by My Spirit, I speak. And yet when ye see those things in time, I see them not in time; and when ye speak them in time, I speak them not in time.”

XXX. 45. And I heard, O Lord my God, and drank up a drop of sweetness out of Thy truth, and understood. For there are certain men who dislike Thy works; and say that many of them Thou madest because compelled by necessity; such as the fabric of the heavens, and harmony of the stars; and that Thou madest them not of what was Thine, but that they were otherwhere and from other sources created, for Thee to bring together and compact and combine, when out of Thy conquered enemies Thou raisedst up the walls of the universe; that they, bound down by this structure, might not again be able to rebel against Thee. And there are still other things, they say, which Thou neither madest, nor even compactedst, such as all fleshly creatures, and all very minute creatures, and whatsoever hath its root in the earth; but that a mind at enmity with Thee, and another nature, not created by Thee, and contrary unto Thee, did, in these lower stages of the world, beget and frame these things. Frenzied are they who say thus, because they see not Thy works by Thy Spirit, nor recognize Thee in them.

XXXI. 46. But they who, by Thy Spirit, see these things, Thou seest in them. Therefore, when they see that these *things are good*, Thou seest that they are good; and whatsoever things for Thy sake please, Thou pleasest in them; and what through Thy Spirit please us, they please Thee in us. *For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of a man, which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no one, but the Spirit of God. Now we (saith he) have received, not the spirit of this world, but the Spirit which is of God, that we might know the things that are freely given us of God.* The objection occurs to me: “*Certainly the things of God knoweth no one, but the Spirit of God; how then do we also know, what things are given us of God?*” Answer is made me: “Because the things which we know by His Spirit, even these *no one knoweth, but the Spirit of God.* For as it is rightly said unto those that were to speak by the Spirit of God, *It is not ye that speak;* so is it rightly said to them that know through the Spirit of God, ‘*It is not ye that know.*’ And no less, then, is it rightly said to those that see through the Spirit of God, ‘*It is not ye that see;*’ so whatsoever through the Spirit of God they *see to be good*, it is not they, but God that *sees that it is good.*” It is one thing, then, for a man to think that to be evil which is good, as the forenamed do; another thing that a man should see that that which is good is good (for Thy creatures are pleasing unto many because they are good, whom yet Thou pleasest not in them, because they prefer

to enjoy them to Thee); and another thing that when a man sees that a thing is good, God should in him see that is good, so, namely, that He should be loved in that which He made, Who cannot be loved, but by the Holy Ghost which he hath given. *Because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost, Which is given unto us;* by Whom we see that whatsoever in any degree truly is, is good. For from Him it truly is, Who Himself is not in degree, but what He Is, Is.

XXXII. 47. Thanks to Thee, O Lord, we behold *the heaven and earth*, both the corporeal part, superior and inferior, and the spiritual and corporeal creature; and in the adorning of these parts, wherof the universal pile of the world, or rather the universal creation, doth consist, we see *light* made, and *divided from the darkness*. We see the *firmament of heaven*, both that primary body of the world, *between the spiritual upper waters and the inferior corporeal waters*,¹ and (since this also is called heaven) this space of air through which wander the fowls of heaven, *betwixt those waters* which are in vapors borne above them, and in clear nights distil down in dew, *and those heavier waters* which flow along the earth. We behold a surface of *waters gathered together* in the fields of *the sea*; and *the dry land* both void and formed so as to be visible and harmonized, yea, and the matter of herbs and trees. We behold

¹ Augustine, in his *Retractationes* (Lib. II. Cap. 6) remarks: *Quod dixi firmamentum factum inter spiritales aquas superiores et corporales inferiores, non satis considerate dictum est; res autem in abdito est valde.*
— ED.

the lights, shining from above; the sun, to suffice for the day, the moon and the stars to cheer the night; and that, by all these, times should be marked and signified. We behold on all sides a moist element replenished with fishes, beasts, and birds; because the grossness of the air, which bears up the flights of birds, thickeneth itself by the exhalation of the waters. We behold the face of the earth decked out with earthly creatures; and *man, created after Thy image and likeness*, even through Thy very *image and likeness*, that is the power of reason and understanding, set over all irrational creatures. And as in his soul there is one power which has dominion by directing, another made subject, that it might obey; so was there for the man, corporeally also made a woman, who, in the mind of her reasonable understanding, should have a parity of nature, but in the sex of her body, should be in like manner subject to the sex of her husband, as the appetite of doing is fain to obtain the skill of right-doing, from the reason of the mind. These things we behold, and they are severally *good*, and taken altogether *very good*.

XXXIII. 48. Let Thy works praise Thee, that we may love Thee; and let us love Thee, that Thy works may praise Thee, which from time have beginning and ending, rising and setting, growth and decay, form and privation. They have then their succession of morning and evening, part secretly, part apparently. For they were made of nothing by Thee, not of Thee; not of any matter not Thine, or that

was before Thy creative act, but of matter concreated (that is, a matter in which the matter and form were simultaneously created by Thee), because to its state *without form*, Thou without any interval of time didst give form. For seeing the matter of *heaven and earth* is one thing, and the form another, Thou madest the matter of merely nothing, but the form of the world out of the matter *without form*: yet both together, so that the form should follow the matter, without any interval of delay.¹

XXXIV. 49. We have also examined what Thou willest to be shadowed forth, whether by the creation, or the relation of things in such an order; and we have seen, that things singly *are good*, and together *very good*, in Thy Word, in Thy Only-Begotten, both *heaven and earth*, the head and the body of the church, in Thy predestination before all times, without *morning and evening*. But when Thou begannest to execute in time the things predestinated, to the end Thou mightest reveal hidden things, and rectify our *disorders* (for our sins hung over us, and we had sunk into the *dark deep*, and Thy good *Spirit was borne* over us, to help us *in due season*), Thou didst *justify the ungodly*, and *dividest* them from the wicked; and Thou *madest the firmament* of authority of Thy book between those placed *above*, who were to be docile unto Thee, and those

¹ Augustine here precludes that theory of creation which regards the Deity as *conditioned* by an eternally existent *ύλη*, — an error in which some of the early Christian Fathers, e. g., Justin Martyr, were involved. Compare Guericke's Church History, § 53. — Ed.

placed *under*, who were to be subject to them; and thou *gatheredest together* the society of unbelievers *into one conspiracy*, that the zeal of the faithful might appear, and they might *bring forth* works of mercy, even distributing to the poor their earthly riches, to obtain heavenly. And after this, didst Thou kindle certain *lights in the firmament*, Thy Holy ones having *the word of life*, and shining with an eminent authority set on high through spiritual gifts. After this, again, for the initiation of the unbelieving Gentiles, didst Thou, out of corporeal matter, produce the Sacraments, and visible miracles, and forms of words, according to the firmament of Thy Book, by which the faithful should be *blessed* and *multiplied*. Next, didst Thou form the *living soul* of the faithful, through affections well ordered by the vigor of continency. After that hast Thou renewed the mind, subjected to Thee alone and needing to imitate no human authority, *after Thy image and likeness*, and didst subject its rational actions to the excellency of the understanding, as *the woman* to the man; and, to all offices of Thy Ministry, necessary for the perfecting of the faithful in this life, Thou willedst, that, for their temporal uses, good things, fruitful to themselves in time to come, be given by the same faithful. *All* these we see, and they are *very good*, because Thou seest them in us, Who hast given unto us Thy Spirit, by which we might see them, and in them love Thee.

XXXV. 50. O Lord God, *give peace unto us* (for Thou hast given us all things), the peace of rest, the

peace of the Sabbath which hath no evening. For all this most goodly array of things *very good*, having finished their courses, is to pass away, for in them there *was morning and evening*.

XXXVI. 51. But the seventh day hath no evening, nor hath it setting, because Thou hast sanctified it to an everlasting continuance; that that which Thou didst *after Thy works* which were *very good*, namely, *resting the seventh day* (although Thou madest them in unbroken rest), we, too, may do, — Thy Book announcing beforehand unto us, that we also, after our works (*very good*, because Thou hast given them to us), shall *rest* in Thee also, in the Sabbath of eternal life.

XXXVII. 52. For Thou shalt rest in us, as now Thou workest in us; and Thy rest shall be through us, as Thy works are through us. But Thou, Lord, ever workest, and art ever at rest. Nor dost Thou see in time, nor art moved in time, nor rested in time; and yet Thou makest things seen in time, yea the times themselves, and the rest which results from time.

XXXVIII. 53. We therefore see these things which Thou madest, because they are; but they are because Thou seest them. And we see without, that they are, and within, that they are good; but Thou sawest them when made, as Thou sawest them before they were made. And we were at a later time moved to do well, after our hearts had conceived of Thy Spirit; but in the former time we were moved to do evil, forsaking Thee. But Thou, the One, the Good

God, didst never cease doing good. And we also have some *good works*, of Thy gift, but not eternal ; *after them* we trust to *rest* in Thry great *hallowing*. But Thou, being the Good which needeth no good, art ever at rest, because Thy rest is Thyself. And what man can teach man to understand this ? or what angel an angel ? or what angel a man ? Let it be *asked* of Thee, *sought* of Thee, *knocked* for at Thee : so, so shall it be received, so shall it be found, so shall it be opened. Amen.

OPINIONS EXPRESSED.

THE SIGNET RING. By Rev. J. DeLiefde. 16mo.
\$1.25. Boston: D. Lothrop & Co., Publishers.

"We have not found in so small a compass a mass of Christian experience so pregnant with instruction to all who are engaged in the Lord's work." — *Phil. Inquirer*.

"It is simple, natural, and interesting; excellent for the family circle and the Sabbath-school library, and entertaining and instructive to all." — *Morning Star*.

"Many a feast may the pious soul derive from this delightful book." — *Pres. Banner*.

"A volume of valuable Christian experience, and rich and pleasing religious instruction. It illustrates and applies the vital truth of Christianity with skill and power." — *The Congregationalist*.

"The writings of the author of this volume, an evangelical pastor in Holland, have met with great success in Germany. There is a peculiar charm of simplicity and freshness in his narrative, while his aim is to promote the cause of genuine piety." — *N. Y. Evangelist*.

"A charming little book, full of Divine lessons." — *Christian Intelligencer*.

"The minister, the Christian laborer, and the thoughtful child will be charmed with the striking thoughts of the book." — *Vt. Chronicle*.

"The style is very chaste, and the lesson hidden beneath the story in each case is highly instructive. We have read the book with admiration." — *Zion's Advocate*.

"No reader can fail to be charmed with the skill and earnestness with which the great truths of the Gospel are illustrated and enforced." — *New Haven Palladium*.

"We heartily commend it to all, especially to theological students and ministers." — *Presbyterian*.

"Fresh in thought, elegant in style, and containing a rich vein of experimental piety." — *N. W. Christian Advocate*.

OPINIONS EXPRESSED.

BIBLE PICTURES; OR, LIFE SKETCHES OF LIFE-TRUTHS. By Geo. B. Ide, D.D. 12mo. \$2.00. Large edition, tinted paper, illustrated, \$4.00. *Boston: D. Lothrop & Co., Publishers.*

"There is useful instruction and eloquent writing-matter, both for the imagination and the heart." — *Scottish American.*

"These pictures are immeasurably more worthy of elegant setting and artistic illustration than some pretentious and showy volumes of similar title that are in circulation." — *Springfield Republican.*

"The topics are all admirably treated, with that richness of thought, and that clearness and strength of style in which Dr. Ide so eminently excels." — *Christian Times.*

"Didactic and abstract truths he presents in the most pleasing form, entertaining while he instructs his readers." — *Philadelphia Inquirer.*

A Beautiful Gift Book for all Seasons.

THE EXCELLENT WOMAN; with an introduction by Wm. B. Sprague, D. D. \$1.50. New edition. *Boston: D. Lothrop & Co., Publishers.*

"It should be as extensively read as its merit deserves, and it will do much to correct morbid sensibility as to 'Woman's Rights.'" — *Congregationalist.*

"It inculcates some of the soundest maxims of wisdom, bearing upon the subject of female education." — *American Union.*

"An admirable gift book, which any lady should be proud to accept." — *Portland Transcript.*

"We have seen few books so calculated to demonstrate the proper sphere and duties of woman as this." — *Christian Intelligencer.*

"It is a fine conception, beautifully carried out. The engravings are highly significant, and add much to the interest of the work." — *Albany Argus.*

1000
and to estimate the number of individuals involved. Data were collected from 2000 households in 100 villages in the northern part of the country. The survey was conducted by trained interviewers who had been instructed to ask questions such as: "How many children under five years of age are there in your household?" and "How many children under five years of age are there in your household who are not in school?" The data were collected in a systematic manner, and the results were analyzed statistically. The results showed that the average number of children under five years of age per household was approximately 2.5, and the average number of children under five years of age not in school was approximately 1.5. This indicates that there is a significant difference between the number of children under five years of age in school and the number of children under five years of age not in school. The results also showed that the percentage of children under five years of age not in school was highest in the rural areas and lowest in the urban areas. The results suggest that there is a need for more effective programs to ensure that all children under five years of age receive an education.

University of California
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Return this material to the library
from which it was borrowed.

RET TO
AUPL
2-Oct 81

APR 13 1992

JAN 24 1992

REC'D AUPL

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 000 045 756 4

U